

R K SINHA

OXFORD CURRENT ENGLISH GRAMMAR

ति
वश्य
नके ग्रन्थों

Chandan kumar

DELUXE EDITION : 2000

[REPRINT]

सूचना



1. Oxford Current English Grammar / Translation की कुछ जाली प्रतियाँ बाजार में आ गयी हैं । इसलिए इन पुस्तकों को खरीदने के पहले आश्वस्त हो जाएँ कि कहीं आप जाली प्रतियाँ तो नहीं खरीद रहे हैं ।

2. **असली पुस्तक की पहचान :** असली पुस्तक का कवर आर्ट बोर्ड पर छपा हुआ है, जिसकी छपाई स्पष्ट तथा चमकदार है । कवर के अन्दरवाला भाग प्लास्टिक के जैसा चिकना तथा दूध जैसा सफेद रंग का है । पूरी पुस्तक orient कागज पर छपी हुई है जो सफेद तथा उच्च क्वॉलिटी का है । अक्षर तथा छपाई बहुत ही स्पष्ट है । पुस्तक की बाइंडिंग आधुनिक मशीन से की गयी है और इसकी सिलाई महीन धागे से है जो बार-बार प्रयोग के बाद भी नहीं फटेगी ।

3. **जाली पुस्तक की पहचान :** जाली पुस्तक देखने में असली पुस्तक के जैसी ही होती है । उसमें सूचना भी हू-ब-हू ऐसा ही लिखा रहता है । लेकिन कवर, पुस्तक का कागज, छपाई तथा बाइंडिंग निम्न स्तर का रहता है।

4. पुस्तकें खरीदते समय पुस्तकों पर पुस्तक-बिक्रेता से मोहर अवश्य लगवा लें। जाली का शक होने पर हमें पत्र द्वारा इसकी विस्तृत जानकारी देने का कष्ट करें।

R.P

हमारा पता :

GOOD MAN (P&D)

VIJAY MARKET, B. M. DAS ROAD, PATNA – 4

For Detailed Study of English Grammar

Oxford Current English Grammar

Prof. R. K. Sinha
M.A. (English)

GOOD MAN (P & D)
VIJAY MARKET, B. M. DAS ROAD, PATNA - 4

Published by

Birendra Kumar Sinha
Vijay Market
B. M. Das Road
Panta – 800 004

First Edition : 1996
3rd Edition : 2000
Reprint : 2001

The correct price of this publication is the price printed on this page. Any revised price indicated by a rubber stamp or by a sticker or by any other means is incorrect and should be unacceptable.

PRICE : Rs. 38

Photocomposed by : Global Printers, Arya Kumar Road, Patna-800 004
Printed at : Offset India, Patna-16

PREFACE

Oxford Current English Grammar has been written with a view to teaching the fundamental and basic principles of English grammar. Every attempt has been made to make the study of grammar appealing and interesting to young students. As far as its style and method is concerned it is a unique book as it has been prepared strictly on scientific-lines. Lengthy explanations have been avoided. The explanatory matter has been made as concise and simple as possible. Here the main stress has been laid on how to provide clear-cut concept with the help of illustrative examples and exercises. The sentences in these illustrative examples and exercises have been very carefully selected and graded. They are capable of making even the slow and poor learner feel the real nature of the things concerned. Again, illustrative examples, worked out examples and exercises are quite enough. They are up to the readers' firm grip over the subject matter.

All the matters have been put in such an ascending order as will suit the psychology of the learners. Throughout the book a good deal of stress has been laid on how to develop the readers' awareness towards real and living language. Nowhere the readers will have confusion, hardship and boredom. Everywhere they will find a flow and without any obstacle or hardship the readers will be able to develop their knowledge of English grammar.

I hope this book will bring about a revolution in the teaching of English grammar. It will undoubtedly prove a living guide to millions of students who really need a book of this kind.

Any suggestion from our readers and teachers will be welcomed.

R. K. Sinha

PREFACE

Oxford Current English Grammar has been written with a view to teaching the fundamental and basic principles of English grammar. Every attempt has been made to make the study of grammar appealing and interesting to young students. As far as its style and method is concerned it is a unique book as it has been prepared strictly on scientific-lines. Lengthy explanations have been avoided. The explanatory matter has been made as concise and simple as possible. Here the main stress has been laid on how to provide clear-cut concepts with the help of illustrative examples and exercises. The sentences in these illustrative examples and exercises have been very carefully selected and graded. They are capable of making even the slow and poor learner feel the real nature of the things concerned. Again, illustrative examples, worked out examples and exercises are quite enough. They are to help the readers to gain over the subject matter.

All the matters have been put in such a sequential order as will suit the psychology of the learners. Throughout the book a good deal of stress has been laid on how to develop the readers' awareness towards real and living language. Nowhere the readers will have confusion, foolishness and boredom. Everywhere they will find a flow and without any obstacle or hardship the readers will be able to develop their knowledge of English grammar.

I hope this book will bring about a revolution in the teaching of English grammar. It will undoubtedly prove a torch guide to millions of students who really need a book of this kind.

Any suggestion from our readers and teachers will be welcomed.

R. K. Sinha

CONTENTS

1. Form Classes, Structure Words and Determiners

Form Classes तथा Structure Words का अध्ययन करने से पहले आप Morpheme के बारे में अच्छी तरह जान लें कि यह क्या है।

Morpheme : Morpheme वह शब्दांश है जो स्वतंत्र रूप से कोई खास अर्थ नहीं रखता है, पर कुछ शब्दों के आगे या पीछे आकर उसके स्वरूप और अर्थ में परिवर्तन ला देता है। जैसे—**s/es, d/ed, ing, un, ness, less, ly, dis, etc.**

Suffix and Prefix : जब Morpheme को किसी word के अंत में जोड़ा जाता है तब इसे Suffix कहते हैं और जब इसे किसी word के पहले जोड़ा जाता है तब इसे Prefix कहते हैं।

Suffixes : —s, —es, —d, —ed, —en, —ing, —y, —ly, —ish, —er, —est, —ness, —less, —hood, —ful, —ship, etc.

Prefixes : un—, dis—, de—, pre—, re—, im—, ir—, il—, en—, over—, out—, up—, sub—, pro—, fore—, mis—, etc.

Morphemes की सहायता से सिर्फ Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs तथा Adverbs अपने रूप तथा अर्थ को बदलते हैं। इनके अलावे अन्य शब्दों पर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। अब निम्नलिखित को ध्यान से देखें और समझें कि Morphemes कैसे विभिन्न शब्दों के साथ जुटकर उनके अर्थ और रूप में परिवर्तन लाते हैं—

Prefixes के प्रयोग :

un—	**un + kind = unkind**	**pre—**	**pre+caution = precaution**
	un + wise = unwise		**pre + fix = prefix**
	un + dress = undress		**pre + historic = prehistoric**
dis—	**dis + close = disclose**	**re—**	**re + collect = recollect**
	dis + honest = dishonest		**re + call = recall**
	dis + honour = dishonour		**re + gain = regain**
de—	**de + value = devalue**	**ir—**	**ir + regular = irregular**
	de + form = deform		**ir + relevant = irrelevant**
	de + grade = degrade		**ir + religious = irreligious**
im—	**im + possible = impossible**	**in—**	**in + direct = indirect**
	im + mortal = immortal		**in + door = indoor**
	im + proper = improper		**in + definite = indefinite**

il— il + legal = illegal
il + literate = illiterate
il + legible = illegible

en— en + rich = enrich
en + close = enclose
en + able = enable

mis— mis + take = mistake
mis + understand = misunderstand
mis + behave = misbehave

ante— ante + date = antedate

auto— auto + biography = autobiography

extra— extra + ordinary = extraordinary

be— be + little = belittle

bi— bi + lingual = bilingual

ex— ex + minister = ex -minister

co— co + exist = co-exist

inter— inter + national = international

tri— tri+ angle = triangle

sub— sub + judge = sub-judge

anti— anti + social = anti -social

under— under + stand = understand

up— up + lift = uplift

out— out + burst = outburst

over— over + crowd = overcrowd

fore— fore + see = foresee

super— super+ man = superman

Suffixes के प्रयोग :

—s cow + s = cows
dog + s = dogs

—es box + es = boxes
rich + es = riches

—d dare + d = dared
prove + d = proved

—ed play + ed = played
stay + ed = stayed

—en beat + en = beaten
black + en = blacken

—ing dance + ing = dancing
charm + ing = charming

—y dirt + y= dirty
water + y = watery

—ly slow + ly = slowly
kind + ly = kindly

—er small + er = smaller
teach + er = teacher

—est small + est = smallest
great + est = greatest

—ish child + ish = childish
fool + ish = foolish

—ful harm +ful = harmful
beauty + ful = beautiful

—hood child + hood = childhood
young + hood = younghood

—ness dark + ness = darkness
kind + ness = kindness

—less care + less = careless
harm + less = harmless

—ous fame + ous = famous
space + ous = spacious

—ship friend+ship=friendship
member + ship = membership

—ar	beg + ar = beggar circle + ar = circular	—able	eat + able = eatable read + able = readable
—an	India + an = Indian America + an = American	—like	child + like = childlike man + like = manlike
—age	marry + age = marriage post + age = postage	—some	trouble + some = troublesome burden + some = burdensome
—al	arrive + al = arrival culture + al = cultural	—fy	beauty + fy = beautify glory + fy = glorify
—dom	free + dom = freedom king + dom = kingdom	—ee	employ + ee = employee pay + ee = payee
— ion	act + ion = action radiate + ion = radiation	—ist	type + ist = typist novel + ist = novelist
—ment	punish + ment = punishment astonish + ment = astonishment	—let	out + let = outlet book + let = booklet
—th	heal + th = health wide + th = width	—ance	appear + ance = appearance hinder + ance = hinderance
—ty	cruel + ty = cruelty loyal + ty = loyalty	—eer	mountain + eer = mountaineer
—ard	dull + ard = dullard drunk + ard = drunkard	—ize	legal + ize = legalize
—ive	act + ive = active decept + ive = deceptive	—ling	seed + ling = seedling
—en	wood + en = wooden earth + en = earthen	—ation	starve + ation = starvation
—ward	back + ward = backward on + ward = onward	—st	among + st = amongst
		—ary	honor + ary = honorary

आपने देखा कि विभिन्न शब्दों के साथ जब Morphemes जुटते हैं तब उनके अर्थ और रूप में परिवर्तन होता है। ठीक इसके विपरीत Morphemes से युक्त शब्दों को जब प्रयुक्त Morphemes से मुक्त करते हैं तब उनके रूप और अर्थ में परिवर्तन होता है, जैसे—boys, played, careful में से जब क्रमशः —s, —ed तथा —ful Morphemes हटाते हैं तो हमें boy, play तथा care मिलते हैं जो अभीष्ट शब्दों से रूप और अर्थ में भिन्न हैं।

Form Classes & Structure Words

अब Form Classes तथा Structure Words को समझें। आप जानते हैं कि traditional grammar में अँग्रेजी के तमाम शब्दों को आठ वर्गों में विभाजित किया गया है और इनमें से प्रत्येक को Part of Speech के नाम से संबोधित किया गया है, परन्तु आधुनिक युग के grammarians ने अँग्रेजी के शब्दों का एक नया वर्गीकरण किया है जिसके अनुसार शब्दों के सिर्फ दो भेद हैं—

1. Form Classes
2. Structure Words

यहाँ आपको यह जानना है कि इस नये वर्गीकरण का आधार क्या है और प्रत्येक वर्ग में कौन-कौन शब्द आते हैं।

Form Classes : इसके अन्तर्गत सिर्फ वैसे शब्द आते हैं जो Morphemes से प्रभावित होकर अपने रूप बदलते हैं। जैसे—cat, play, fast इत्यादि। जब इनके साथ विभिन्न Morphemes प्रंयुक्त किए जाते हैं तब कुछ ऐसे शब्द बनते हैं जो grammatically मूलरूप और अर्थ से भिन्न होते हैं, जैसे—

cat से cats, play से plays, played, playing, playful, etc तथा fast से faster, fastest, fasten, unfasten, fastness, etc.

Form Classes के निम्नलिखित चार भेद हैं—

1. **Nouns : cat/cats, boy/boys, box/boxes**
2. **Adjectives : fast/faster/fastest, easy/easier/easiest**
3. **Verbs : play/played, talk/talked**
4. **Adverbs : happily, beautifully, slowly**

Note : कुछ Adjectives (जैसे—my, your, some, each, etc), कुछ Verbs (जैसे—am, is, are, etc) तथा कुछ Adverbs (जैसे—very, too, etc) ऐसे हैं जिन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। ऐसे Adjectives, Verbs तथा Adverbs को Form Classes के अन्तर्गत नहीं रखा गया है। इन्हें क्रमशः Determiners, Auxiliaries तथा Intensifiers के रूप में Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

Some More Hints on Form Classes :

(i) चूँकि Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs तथा Adverbs certain Morphemes की मदद से अपने रूप परिवर्तित करते हैं, अतः इन्हें इनके forms से पहचाना जा सकता है।

(ii) इनमें से प्रत्येक को sentence में इनके स्थान से भी पहचाना जा सकता है। (i) तथा (ii) को समझने के लिए इन पर विचार करें।

Doggles wanned poggles.
Doms panethed topjects.

ऊपर के सभी words meaningless हैं। इनके कोई dictionary meaning नहीं हैं। फिर भी अगर हम यह मान लें कि ये words हैं और प्रयुक्त combinations Sentences हैं तो इनके forms तथा structures के आधार पर हम निम्नलिखित निष्कर्ष पर पहुँच सकते हैं।

1. Doggles, poggles, doms तथा topjects Plural Nouns हैं जैसा कि वाक्य में इनके स्थान तथा इनके अंत में प्रयुक्त Morphemes (s/es) से स्पष्ट है।
2. wanned तथा panethed Verbs in Past Tense हैं जैसा कि वाक्य में इनके स्थान तथा इनके अंत में प्रयुक्त Morpheme (-ed) से स्पष्ट है।

इन सभी तथ्यों को ध्यान में रखते हुए हम यह कह सकते हैं कि Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives तथा Adverbs को Form Classes क्यों कहते हैं—

Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives तथा Adverbs को Form Classes इसलिए कहते हैं कि एक class के words वाक्यों में बराबर कुछ खास दिए गए स्थानों में ही प्रयुक्त होते हैं और ऐसे शब्दों को उनके forms (रूप) से पहचाना जा सकता है।

(Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives and Adverbs are called Form Classes because each one of them occupies a certain set of positions in sentences and they have features of forms.)

Structure Words

उन सभी शब्दों को Structure Words कहा जाता है जिन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। इनका मुख्य काम Sentence के Structure को स्पष्ट करना है।

Structure Words के भेद : Structure Words के निम्नलिखित मुख्य भेद हैं—

1. Determiners
2. Pronouns
3. Prepositions
4. Auxiliaries
5. Intensifiers
6. Conjunctions
7. Interjections
8. Sentence-connectors
9. Subordinators
10. Question-words

1. Determiners : Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त वे सभी शव्द Determiners हैं जिनके वाद किसी Noun का प्रयोग आवश्यक हो जाता है। इस प्रकार Determiner के प्रयोग से यह सूचना मिलती है कि अव Noun आने वाला है। उदाहरण के लिए जव आप किसी Sentence में a, an, the, my, your इत्यादि लिखा देखते हैं तव आप यह जान जाते हैं कि इसके वाद कोई-न-कोई Noun अवश्य आने वाला है। Determiner के तुरन्त बाद Noun आ सकता है या Determiner तथा Noun के बीच में qualifying words रह सकते हैं, लेकिन

सभी स्थितियों में Determiner के बाद Noun आयेगा, इस बात की झलक रहती है। अर्थात् Determiner Noun के arrival का सूचक है।

निम्नलिखित प्रमुख Determiners हैं :

(a) **Articles :** a, an, the

(b) **Possessive Adjectives :** my, your, our, his, her, its, their

(c) **Demonstrative Adjectives :** this, that, these, those

(d) **Adjectives of Number and Quantity :**

one, two, three, four, ...
first, second, third, fourth, ...
double, twice, thrice, ...
one-third, two-fifths, ...

all	many	next	a little
both	any	other	the little
half	several	few	much
some	most	a few	whole
more	no	the few	enough
less	last	little	

(e) **Distributive Adjectives :** each, every, either, neither, both

(f) **Interrogative Adjectives :** what, which, whose

(g) **Some phrases denoting Quantity and Number :**

plenty of	a large number of	a small amount of
a lot of	a great deal of	a large amount of
lots of	a good deal of	

अब कुछ Sentences दिए जा रहे हैं जिनमें Determiners के प्रयोग को देखें और समझें—

I have a red pen.

She was a very beautiful girl.

The cow is an animal.

My brother is a teacher.

This cat is very beautiful.

Those books are useful.

Every boy has a pen.

Either way is safe.

Which class do you read in ?

What work will you do ?

I need **some** apples/milk.
She has **one** son and **three** daughters.
Both books are out of **the** library.
The whole town was destroyed by fire.
There were a **large number of** students there.

Note No. 1. जब वाक्य में This, That, These तथा Those के साथ Nouns जुटे नहीं रहते हैं तब इन्हें Determiners नहीं कहते हैं। वैसी अवस्था में इन्हें Demonstrative Pronouns कहते हैं। जैसे, इन वाक्यों में This, That, These तथा Those Demonstrative Pronouns हैं—

This/That is my pen.
These/Those are flowers.

Note No. 2. This/That/These/Those के अलावे और भी अनेक Determiners हैं जिनका प्रयोग Pronouns के रूप में भी होता है। ये हैं—

some, all, most, many, more, several, both, half, enough, one, either, neither, each, what, which, whose, etc

Some cows are gentle.	(some—determiner)
Some are gentle.	(some—pronoun)
I have found some.	(some—pronoun)
Some of you are guilty.	(some—pronoun)
Either way is safe.	(either—determiner)
Either of the ways is safe.	(either—pronoun)
You can choose either.	(either—pronoun)
Which is yours ?	(which—pronoun)
Which book is yours ?	(which—determiner)

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि Determiners की सूची में हमने जितने शब्दों का उल्लेख किया है उनमें से अधिकांश बिना Nouns के प्रयुक्त हो सकते हैं या अपने बाद of constructions ले सकते हैं। दोनों ही स्थितियों में उन्हें Pronouns कहेंगे।

Determiners तथा Adjectives में अंतर :

(i) Traditional grammar में Determiners की चर्चा नहीं है, पर Adjective की चर्चा है। आधुनिक grammar में आप यह समझ लें कि उन Adjectives को दो भागों में बाँट दिया गया है। एक भाग में वैसे Adjectives हैं जिनके रूप नहीं बदलते और दूसरे भाग में वैसे Adjectives हैं जिनके रूप बदलते हैं। जिनके रूप नहीं बदलते उन्हें Determiners के रूप में वर्गीकृत किया गया है और जिनके रूप बदलते हैं उन्हें पुराने नाम Adjectives से ही संबोधित किया गया है।

(ii) Determiners Structural Words के अंग हैं और Adjectives Form Classes के।

(iii) Determiners हमेशा Nouns के पहले आते हैं पर Adjectives Nouns के बाद भी आ सकते हैं।

प्रयोग के अनुसार Determiners के तीन भेद हैं :—

Predeterminers	Central Determiners	Postdeterminers
all, both, half	a, an, the	one, two, three, etc
double, twice, etc	this, that, these, those	first, second, etc
one-third, etc	my, your, his, etc	next, last, other, etc
what, such, etc (what a boy, such a boy)	what, which, whose (Interrogative Adjectives)	many, few, little, several, more, etc (Quantifiers)
	some, any, no, every, each, either, neither, enough, much	

ऊपर की तालिका से स्पष्ट है कि वाक्य में अगर Central Determiner के साथ Predeterminer प्रयुक्त करना हो तो पहले Predeterminer आयेगा उसके बाद Central Determiner। इस प्रकार वाक्य में अगर Central Determiner के साथ Postdeterminer प्रयुक्त करना हो तो पहले Central Determiner आयेगा और तब उसके बाद Postdeterminer. (pre = पहले, post = बाद में)

All the boys were present.
I want half the butter.
All these cars are mine.
I go there twice a week.
What a nuisance !
This is my first book.
I want some more milk.
His many friends never deserted him.

ऊपर लिखित सभी तथ्यों को जानने के बाद आपके लिए यह जानना जरूरी है कि किसी खास Determiner के बाद जो Noun प्रयुक्त होगा वह निम्नलिखित में से कौन-कौन हो सकता है—

Uncountable Noun (जैसे—water, love, etc)

Singular Countable Noun (जैसे—cow, dog, man, town, tree, etc)

Plural Countable Noun (जैसे—cows, dogs, men, trees, apples, etc)

इसके लिए इस table को हमेशा ध्यान में रखें—

Any kind of Noun (water/ egg/eggs)	Uncountable Nouns or Singular Countable Nouns (water/egg)	Singular Countable Nouns (egg)	Uncountable Nouns (water)	Uncountable Nouns or Plural Countable Nouns (water/eggs)	Plural Nouns (eggs)
the	this	a	much	some	these
my	that				
your		an	(a) little	more	those
his					
her		each	a good deal of	most	many
its					
our		every		all (the)	(a) few
their			a great		
which		either	deal of	a lot of	several
what					
whose		neither		lots of	two, three, etc
no					
any		one		other	
		another		enough	both (the)
one-third, two-fifths, etc					
double, twice, etc					
half					

Note : (a) first/second/third का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है—
first/second/third plane
first three prizes, three first prizes

(b) last, next इत्यादि का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है—
last/next week
last/next two books, two last/next books

Determiners को आप अच्छी तरह समझ चुके हैं। अब आप एक-एक कर अन्य Structure Words को समझें—

2. Pronouns : I, me, mine, we, us, ours, you, yours, she, her, hers, he, his, they, them, theirs, इत्यादि Pronouns हैं। आपने इनका अध्ययन Traditional Grammar में किया है। ये किसी Noun के बदले में

प्रयुक्त होते हैं। चूँकि इन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है इसलिए इन्हें Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

3. Prepositions : at, in, with, without, into, after, for, under, above, before इत्यादि Prepositions हैं। आपने इनका अध्ययन Traditional Grammar में किया है। इन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। इसलिए इन्हें भी Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

4. Auxiliaries : am, is, are, was, were, do, does, did, shall, will, can, could, may, might, would, should, must, ought, इत्यादि Auxiliaries हैं। इनकी कार्य प्रणाली Lexical Verbs (जैसे—go, eat, laugh, etc) से पूर्णतः भिन्न है। ये Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं। इसलिए इन्हें भी Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

Note : इनमें से कुछ (जैसे—do, does, did, etc) का प्रयोग Lexical Verbs के रूप में भी होता है।

5. Intensifiers : Traditional Grammar में आपने Adverbs का अध्ययन किया है। आधुनिक वर्गीकरण में इन्हें दो भागों में बाँटा गया है। वैसे Adverbs जिन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव पड़ता है उन्हें Form Classes के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है तथा उन्हें पुराने नाम Adverbs से ही संबोधित किया गया है। वैसे Adverbs जिन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है उन्हें Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है और उनमें से कुछ को Intensifiers तथा कुछ को Question-words से संबोधित किया गया है। Intensifiers वे हैं जो Adjectives/Adverbs के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर उनके अर्थ को और अधिक जोरदार बनाते हैं। निम्नलिखित प्रमुख Intensifiers हैं—

very, rather, more, most, quite, too, etc.

6. Conjunctions : Conjunctions दो या दो से अधिक words/clauses/sentences को जोड़ते हैं। and, but, or, nor, yet इत्यादि प्रमुख Conjunctions हैं। ये Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं। इसलिए इन्हें भी Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

7. Interjections : Alas, Hurrah, Ah, Hello इत्यादि Interjections हैं। ये सभी Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं, अतः इन्हें Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

8. Sentence-connectors : Sentence-connectors सामान्यतः दो Sentences को जोड़ते हैं, जैसे—

He did not obey the rule, therefore, his passport was cancelled.

Since sculptures in stone are very durable, most museums contain a large number of stone statues.

यहाँ **therefore** तथा **since** का प्रयोग Sentence-connectors के रूप में हुआ है।

इसी प्रकार hence, so, but, yet, etc जब दो स्वतंत्र वाक्यों को जोड़ते हैं तब इन्हें Sentence-connectors कहा जाता है।

9. Sub-ordinators : Sub-ordinators, Sub-ordinate Clauses के आने का संकेत करते हैं। ये Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं, अतः इन्हें भी Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है। इन वाक्यों को देखें—

He did not go to school **because** he was ill.
I shall go **before** he comes.
Wait **till** I return.
I don't know **whether** she has come.
He knows **what** you don't know.

ऊपर के वाक्यों में because, before, till, whether तथा what से Sub-ordinate Clauses शुरू हुए हैं। अतः इन्हें Sub-ordinators कहेंगे। इसी प्रकार जब as, when, which, where, though, if, since, etc से Sub-ordinate Clauses शुरू होते हैं तब ये Sub-ordinators कहे जाते हैं।

10. Question-words : whom, who, whose, what, when, where, which, how, why, etc का प्रयोग ज़ब Direct Questions पूछने में किया जाता है तब इन्हें Question-words कहते हैं जैसा कि इन उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है—

Who is your father ?
What is he ?
Where will you go ?
How do you do ?

चूँकि ये Question-words Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं अतः इन्हें Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

Note : जब who, what, when, why, where, etc Indirect Speech में इस प्रकार प्रयुक्त होते हैं तब इन्हें Sub-ordinators कहा जाता है क्योंकि वैसी स्थिति में इनसे Sub-ordinate Clauses के शुरू होने का संकेत मिलता है। जैसे—

I know **who** your father is.

Do you know **where** he lives ?

Some Special Notes on Form Classes & Structure Words :

English words को **Morphemes** के आधार पर दो वर्गों में बाँटा गया है। इस वर्गीकरण के पीछे एक महत्त्वपूर्ण तथ्य है जिसे जानना आपके लिए आवश्यक है। विभिन्न वाक्यों को गौर से देखने पर आप पायेंगे कि Form

प्रयुक्त होते हैं। चूँकि इन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है इसलिए इन्हें Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

3. Prepositions : at, in, with, without, into, after, for, under, above, before इत्यादि Prepositions हैं। आपने इनका अध्ययन Traditional Grammar में किया है। इन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। इसलिए इन्हें भी Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

4. Auxiliaries : am, is, are, was, were, do, does, did, shall, will, can, could, may, might, would, should, must, ought, इत्यादि Auxiliaries हैं। इनकी कार्य प्रणाली Lexical Verbs (जैसे—go, eat, laugh, etc) से पूर्णतः भिन्न है। ये Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं। इसलिए इन्हें भी Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

> **Note :** इनमें से कुछ (जैसे—do, does, did, etc) का प्रयोग Lexical Verbs के रूप में भी होता है।

5. Intensifiers : Traditional Grammar में आपने Adverbs का अध्ययन किया है। आधुनिक वर्गीकरण में इन्हें दो भागों में बाँटा गया है। वैसे Adverbs जिन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव पड़ता है उन्हें Form Classes के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है तथा उन्हें पुराने नाम Adverbs से ही संबोधित किया गया है। वैसे Adverbs जिन पर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है उन्हें Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है और उनमें से कुछ को Intensifiers तथा कुछ को Question-words से संबोधित किया गया है। Intensifiers वे हैं जो Adjectives/Adverbs के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर उनके अर्थ को और अधिक जोरदार बनाते हैं। निम्नलिखित प्रमुख Intensifiers हैं—

very, rather, more, most, quite, too, etc.

6. Conjunctions : Conjunctions दो या दो से अधिक words/clauses/sentences को जोड़ते हैं। and, but, or, nor, yet इत्यादि प्रमुख Conjunctions हैं। ये Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं। इसलिए इन्हें भी Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

7. Interjections : Alas, Hurrah, Ah, Hello इत्यादि Interjections हैं। ये सभी Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं, अतः इन्हें Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

8. Sentence-connectors : Sentence-connectors सामान्यतः दो Sentences को जोड़ते हैं, जैसे—

He did not obey the rule, therefore, his passport was cancelled.

Since sculptures in stone are very durable, most museums contain a large number of stone statues.

यहाँ **therefore** तथा **since** का प्रयोग Sentence-connectors के रूप में हुआ है।

इसी प्रकार hence, so, but, yet, etc जब दो स्वतंत्र वाक्यों को जोड़ते हैं तब इन्हें Sentence-connectors कहा जाता है।

9. Sub-ordinators : Sub-ordinators, Sub-ordinate Clauses के आने का संकेत करते हैं। ये Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं, अतः इन्हें भी Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है। इन वाक्यों को देखें—

He did not go to school **because** he was ill.
I shall go **before** he comes.
Wait **till** I return.
I don't know **whether** she has come.
He knows **what** you don't know.

ऊपर के वाक्यों में because, before, till, whether तथा what से Sub-ordinate Clauses शुरू हुए हैं। अतः इन्हें Sub-ordinators कहेंगे। इसी प्रकार जब as, when, which, where, though, if, since, etc से Sub-ordinate Clauses शुरू होते हैं तब ये Sub-ordinators कहे जाते हैं।

10. Question-words : whom, who, whose, what, when, where, which, how, why, etc का प्रयोग ज़ब Direct Questions पूछने में किया जाता है तब इन्हें Question-words कहते हैं जैसा कि इन उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है—

Who is your father ?
What is he ?
Where will you go ?
How do you do ?

चूँकि ये Question-words Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं अतः इन्हें Structure Words के अन्तर्गत रखा गया है।

Note : जब who, what, when, why, where, etc Indirect Speech में इस प्रकार प्रयुक्त होते हैं तब इन्हें Sub-ordinators कहा जाता है क्योंकि वैसी स्थिति में इनसे Sub-ordinate Clauses के शुरू होने का संकेत मिलता है। जैसे—

I know who your father is.

Do you know where he lives ?

Some Special Notes on Form Classes & Structure Words :

English words को Morphemes के आधार पर दो वर्गों में बाँटा गया है। इस वर्गीकरण के पीछे एक महत्त्वपूर्ण तथ्य है जिसे जानना आपके लिए आवश्यक है। विभिन्न वाक्यों को गौर से देखने पर आप पायेंगे कि Form

Classes के अन्तर्गत जो भी शब्द आये हैं वे Basic Sentences बनाने में प्रयुक्त होते हैं, जैसे—

1. Cows eat grass.
2. Ram drank milk.
3. Birds look beautiful.
4. Horses run fast.

पुनः सिर्फ Form Classes की सहायता से अनेक ऐसे वाक्य बनते हैं जो संकुचित अर्थ रखते हैं तथा अनेक स्थितियों में अस्पष्ट अर्थ देते हैं, जैसे—

5. Guard watches carefully.

इस वाक्य को पढ़ने से यह स्पष्ट नहीं होता है कि guard/watches Noun है या Verb. अगर हम guard को Noun मानते हैं तो वाक्य का अर्थ होगा— पहरेदार सावधानीपूर्वक पहरा देता है।

अगर हम guard को Verb मानते हैं तो वाक्य का अर्थ होगा—घड़ियों की सावधानीपूर्वक रखवाली करो। स्पष्टतः अभीष्ट वाक्य ambiguous अर्थ रखते हैं।

अब सवाल यह उठता है कि Basic Sentences को expand कैसे किया जाए; संकुचित तथा ambiguous अर्थ वाले वाक्यों को स्पष्ट अर्थ वाले वाक्यों में कैसे परिवर्तित किया जाए। इन सबों का एक ही समाधान है और वह है Structure Words का प्रयोग। आप देखेंगे कि सभी Structure Words Form Classes के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर वाक्य के structure को संतुलित करते हैं जिससे वाक्य के अर्थ को नया आयाम मिलता है और हम भाषा की अभिव्यक्ति को desirable shape/meaning दे पाते हैं। जैसे, ऊपर लिखित sentencesको इस प्रकार expand कर सकते हैं—

1. Cows eat green grass.
2. Ram drank some milk.
3. Most of the birds look very beautiful.
4. Horses run very fast.

पुनः ambiguous अर्थ वाले वाक्यों को Structure Words की सहायता से स्पष्ट अर्थ वाले वाक्यों में बदल सकते हैं। जैसे—

The guard watches carefully.

Guard the watches carefully.

यहाँ the प्रयुक्त होने से ambiguity समाप्त हो गया है। अब हम स्पष्ट रूप से कह सकते हैं कि पहले वाक्य में guard Noun है तथा watches Verb। दूसरे वाक्य में guard Verb है तथा watches Noun.

इस प्रकार शब्दों का नया वर्गीकरण भाषा-विज्ञान को ठोस रूप देने का प्रयास है।

Exercises Worked Out

1. Pick out the determiner, intensifier, sentence-connector and subordinator in the following sentences :

(a) The man was very tired.
(b) My father is ill, therefore, I cannot go to school today.
(c) Some boys of this school are very good singers.
(d) A king had three wives.
(e) Wait till I return.
(f) All that he said was not wrong.
(g) It is quite wrong.

Answers :

(a) Determiner — the
Intensifier — very
(b) Determiner — my
Sentence-connector — therefore
(c) Determiner — some, this
Intensifier — very
(d) Determiner — a, three
(e) Sub-ordinator — till
(f) Sub-ordinator — that
(g) Intensifier — quite

2. Pick out the pronoun, determiner, sub-ordinator and question word in the following sentences.

(a) Each boy had a pen.
(b) Each of them had some milk.
(c) Some of you can't do this.
(d) Some boys can't do this.
(e) Who is this man ?
(f) All the boys are absent.
(g) All that he wanted to do ended well.
(h) That book is not mine.
(i) That is a foolish question.

Answers :

(a) Determiner — each, a
(b) Pronoun — each, them
Determiner — some
(c) Pronoun — some, this, you
(d) Pronoun — this
Determiner — some
(e) Question-word — who
Determiner — this
(f) Determiner — all, the
(g) Pronoun — all
Sub-ordinator — that
(h) Determiner — that
Pronoun — mine
(i) Pronoun — that
Determiner — a

3. Fill in the blanks with appropriate determiners, intensifiers and sub-ordinators.

(a) She has ...... milk.
(b) ......cow is ...... animal.
(c) He is ...... good.
(d) The news is ...... good to be true.
(e) He went to a club ...... he had no company.
(f) She gave the beggar ...... flour.
(g) This is the book ...... I found yesterday.

Answers : (a) some, (b) the, an, (c) very, (d) too, (e) because, (f) a little, (g) which

EXERCISE 1

Pick out the determiner, intensifier, sentence connector and subordinator in the following sentences.

1. The boy had a pen in his pocket.
2. This boy is very poor.
3. He has a little patience, therefore, he cannot get success.
4. Each boy will get enough sweets.
5. Whose answer is quite right ?
6. You will be punished because you are late.
7. Some boys said that they would do.
8. Though he is poor, he is honest.
9. I have no money, so I shall buy nothing.
10. Gavaskar is a very good player. He played well, therefore, he got many medals.
11. He talked rather foolishly.
12. Wait till I return.
13. I know what you know.
14. I don't know whether she has come.
15. He is what he was.

EXERCISE 2

Pick out the pronoun, determiner, sub-ordinator and question-word in the following sentences.

1. This book is very interesting.
2. This is an interesting book.
3. Some are gentle.
4. Some cows are gentle.
5. Many of them were killed.
6. Many boys are absent today.

7. All are foolish.
8. All the boys are ready to go.
9. What is this ?
10. What work will you do ?
11. I know what you want.
12. Either boy can do.
13. Either of the boys can do.
14. Both the boys are ready.
15. Both of them are ready.
16. Who are you ?
17. Which is yours ?
18. Which book is yours ?
19. I don't know where he lives.
20. He said that he would do.
21. That is his.

EXERCISE 3

Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners/intensifiers/ sentence-connectors/subordinators/question-words choosing from the brackets.

1. She has ...... money. (much, many)
2. I have read ...... novels. (much, many)
3. She has ...... milk. (no, any)
4. My son's health is ...... good. (too, very)
5. ...... sons are honest. (all, my)
6. Are you going to buy ...... books. (these, all)
7. This is ...... egg I bought yesterday. (an, the)
8. He was tired, ..., he went home. (therefore, because)
9. He asked me ...... I was ill. (if, that)
10. ...... is ...... boy ? (this, who)
11. I am ...... tired to work. (too, very)
12. He gave ...... apple to his sister. (the, half)
13. ...... sons are dishonest. (his, both)
14. He has ......rice. (a few, a little)
15. Do you know ...... he was ? (who, that)

□ □ □

2. Articles

A, An तथा The को Articles कहा जाता है। A/An को Indefinite Article तथा The को Definite Article कहा जाता है। Modern English Grammar में Articles को Determiners के अंतर्गत रखा गया है।

Pronunciations of the Articles

Articles	Weak forms	Strong forms
a	अ	ए
an	अन	ऐन
the	द, दि	दी

जब हम अँग्रेजी में बात करते हैं या speech देते हैं तो सामान्यतया weak forms का प्रयोग करते हैं। a का उच्चारण 'अ', an का उच्चारण 'अन' तथा the का उच्चारण 'द/दि' करते हैं। 'द' consonant sounds के पहले तथा 'दि' vowel sounds के पहले। जब a, an तथा the का उच्चारण स्वतंत्र रूप से करना हो या speech/discourse में a/an/the के बाद आने वाले शब्द पर विशेष जोर देना हो तो इनके strong forms का प्रयोग किया जाता है। इन परिस्थितियों में a का 'ए', an का 'ऐन' तथा the का 'दी' उच्चारण होता है।

Position of Articles

1. Articles का प्रयोग Noun के ठीक पहले होता है। अगर Noun के पहले कोई Adjective रहे तो Articles का प्रयोग उस Adjective के ठीक पहले होगा। अगर Noun के पहले Adjective तथा Adjective के पहले Adverb रहे तो Articles का प्रयोग Adverb के पहले होगा। जैसे—

Sita is a girl.

Sita is a good girl.

Sita is an ideal girl.

Sita is a very good girl.

Sita is an extremely beautiful girl.

This is the horse.

This is the strongest horse.

Note : जब very के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है तब the very का अर्थ होता है—'वही' और इसका प्रयोग Noun पर जोर देने के लिए किया जाता है।

This is the very boy—यह वही लड़का है।

2. अनेक परिस्थितियों में all, both, such, double, half, many, rather, exactly, what, quite, just, etc के बाद article आता है। जैसे—

all the boys
all the same
both the red pens
such a woman
double the amount
half an hour
half a kilo
many a man
many an hour
rather a good idea
exactly the wrong colour
what a fall
quite a lucky man
just the right amount

3. अगर Noun के पहले adjective हो और adjective के पहले how/so/too/as हो तो article का स्थान adjective तथा noun के बीच में आता है। अर्थात् how/so/too/as+adjective+a/an+noun

how fine a day
how accomplished a singer
so serious an attempt
so fine a day/man
too proud a girl
too good an attempt
as good a man as he
as pleasant a day as that

How brave a warrior was he !
It is so fine a day !
She is too proud a girl to ask for help.
It was as pleasant a day as I have ever spent.

Use of A/An

A/An को Indefinite Article कहते हैं, क्योंकि इससे किसी खास व्यक्ति या वस्तु विशेष की ओर संकेत नहीं होता है। इसके प्रयोग के संबंध में निम्नलिखित बातों पर ध्यान दें—

1. A/An का प्रयोग Singular Countable Noun (अर्थात् common noun और collective noun) के पहले होता है अगर उस Noun से किसी अनिश्चित व्यक्ति/जानवर/वस्तु का बोध होता हो।

2. यदि noun के पहले adjective या adjective + adverb हो तो A/An का प्रयोग अपने से सबसे नजदीक आने वाले शब्द के अनुसार होगा। जैसे :—

She is a girl.
She is an ideal girl.
She is a very beautiful girl.
She is an extremely beautiful girl.

3. जिस शब्द के पहले Indefinite Article (A/An) का प्रयोग करना हो यदि वह स्वर-ध्वनि (vowel sound) से प्रारंभ हो तो an का प्रयोग होगा। यदि वह शब्द व्यंजन-ध्वनि (consonant sound) से प्रारंभ हो तो a का प्रयोग होगा। यहाँ ध्यान देने वाली बात यह है कि a/an का प्रयोग अभीष्ट शब्द के उच्चारण पर निर्भर करता है

spelling पर नहीं। Traditional Grammarians के अनुसार a, e, i, o तथा u vowels हैं एवं शेष 21 letters consonants हैं। परन्तु सच तो यह है कि vowels तथा consonants sounds हैं letters नहीं तथा English में 20 vowel sounds एवं 24 consonant sounds हैं।

Vowels—

i: (ई) as in see, tree, be
ɪ (इ) as in sit, rich, city
e (ए) as in men, bed, red
æ (ऐ) as in cat, bad, rat
ɑ: (आ) as in pass, bath, car
ɑ (ऑ) as in dog, cot, fog
ɔ: (ऑ:) as in law, saw, all
ʊ (उ) as in put, full, book
u: (ऊ) as in too, food, soon
ɜ: (अ:) as in earth, girl, bird
ʌ (अ) as in cup, son, cut
ə (अ) as in ago, about, above
eɪ (ए) as in day, eight, late
aɪ (आइ) as in time, idea, cry
ɔɪ (ऑइ) as in boy, noise, coin
əʊ (ओ) as in so, old, road
aʊ (आउ) as in cow, out, town
ɪə (इअ) as in near, deer, tear
eə (एअ) as in air, fair, care
ʊə (उअ) as in poor, gourd, pure

Consonants—

p (प) as in pen, pot, pin
b (ब) as in bat, ball, boy
t (ट) as in ten, toy, it
d (ड) as in den, day, dog
k (क) as in cat, cot, car
g (ग) as in gun, go, goat
tʃ (च) as in chin, child, chief
dʒ (ज) as in June, Jew, judge
f (फ) as in fan, fog, fat
v (व) as in voice, van, vale
θ (थ) as in thin, thumb, thief
ð (द) as in them, this, they
s (स) as in sit, son, sun
z (ज) as in zoo, zero, zinc
ʃ (श) as in she, shoe, shop
ʒ (ज) as in vision, pleasure
h (ह) as in hen, hot, hay
m (म) as in mat, man, mole
n (न) as in no, not, nib
ŋ (न्ग) as in ring, king, sing
l (ल) as in leg, ill, lean
r (र) as in red, run, room
j (य) as in yes, year, young
w (व) as in win, wife, wall

4. कोई शब्द vowel letter से प्रारंभ हो सकता है, परन्तु यह आवश्यक नहीं है कि शब्द का उच्चारण vowel sound से शुरू हो। An का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से उसी शब्द के पहले होगा जिसका उच्चारण vowel-sound से प्रारंभ हो। जैसे :–

a boy	an ant	an honest man
a cow	an axe	an ideal teacher
a cat	an owl	an M. A.
a rat	an officer	a university professor
a day	an editor	a very honest man

अतः A/An का प्रयोग करने से पहले आप देखें कि अभीष्ट शब्द का उच्चारण vowel sound से शुरू हो रहा है कि consonant sound से। कोई शब्द vowel sound से शुरू हो रहा है या consonant sound से इसे निश्चित रूप से जानने के लिए एक और सरल नियम है। जिस शब्द के पहले a/an का प्रयोग करना हो उसके उच्चारण को हिन्दी में लिखें। यदि उसका पहला अक्षर हिन्दी में व्यंजन हो तो उसके पहले a का प्रयोग करें। यदि उसका पहला अक्षर हिन्दी में स्वर हो तो an का प्रयोग करें।

हिन्दी में स्वर—अ आ इ ई..........

हिन्दी में व्यंजन—क, ख, ग.........

कुछ शब्द लें :–

a university	(यूनिवर्सिटी)	व्यंजन-ध्वनि से प्रारंभ
an hour	(आवर)	स्वर-ध्वनि से प्रारंभ
an honest man	(ऑनेस्ट)	" " " "
an M. A.	(एम० ए०)	" " " "
an S. D. O.	(एस० डी० ओ०)	" " " "
a one-rupee note	(वन-रूपी)	व्यंजन-ध्वनि से प्रारंभ
a union	(युनियन)	" " " "
a young man	(यंग)	" " " "
a ewe	(यू)	" " " "
a dog	(डॉग)	" " " "

यहाँ एक बात ध्यान में रखें कि जो शब्द silent 'h' से प्रारंभ होते हैं उनका उच्चारण vowel-sound से शुरू होता है। अतः जिस शब्द के पहले a/an लगाना हो वह शब्द अगर silent 'h' से शुरू होता हो तो वैसे शब्द के पहले an का प्रयोग होगा किन्तु ऐसे शब्द जो h से प्रारंभ होते हैं और जिनमें h का उच्चारण होता है, उनके पहले a का प्रयोग होगा।

with a silent 'h'	*with the 'h' pronounced*
an hour	a horse
an hourly report	a helicopter
an hour's rest	a hotel
an honour	a historical place
an honorary post	a historical event
an honourable man	a humble man
an honest man	a human being
an heir	a humorous man
an heiress	a husband
an honorarium	a heinous crime

Some Solved Examples :

a eulogy
a young man

a ewe
a European
a one-rupee note
a one-eyed man
a one-act play
a one-sided game
a one-sided statement
a one-man committee
a one-legged beggar
a university
a union
a university professor
a uniform
a unit
a useful book
a useless book
a usual feature
a universal dispute
a unique idea
a united team
an umbrella
a unification plan
a usurper
a year
a yellow flower
a youth

a yard
a U. S. ally
a U. K. spokesman
a U. K. ship
an F. O.
an S. D. O.
a Sub-Divisional Officer
a Forest Officer
an M. A.
a B. A.
an I. A. S.
an I. P. S.
an S. P.
an H. E. School
an M. P.
an M. L. A.
an M. Sc.
an R. S. S. Worker
an N. C. C. Officer
an L. P. School
an x-ray plant
an R. T. C. bus
an F. I. R.
a B. D. O.
a C. O.
an M. L. C

Some More Uses of A/An

5. एक या कोई एक के अर्थ में a/an का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

I saw a boy. (कोई एक लड़का)
Have you a pen ? (कोई पेन/एक पेन)
A farmer had three sons. (एक किसान/कोई एक किसान)

6. एक ही (the same) का बोध कराने के लिए a/an का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Birds of a feather flock together. (एक ही feather वाले)

7. दर, नाप-तौल, गतिसूचक शब्दों के पहले a/an का प्रयोग होता है। तब a/an का अर्थ होता है—की दर से/के हिसाब से/प्रत्येक/प्रति इत्यादि। (here a/an=per)

Rice sells eight rupees a kilo. (आठ रूपये प्रति किलो)
The train runs sixty kilometers an hour. (साठ कि० मी० प्रति घंटा)

The medicine is to be taken four times a day. (प्रतिदिन चार बार)
I earn Rs 5000/- a month. (Rs 5000/- प्रतिमाह/प्रत्येक माह)

8. कुछ गिनती-सूचक शब्दों के पहले a/an लगता है।

a couple, a dozen, a hundred, a thousand, a million

$1\frac{1}{2}$ kilos = one and a half kilos or a kilo and a half

परन्तु $\frac{1}{2}$ kg. = half a kilo (a half kilo कहना गलत होगा)

$\frac{1}{3}$ = a third/one third

$\frac{1}{4}$ = a quarter/one quarter

$\frac{1}{5}$ = a fifth/one fifth

$\frac{1}{10}$ = a tenth/one tenth

$2\frac{1}{4}$ miles = two and a quarter miles

I have a hundred rupees.
I have a thousand rupees.
He has a dozen eggs.
He had a million rupees.
A couple of hours will be enough for the work.
I have to go two and a quarter miles a day.

9. पूरी जाति का बोध कराने के लिए Singular Countable Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

A cow is an animal. (सभी गायें)
A lion cannot eat grass. (सभी शेर)
An ox is a very useful animal. (सभी बैल)
A child needs love. (सभी बच्चे)

ध्यान दें कि–

A cow is an animal.
= Cows are animals.
= All cows are animals.
= Any/Every cow is an animal.
= The cow is an animal.

10. जब किसी Singular Countable Noun की चर्चा हम प्रथम बार करते हैं तो Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग करते हैं।

There was a king. The King was very wise.
I lost a pen. The pen was very costly.
Yesterday a man came to me. The man was very hungry.

11. पेशा के नाम के पहले a/an का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

I am a doctor.
He is studying to be an engineer.
He is a farmer.
He was a postman.
She is a nurse.

12. जब Verb का प्रयोग Noun की तरह होता है, तब इसके पहले प्रायः a/an का प्रयोग होता है।

My father has gone for a walk.
I want to have a rest/a bath/a drink now.
He has gone for a swim/a ride.
Yesterday I had a long talk with him.
She gave a talk on her visit to Delhi.

13. ऐसे व्यक्ति के नाम के पहले जिसके विषय में उसके नाम के अलावे और कुछ ज्ञात नहीं है, a/an का प्रयोग होता है।

A Mr. Kapoor (कोई एक मिस्टर कपूर) gave me this letter for you.
A Mr. Verma wants to see you. (वक्ता व्यक्ति के नाम के अलावे और कुछ नहीं जानता है।)

14. जब abstract noun का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में होता है तब उसके पहले article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। परन्तु जब abstract noun का प्रयोग एक विशेष प्रकार के गुण (a kind of quality) के अर्थ में होता है, तो उसके पहले a/an का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है—

He has received a good education.

If you want to have a good working knowledge of English, you should read this book.

15. Exclamations में what के बाद तथा Singular Countable Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

What a beautiful scene !
What a dog !
What a dark night !
What a fall !

16. so/as/how/too+adjective के बाद तथा noun के ठीक पहले a/an का प्रयोग होता है। such, quite, many, rather के बाद अगर singular countable noun का प्रयोग हो तो noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग होता है।

so fine a day	how dark a night
too proud a girl	as good an example as that
such a boy	quite an easy problem
many a man	rather a foolish question

17. साधारणतः Proper Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। परन्तु जब किसी Proper Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग होता है तब अभीष्ट Noun से किसी स्थान/व्यक्ति का बोध न होकर उक्त स्थान/व्यक्ति में निहित गुण का बोध होता है। जैसे—

She is a real Lata. (Lata नहीं बल्कि Lata के समान गाने की कला रखने वाली)

He is a Dara Singh.	(दारा सिंह जैसा मजबूत)
Patna is a mini Bombay.	(Bombay के समान बड़ा तथा व्यस्त)
He is a Daniel in wisdom	(Daniel जैसा बुद्धिमान)

18. a/an का प्रयोग कुछ ख़ास phrases में होता है। जैसे :

in a hurry	to make a fool of oneself
in a fix	to keep a secret
in a nutshell	to take an interest in
as a rule	to take a liking to
at a discount	to take a fancy to
at a premium	to pay somebody a visit
at a loss	to give a warning
at a stone's throw	to have an opportunity
at a stretch	to have a chance
a short time ago	to have an interest in
a short while ago	to have a pride in
it is a pity	to have an eye to
it is a shame	to have a mind to
to be in a temper	to have a good education
to be in a position to	to have a pain/a cold/ a headache/a cough
to make a noise	to have a bath/a drink/ a talk/a rest/a walk
to make a good guess at	
to make a wrong use of	
to make a fuss	

19. bread, coffee, milk, water, rice, news, furniture, advice, dust इत्यादि जैसे uncountable nouns के पहले a/an का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। परन्तु

इनकी संख्या या मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए इनके पहले some, any, a little, a lot of, a piece of इत्यादि का प्रयोग किया जाता है। a/an का प्रयोग इस प्रकार किया जाता है—

bread	a piece of bread
	a loaf of bread
water	a glass of water
	a litre of water
furniture	a piece of furniture
	an article of furniture
chalk	a piece of chalk
	a stick of chalk
news	a piece of news
	an item of news
paper	a piece of paper
	a sheet of paper
rubbish	a pile of rubbish
	a heap of rubbish
rice	a bit of rice
	a grain of rice
	a kilo/a handful/a bag of rice
advice	a piece of advice
	a word of advice
writing	a piece of writing
passion	a bit of passion
fever	an attack of fever
work	a piece of work
	a bit of work
meat	a piece of meat
	a roast of meat
ice	a piece of ice
	a block of ice
research	a piece of research
evidence	a piece of evidence

इसी प्रकार a pound of butter, a spoonful of medicine, a pint of beer, a ton of coal, a gallon of petrol, a bottle of wine, a bowl of soup, an acre of land, a yard of cloth, a foot of water इत्यादि का प्रयोग होता है।

20. अगर Noun Plural Number में हो तो a/an के प्रयोग का सवाल ही नहीं उठता है।

21. Singular Countable Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग होता है अगर उक्त Noun से किसी अनिश्चित person/thing का बोध हो। प्रायः Proper Noun तथा Uncountable Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। अगर हम one water, two water, three waters नहीं लिख सकते हैं तो हम a water भी नहीं लिख सकते हैं। अगर कहीं Proper Noun/Uncountable Noun के पहले a/an लगता भी है तो वहाँ उक्त Noun के अर्थ में परिवर्तन होता है या उक्त Noun का प्रयोग Countable Noun की तरह होता है। जैसे—stone एक uncountable noun है। देखें कि इसका प्रयोग कैसे a/an के साथ तथा बिना a/an के होता है।

without a/an (uncountable noun की तरह)

This wall is made of stone.
Stone is harder than brick.
Stone feels hard.

with a/an (countable noun की तरह)

He threw a stone at me.
There is a stone on the table.

a/an का प्रयोग Uncountable Nouns के पहले किया जाता है जब reference Noun के किसी खास/विशिष्ट/particular quality का हो। जैसे :–

I like wine very much.
I like a white wine with my lunch.

Some More Examples :—

(a) Beauty :

She has beauty. (beauty—सुन्दरता)
She is a beauty. (beauty—सुन्दर लड़की/औरत)

(b) Fish :

I like fish and rice. (fish as food)
Fish and rice is my favourite dish. (fish as food)
Yesterday I caught a very big fish. (fish as an animal)

(c) Hair :

This cat has fine coat of hair. (material substance)
There is a hair in the tea. (एक के अर्थ में)

(d) Stone/Brick :

This house is made of stone/brick. (material substance)
He threw a stone/a brick at me. (एक के अर्थ में)

(e) Chicken/Lamb :

I would like to have chicken and lamb for lunch. (as food)
A chicken/A lamb is very innocent. (as an animal)

इनकी संख्या या मात्रा का बोध कराने के लिए इनके पहले some, any, a little, a lot of, a piece of इत्यादि का प्रयोग किया जाता है। a/an का प्रयोग इस प्रकार किया जाता है—

bread	a piece of bread
	a loaf of bread
water	a glass of water
	a litre of water
furniture	a piece of furniture
	an article of furniture
chalk	a piece of chalk
	a stick of chalk
news	a piece of news
	an item of news
paper	a piece of paper
	a sheet of paper
rubbish	a pile of rubbish
	a heap of rubbish
rice	a bit of rice
	a grain of rice
	a kilo/a handful/a bag of rice
advice	a piece of advice
	a word of advice
writing	a piece of writing
passion	a bit of passion
fever	an attack of fever
work	a piece of work
	a bit of work
meat	a piece of meat
	a roast of meat
ice	a piece of ice
	a block of ice
research	a piece of research
evidence	a piece of evidence

इसी प्रकार a pound of butter, a spoonful of medicine, a pint of beer, a ton of coal, a gallon of petrol, a bottle of wine, a bowl of soup, an acre of land, a yard of cloth, a foot of water इत्यादि का प्रयोग होता है।

20. अगर Noun Plural Number में हो तो a/an के प्रयोग का सवाल ही नहीं उठता है।

21. Singular Countable Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग होता है अगर उक्त Noun से किसी अनिश्चित person/thing का बोध हो। प्रायः Proper Noun तथा Uncountable Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। अगर हम one water, two water, three waters नहीं लिख सकते हैं तो हम a water भी नहीं लिख सकते हैं। अगर कहीं Proper Noun/Uncountable Noun के पहले a/an लगता भी है तो वहाँ उक्त Noun के अर्थ में परिवर्तन होता है या उक्त Noun का प्रयोग Countable Noun की तरह होता है। जैसे—stone एक uncountable noun है। देखें कि इसका प्रयोग कैसे a/an के साथ तथा बिना a/an के होता है।

without a/an (uncountable noun की तरह)

This wall is made of stone.
Stone is harder than brick.
Stone feels hard.

with a/an (countable noun की तरह)

He threw a stone at me.
There is a stone on the table.

a/an का प्रयोग Uncountable Nouns के पहले किया जाता है जब reference Noun के किसी खास/विशिष्ट/particular quality का हो। जैसे :–

I like wine very much.
I like a white wine with my lunch.

Some More Examples :—

(a) Beauty :

She has beauty. (beauty—सुन्दरता)
She is a beauty. (beauty—सुन्दर लड़की/औरत)

(b) Fish :

I like fish and rice. (fish as food)
Fish and rice is my favourite dish. (fish as food)
Yesterday I caught a very big fish. (fish as an animal)

(c) Hair :

This cat has fine coat of hair. (material substance)
There is a hair in the tea. (एक के अर्थ में)

(d) Stone/Brick :

This house is made of stone/brick. (material substance)
He threw a stone/a brick at me. (एक के अर्थ में)

(e) Chicken/Lamb :

I would like to have chicken and lamb for lunch. (as food)
A chicken/A lamb is very innocent. (as an animal)

(f) Rubber/Pencil :

This ball is made of rubber.
I signed my name in pencil. (material substance)
I have to buy a pencil and a rubber for my little son. (countable articles)

(g) Language :

Language is a gift of God.
English is a rich language.

(h) Marriage :

Marriage is the union of two souls.
I am going to attend a marriage.

(i) History :

History is an easy subject.
He has a very bad history.

(j) Fire :

There is no life without fire.
Have you insured your house against fire ?
We made a fire to warm ourselves.

(k) Headache :

He is suffering from headache.
I had a bad headache yesterday.

EXERCISE 4

Put a/an before the following words/phrases. If there is no need of a/an put a cross mark (×).

1. ....egg
2. ....eggs
3. ....oxen
4. ....Europeans
5. ....Indian
6. ....honest
7. ....honest boys
8. ....honest child
9. ....useful
10. ....useless books
11. ....high wall
12. ....useful book
13. ....very beautiful.
14. ....S. D. O.
15. ....B. D. O.
16. ....N. C. C. Officer.
17. ....Urdu
18. ....Urdu poet
19. ....English
20. ....F. O.
21. ....Forest Officer
22. ....M. A.
23. ....one-eyed man
24. ....one-rupee note
25. ....ink
26. ....yellow flower
27. ....honourable man
28. ....humorous man
29. ....unit of measurement
30. ....young man

31. ....interesting
32. ....innocent
33. ....umbrella
34. ....ideal boys
35. ....oil
36. ....ewe
37. ....uniform
38. ....rice
39. ....advice
40. ....information
41. ....ex. M. P.
42. ....L. P. School
43. ....M. A. degree
44. ....B. A.
45. ....hour
46. ....hill
47. ....unique sight
48. ....old
49. ....university professor
50. ....hour's delay
51. ....unanimous decision
52. ....urgent message
53. ....English poetry
54. ....English poem
55. ....united team
56. ....U. S. ally
57. ....F. I. R.
58. ....heir
59. ....honorary poet
60. ....year
61. ....eulogy
62. ....Australia

EXERCISE 5

Use a/an where necessary :

1. He is ....humble man.
2. He is ....honourable man.
3. Patna is.........big city.
4. ....cow is.........animal.
5. Don't make.........noise.
6. ....honorary secretary is one who is not paid for his services.
7. The proposal was accepted by.........unanimous vote.
8. I shall try if I get.........opportunity.
9. I am going to marry.........heiress.
10. I want.........bread to eat.
11. I shall be back in.........hour.
12. He is ....very honest.
13. It is.........unit of measurement.
14. Mr. Sinha is.........M. P.
15. ....stich in time saves nine.
16. It is.........hour's distance from here.
17. She is.........B. A. but I am.........M. A.
18. This is.........one-act play.
19. Bring.........glass of water.
20. ....water is necessary for life.
21. Don't be in such.........hurry.
22. These pencils cost one rupee.........dozen.
23. You are.........fool to say so.

24. This is.........x-ray plant.
25. They are.........Indians.
26. I have.........hundred rupees.
27. He was in.........temper.
28. ....cow gives.........milk.
29. Let us try for.........unanimous decision.
30. India is.. ......unique.
31. The poor boy is.........orphan.
32. She died without.........heir.
33. He did it in half......hour.
34. They have become......university professors.
35. ....ink is.........useful......article.
36. Hari is.........unique person.
37. It is ....universal truth.
38. I don't have.........M. A. degree.
39. My brother is.........S. D. O. in PWD.
40. This poem is.........elegy.
41. Would you give me.........one-rupee note ?
42. The metre is.........unit of length.
43. He teaches English in.........H. E. School.
44. He is.........man of wisdom.
45. They have gone out for.........walk.
46. It is.........pleasure to see you.
47. He is.........army officer.
48. What.........awful sight it is !
49. Five weeks is.........long absence.
50. He is.........unlucky man.
51. Wait for.........while.
52. I earn Rs. 5000/-.........month.
53. ....egg.........day keeps the doctor away.
54. ....habit is.........man's second nature.
55. He is developing.........bad habit.
56. He is.........real Hitler.
57. I am going for.........bath.
58. There is.........stone in his pocket.
59. I would like to have.........chicken for lunch.
60. ....history is.........easy subject.
61. The letter was written.........pencil.
62. She is......beauty.
63. He was carrying......heavy load.
64. He was given.........reward for his bravery.
65. Lions are.........dangerous animals.

Hints :

5. make a noise
10. See use of A/An Rule No. 19
15. A stich in time saves nine.
21. in such a hurry
22. see Use of A/An Rule No. 7
27. See Use of A/An Rule No. 18
45. See Use of A/An Rule No. 12
46. a pleasure
48. See Use of A/An Rule No. 15
51. wait for a while
52. See Use of A/An Rule No. 7
53. an egg a day
54. Habit is man's second nature.
56. See Use of A/An Rule No. 17
57. See Use of A/An Rule No. 12
58. a
59. no article
60. History is an easy subject.
61. written in pencil; write with a pencil
62. See Use of A/An Rule No. 21 (a)
63. a, 64. a, 65. no article

EXERCISE 6

Rewrite the following sentences, inserting a/an that may be required, or removing any that are not required :

1. Fire broke out in our village.
2. An envy is evil passion.
3. I had a fish and a bread for my lunch.
4. If you want an information about this you should read this book.
5. I have headache and sore throat. I have got a cold. I feel I am getting a flu.
6. I was in hurry so I did not have a talk with him.
7. That the earth is round is universal truth.
8. I often pay him visit.
9. He gave me warning.
10. Cow is an animal.
11. It is pity that she should beg.
12. He was in temper.
13. Why are they making noise in the class ?
14. I am going for bath.
15. I have a thousand rupees, so I can buy a bicycle.
16. She is too proud girl to ask for help.
17. What an innocent girl she is !
18. He is Daniel in wisdom.
19. He wrote very good letters.
20. India is large country.
21. Dead man tells no tales.
22. She is quite beauty.
23. Live ass is better than dead lion.
24. You will never be Newton in astrology.

25. He has an apple in one hand a butter in another hand.
26. They are a honourable men.
27. He is English teacher so he knows English very well.
28. I like an Urdu poetry.
29. Everything is fair in a love and war.
30. I have never seen such beautiful place.
31. He is extremely an old man.
32. This is a good wine.
33. Many man came there.
34. What terrible fall he has to face !
35. He is a quite lucky man.
36. Half hour is enough.
37. Please give me half kilo rice.
38. Rice sells ten rupees kilo.
39. I have dozen pencils.
40. He gave me two and half kilos of sugar instead of two and quarter kilos of rice.
41. Child should be given proper care.
42. Do you have drink everyday ?
43. He is making fool of himself.
44. This is good news.
45. He is too poor to buy a bread.
46. He can't keep secret.
47. The fan is selling at discount of Rs. 5.
48. I have never had opportunity to go ahead.
49. It was so warm day that I decided to go to the sea.
50. He is too kind a friend to refuse.
51. What beautiful scene it is !
52. It was as pleasant day as I have ever spent.
53. It seems rather good idea.
54. This hotel is rather a more expensive than that.
55. He will pay me hundred rupees a week.
56. He is suffering from a headache.
57. A fish is beautiful to look at.
58. There was nothing to make fire with.
59. I am fond of a music.
60. An iron is a hard metal.

Hints :

1. A fire broke out in our village.
2. Envy is an evil passion.
3. I had fish and bread for my lunch.
4. If you want information......
5. I have a headache and sore throat. I have got a cold. I feel I am getting flu.
6. I was in a hurry......

7. a universal truth.
8. I often pay him a visit.
9. He gave me a warning.
11. It is a pity.
12. He was in a temper.
13. make a noise or make noises
14. ....for a bath.
15. The sentence is correct.
16. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
17. See Use of A/An Rule No. 15
18. See Use of A/An Rule No. 17
21. A dead man.........
22. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
23. A live ass is better than a dead lion.
24. You will never be a Newton......See Rule No. 17
25. No article before butter
26. They are honourable men.
27. He is a English teacher......
28. no a/an before poetry.
29. no a/an before love
30. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
31. He is an extremely old man.
33. Many a man came there.
34. What a terrible......
35. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
36. Half an hour.
37. See use of A/An Rule No. 8
38. ....ten rupees a kilo.
39. See Use of A/An Rule No. 8
40. two and a half kilos, two and a quarter kilos.
41. A child.........
42. Do you have a drink......
43. make a fool of oneself.
44. This is good news.
45. no a/an before bread.
46. keep a secret.
47. See Use of A/An Rule No. 18
48. See Use of A/An Rule No. 18
49. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
50. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
51. See Use of A/An Rule No. 15
52. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
53. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
54. This hotel is rather more expensive than that.
55. a hundred rupees a week. See Rule No. 7 & 8
56. See Rule No. 21 (K)
57. The sentence is correct.
58. to make a fire.
59. fond of music.
60. Iron is a hard metal.

EXERCISE 7

Complete the following sentences by inserting in the blank spaces the words or phrases in brackets, either with or without a/an. If you insert a or an, make sure that you put it in the right place.

1. I had never been in so.........before. (large house)
2. ....is made of rubber. (rubber)
3. ....is like...... (book, mirror)
4. ....that barks.........never bites. (dog, at distance)
5. ....man is......... (hungry, angry man)
6. ....is made of......... (chair, wood)
7. We get.........from......... (milk, cow)
8. ....was killed. (many man)

9. How.........it is ! (lovely sight)
10. His salary is six hundred......... (rupees month)
11. Why are you......... ? (in hurry)
12. May I go for.........? (ride)
13. ....sight it is ! (what astonishing)
14. I have never seen.........before. (such beautiful scene)
15. He is too.........to buy......... (poor man, bread)
16. He is so.........that he can buy anything. (rich man)
17. How......it is ! (natural scene)
18. It is as.........as that. (good show)
19. He is quite......... (lucky man)
20. What.........success ! (grand)
21. Thus.........spent. (many hour)
22. I want.........rice. (half kilo)
23. How.........! (fine day)
24. He thinks he is......... (Newton)
25. ....I am home by six. (as rule)
26. I am.........what to do next. (at loss)
27. I want to have.........now. (drink)
28. I will pay you......... (hundred rupees week)
29. Do you take.........in.........? (sugar, coffee)
30. I have.........and.........for......... (hour, half, lunch)

Hints :

1. I had never been in so large a house before.
2. A rubber is made of rubber.
3. A book is like a mirror.
4. A dog that barks at a distance never bites.
5. A hungry man is an angry man.
8. Many a man was killed.
9. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
10. See Use of A/An Rule No. 7
11. See Use of A/An Rule No. 18
12. May I go for a ride ?
13. What an astonishing sight it is !
14. I have never seen such a beautiful scene before.
15. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
17. How natural a scene it is !
18. It is as good a show as that .
19. See Use of A/An Rule No. 16
20. What a grand success !
21. Thus many an hour spent.
22. See Use of A/An Rule No. 8
23. See Rule No. 16
24. He thinks he is a Newton (यानी Newton जैसा)
25. As a rule I am home by six.
26. At a loss.
27. drink का प्रयोग Noun की तरह See Rule No. 12
28. I will pay you a hundred rupees a week.
29. Sugar & coffee both uncountable nouns.
30. An hour and a half.

Use of The

The को Definite Article कहते हैं। इसका प्रयोग उस Noun के पहले होता है जो खास, निश्चित या पूर्व परिचित हो; जिसकी चर्चा पहले हो चुकी हो और वक्ता तथा श्रोता जिससे भली-भाँति परिचित हों। अगर कोई कहता है—"He is a boy", तो यहाँ 'boy' से 'कोई एक लड़का' का बोध होता है। परन्तु "He is the boy" से कोई 'निश्चित लड़का' का बोध होता है जिससे श्रोता एवं वक्ता परिचित हैं तथा जिसकी चर्चा पहले अवश्य की जा चुकी है। अर्थात् निश्चित पदार्थ/व्यक्ति/जानवर का बोध कराने के लिए 'the' का प्रयोग किया जाता है। The का प्रयोग countable noun (singular & plural) तथा uncountable noun के साथ होता है, वशर्ते कि उक्त noun से निश्चित संज्ञा/संज्ञाओं का बोध हो।

1. The का प्रयोग पूरी जाति का बोध कराने के लिए Singular Countable Noun के पहले होता है। पूरी जाति का बोध कराने के लिए general/universal sense में Plural Nouns के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

The cow gives milk.	(सभी गायें)
Cows give milk.	(सभी गायें)
The dog is faithful.	(all dogs)
Dogs are faithful.	(all dogs/dogs in general)
The cat eats the rat.	(all cats)
Cats eat rats.	(all cats in general)

परन्तु Plural Nouns के पहले the का प्रयोग अवश्य होगा अगर उससे खास/निश्चित/particular/definite nouns का बोध हो।

The boys of this school are very intelligent.
The books you gave me are very useful.
The boys who are playing in the field are my friends.
The mangoes on our trees are not yet ripe.
The persons injured in the accident are being carried to hospital.

ऊपर प्रयुक्त Nouns particular kind के हैं ऐसा reference से स्पष्ट है। कभी-कभी यह reference वाक्य में लुप्त रहता है, फिर भी the का प्रयोग होता है अगर वक्ता तथा श्रोता उससे पूर्व परिचित हों।

1. Kindly return the books. (श्रोता यह जानता है कि वक्ता किन books के बारे में कह रहा है। अतः यहाँ यह कहना आवश्यक नहीं है—Kindly return the books that I gave you. यहाँ 'that I gave you' understood है।)
2. The boys are coming tomorrow. (निश्चित लड़के)
3. The horses are dangerous (निश्चित घोड़े) परन्तु Horses are dangerous का अर्थ होगा—सभी घोड़े खतरनाक होते हैं। जबकि "the horses are dangerous" का अर्थ है—कुछ ऐसे घोड़े जिन्हें वक्ता एवं श्रोता जानते हैं खतरनाक हैं—निश्चित/खास घोड़े

4. The boys are clever. (निश्चित/खास लड़के)
Boys are clever. (all boys in general)
5. I help students. (students in general)
I help the students. (some particular students)
6. Do you like stories ? (stories in general)
Did you like the stories ? (some particular stories)
7. Books are essential to a student. (books in general)
The books are most essential for the examination. (some particular books)
8. The teachers and the students will be awarded tomorrow by the President. (यहाँ शिक्षक तथा विद्यार्थी दोनों निश्चित/खास हैं।)

Note : (a) कभी-कभी जब Singular Countable Noun के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है तब यह स्पष्ट नहीं हो पाता है कि the का प्रयोग पूरी जाति का बोध कराने के लिए हुआ है या the का प्रयोग किसी खास/निश्चित संज्ञा का बोध कराने के लिए हुआ है। जैसे :—

I love the cat.

यहाँ इस वाक्य से दो भाव निकलते हैं। हो सकता है कि वक्ता के पास एक बिल्ली हो और वक्ता यह कहना चाहता हो कि वह उस बिल्ली से प्यार करता है। यह भी सम्भव है कि वक्ता यह कहना चाहता हो कि उसे बिल्ली जाति से प्यार है।

(b) इन वाक्यों के हिन्दी अनुवाद पर ध्यान दें —

Boys are clever.	लड़के तेज होते हैं।
The boys are clever.	लड़के तेज हैं।
The book is useful.	पुस्तक उपयोगी होती है।
Books are useful.	पुस्तकें उपयोगी होती हैं।
The books are useful.	पुस्तकें उपयोगी हैं।
This is a boy.	यह एक लड़का है।
This is the boy.	यह वही लड़का है।

2. Uncountable Nouns (material/abstract) तथा Proper Nouns के पहले सामान्य अर्थ में articles का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

Gold is a precious metal.	(not the gold)
Milk is white.	(not the milk)
We drink water.	(not the water)
Oil floats on water.	(not the oil/the water)
Ram is a good boy.	(not the Ram)
Honesty is the best policy.	(not the honesty)

परन्तु जब reference से किसी खास/निश्चित/पूर्व परिचित/ particular kind का बोध हो तो the का प्रयोग अवश्य होगा।

(a) The gold of India is better than the gold of Nepal.
(b) The gold mined here is of rich quality.
(c) The water of this well is very cold.
(d) The milk of this cow is very sweet.
(e) The honesty of a poor man is doubtful.
(f) The beauty of kashmir is praise-worthy.
(g) The oil in the bottle is not pure.
(h) Kalidas is the Shakespeare of India.
(i) The Ram of the Ramayana is an ideal man.

जब reference understood/hidden हो, तब भी the का प्रयोग होगा।

(j) I have to pay for the milk. (i.e., the milk I have taken)
(k) I am grateful to you for the gold. (i.e., for the gold you have given me)
(l) Where is the gold ? (किसी खास/निश्चित gold के बारे में पूछा जा रहा है जिससे श्रोता पूर्व परिचित है)
(m) The milk is good. (दूध अच्छा है। किसी particular milk के बारे में कहा जा रहा है।)
(n) Milk is good. (दूध अच्छा होता है—in general)
(o) Why have you not brought the water ? (वह पानी जिसे मैंने यहाँ लाने के लिए रखा था।)
(p) The meat was very tasteful. (वह meat जो हमलोग खाये थे।)
(q) Now she doesn't have the beauty. (वह सुन्दरता जो उसमें पहले थी।)
(r) She has beauty. (सुन्दरता—in general)

3. अगर कोई Singular Countable Noun story/speech/discourse में पहली बार आता है तो उसके पहले a/an लगता है। यह समझा जाता है कि श्रोता उससे पूर्व परिचित नहीं हैं। परन्तु जब उसी noun की पुनरावृति होती है तो उसके पहले the का प्रयोग होता है क्योंकि तब तक श्रोता उससे परिचित हो चुके रहते हैं।

(a) There was a king. The king was very brave.
(b) I saw a boy. The boy was weeping.
(c) I have bought a car. The car is very beautiful. If you want to see the car, come to my home. I think you will like the car.

EXERCISE 8

Insert a, an or the if necessary.

1. .... cow gives .... milk.
2. .... cows give milk.
3. .... cows of Ram give a lot of milk.
4. .... children like .... sweets.
5. .... sweets made from .... milk of these cows are very tasteful.

6. .... sweets are made from .... milk.
7. .... box was made of .... iron.
8. Where is .... servant ? I want .... glass of water.
9. Are .... boys going for a picnic ?
10. .... water in that pot is dirty.
11. .... grass in that field is very green.
12. .... gold is not pure.
13. .... gold of India is famous.
14. .... oxen are ill.
15. .... lead is heavier than iron.
16. .... thieves stole .... lead from .... box.
17. .... honesty has strength.
18. .... beauty of Sita cannot be described.
19. .... boys will stay here.
20. Beat .... boys.
21. One should not kill .... birds.
22. Go up .... stairs.
23. Put out .... light.
24. .... light travels faster than .... sound.
25. Did you hear .... sound.
26. .... bird in hand is worth two in .... bush.
27. .... minute you came, he ran off.
28. Wait for .... minute.
29. I want .... books you borrowed.
30. Have you read all .... books ?
31. I am going to .... station to receive a friend.
32. Kalidas is called .... Shakespeare of India.
33. Do you take .... tea or .... coffee ?
34. She likes .... tea of Assam.
35. Why did you throw ....tea ?
36. We went to .... theatre yesterday.
37. .... books are essential to .... students.
38. Where are .... books ? I want them.
39. Please give me .... mango you bought yesterday.
40. Can you tell me how to get to .... railway station ?
41. .... player who scored the first goal was loudly cheered.
42. .... dogs are faithful.
43. This is .... dog that I saw yesterday.
44. .... boys sitting in the corner are blind.
45. Give .... knock at .... door.
46. .... life we live now-a-days is very hard.
47. .... meat that we had for lunch was tough.

48\. .... flowers in that vase are very beautiful.
49\. .... coffee was not good.
50\. .... blindness is .... curse.
51\. Yesterday I saw .... beggar. .... beggar was very poor. He was eating .... bread. But .... bread was not well-cooked. I gave him .... shirt. He took.......... shirt and thanked me for .... shirt.
52\. I live in .... old house. .... door and .... windows are not in order. .... thief can easily enter .... house and can take away .... things. So I don't keep money in .... house. I have hid .... money in .... bush. .... bush is in front of the house.
53\. It is useful to keep ...... cows. I have some cows. .... cows give me .... milk and .... dung. I sell .... milk and .... dung to make .... money. .... money thus made will make me .... rich man. .... time I become .... very rich man I shall sell .... cows and lead .... peaceful life.

Hints

(1) The, x, (2) x, (3) the, (4) x, x, (5) the, the (6) x, x
(7) box खास, निश्चित या पूर्व परिचित है, iron का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में है।
(8) खास, निश्चित servant की चर्चा है।
(9) boys—निश्चित लड़के
(10) खास पानी
(11) उस खेत का घास- खास घास
(12) किसी विशेष/खास/निश्चित gold की चर्चा है।
(14) the oxen, (15) x
(16) Thieves stole the lead from the box. यहाँ lead तथा box दोनों खास/निश्चित हैं।
(17) x, (18) the, (19) the
(20) कुछ खास/निश्चित लड़के को पीटना है।
(21) X
(22) the, (23) the, (24) x, x, (25) the, (26) a, the
(27) the, (28) a
(29) वही किताब जो तुमने ली थी ।
(30) the, (31) the, (33) x, x, (34) the, (35) the
(36) the, (37) x, x, (38) the, (39) the, (40) the
(41) वही player जो पहला goal किया।
(42) dogs—all dogs—general
(43) वही कुत्ता जिसे मैंने कल देखा था।
(44) जो corner में बैठे हैं वे लड़के
(45) a, the
(46), (47), (48), (49)→ सभी में particular nouns की चर्चा है।

(50) x, a

(51) Yesterday I saw .... beggar (कोई एक beggar) .... beggar (वही beggar) was very poor.
He was eating bread (bread का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में)
But .... bread (वही bread जो वह खा रहा था) was not well cooked.
I gave him .... shirt (कोई एक shirt)
He took .... shirt (वही shirt जो मैंने दिया)
and thanked me for .... shirt (उस shirt के लिए जो मैंने दिया)

(52) I live in an old house. The door and the windows are not in order .... thief (कोई एक चोर) can easily enter .... house (उस घर में जिसकी चर्चा हो चुकी है) and can take away the things. So I don't keep money in the house. I have hid the money in a bush. The bush is in front of the house.

(53) x, the, x, x, the, the, x, the, a, the, a, the, a.

Some More Uses of 'The'

1. पर्वत श्रेणी या श्रृंखलाबद्ध पहाड़ (ranges of mountains) के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। जैसे—

the Himalayas, the Alps, the Vindhyas

परन्तु चोटी (peak) या जो पहाड़ एकवचन रूप में रहते हैं उनके नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Everest, Snowdon, Mount Abu

2. द्वीप समूह (groups of islands) के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The East Indies, the West Indies, the Andamans

परन्तु ऐसे द्वीप जो एकवचन रूप में रहते हैं उनके नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Ceylon, Sicily, Sumatra, Java

3. नदी, खाड़ी, सागर, महासागर, जंगल, मरुभूमि इत्यादि के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :—

the Ganges, the Indus, the Thames, the Gulf of Mexico, the Bay of Bengal, the Indian Ocean, the Pacific Ocean, the Suez Canal, the Sahara, the Ardennes, the Black Forest

परन्तु जब किसी नदी के नाम के साथ उस शहर का नाम जुटा हो जो उस पर खड़ा है तो उस नदी के नाम के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। जैसे :—

Kingston-on-Thames, Newcastle-upon-Tyne, Stratford-upon-Avon

4. बड़े ग्रंथों के नाम के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :—

the Gita, the Bible, the Vedas, the Ramayana, the Koran, the Mahabharata, the Paradise Lost

5. आकाशीय पिण्ड (heavenly bodies), दिशा (directions) या जो वस्तु दुनिया में केवल एक हो उसके नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :—

the earth, the sun, the moon, the sky, the east, the west, the world

6. Newspapers के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The Hindustan Times, The Times of India, The Indian Nation, The Statesman, The Leader

7. Historical Places/Buildings के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।

the Taj Mahal, the Red Fort, the Goalghar

8. Musical Instruments के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।

the tabla, the violin, the harmonium, the guitar

9. Dates of Month के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।

the Ist of March, the 2nd of January, the 5th of May
परन्तु days/months के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।
It is Monday/January/March.

10. अविष्कार (invention) के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।

Who invented the radio/the telephone/the television/the wireless ?
He is listening to the radio.
He was on the radio.
Now-a-days we can't do without the telephone.
The television is a wonderful gift of science.

परन्तु radio/television/T.V. के साथ इस प्रकार के expressions में the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

He spent the evening watching television/T.V.
They were trying to contact the ship by radio.
Do you prefer radio or television ?

11. धार्मिक समुदाय, राजनीतिक दल, नागरिकता/राष्ट्रीयता सूचित करने वाले शब्दों के नाम के पहले the लगता है।

the Hindus, the Muslims, the Christians, the Sikhs
the Congress Party, the Janata Dal, the Democratic Party
the Indians, the Asians, the Chinese, the Africans

12. हवाई जहाज, समुद्री जहाज, रेलगाड़ी के नाम के पहले the लगता है।

the Meghdoot (एक जहाज का नाम), the Vikrant (समुद्री जहाज का नाम), the Toofan Express (एक रेलगाड़ी का नाम)

13. देशों के नाम के पहले article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, परन्तु इन देशों के नाम के पहले, the का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है।

the U.S.A., the U.S.S.R, the United Kingdom, the Soviet Union, the Netherlands, the Sudan.

किसी देश के नाम के पहले Kingdom, Republic, Federation इत्यादि रहने पर भी the का प्रयोग होता है।

The Kingdom of Macedon, The Republic of South Africa.

14. जब Proper noun को कोई adjective qualify करता हो तो adjective के पहले the लगता है।

the late Mahatma Gandhi, the beautiful Sita,

the immortal Tulsi, the late Pandit Nehru, the immortal Milton

15. Proper noun के बाद आनेवाले countable noun के पहले the लगता है यदि उक्त countable noun से पेशा, व्यवसाय का बोध हो। जैसे—

Ram, the typist; Mohan, the clerk; Gopi, the cook; Sita, the dancer ; Lata, the teacher : Moti, the grocer; Mr Sinha, the General Manager; Mohan, the accountant

16. यदि Proper noun के बाद common noun का प्रयोग उक्त proper noun के apposition में हुआ हो तो उस common noun के पहले the का प्रयोग होगा।

Patna, the capital of Bihar
Nehru, the builder of India
Gandhi, the fighter for freedom
Indira, the pride of India

17. Committee, club तथा foundation के नाम के पहले the लगता है।

the Lion's club, the Rotary club, the Ford foundation, the United Nations

18. साम्राज्य (empire), वंशज (dynasty), प्रसिद्ध एतिहासिक घटनाओं (important historical events) के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।

the Roman Empire, the Tudor Dynasty, the Ming Dynasty, the Civil war, the French Revolution, the Middle Ages, the Norman Conquest, the Renaissance, the Elizabethan Age (but : World War I, World War II, World War III)

19. Municipal or Government Departments तथा Armed Forces के नामों के पहले the लगता है।

the executive, the judiciary, the legislative, the Ministry of Education, the Army, the Navy, the Airforce, the Police

20. Physical position के पहले the लगता है।

the bottom, the top, the back, the front, the centre, the inside, the outside

21. Parts of the Body के नामों के पहले the लगता है।

He hit me on the head.

I caught her by the arm.

The stone hit him in the face.
The king was wonded in the leg.
He pulled the cat by the tail.

22. जब Ordinal numbers को letters में लिखा जाता है तब उसके साथ the का प्रयोग होता है।

the first, the second, the tenth

परन्तु जब ऐसी संख्याओं को Roman figures में लिखा जाए तो उसके साथ the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Queen Elizabeth II, King George V, Richard III

But they are read as Queen Elizabeth the second, King George the fifth and Richard the third.

23. जब किसी व्यक्ति को उसके पद के द्वारा इंगित करना हो तो उसके पहले the लगता है।

the Headmaster, the Principal, the Director, the Chairman, the President, the Chief Minister, the Home Minister

24. 'के हिसाब से', 'की दर से' के अर्थ में Singular Countable Noun के पहले the का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

Milk is sold by the litre.
Rice is sold by the kilo.
Eggs are sold by the dozen.
Cloth is sold by the metre.
Petrol is sold by the litre.

25. कभी-कभी Common Nouns का प्रयोग Abstract Nouns के समान होता है और तब इसके पहले the का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे :—

The father in him is still alive. (the father = fatherly feelings)
The mother in her was not dead. (the mother = motherly feelings)
The snake in his mind was not in peace. (the snake = घातक प्रवृति)

26. जब Adjective का प्रयोग Noun की तरह हो तब उसके पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।

The poor are honest. (the poor = poor men)
The wicked are always punished. (the wicked = wicked men)
The deaf can't hear. (the deaf = deaf people)
Let us help the sick. (the sick = sick people)

27. यदि comparative degree से selection (चुनाव) या contrast (विरोध) का बोध हो तो उसके पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।

He is the stronger of the two.
She is the better of the two girls.

28. जब वाक्य में दो Comparative Degrees का प्रयोग parallel expressions में इस प्रकार हो तो दोनों Comparative Degrees के पहले the का प्रयोग होगा—

The more he has , the more he wants.
The higher you go, the cooler you find.
The more, the merrier.
The harder you work, the more you will be paid.
The sooner he comes, the better it will be.

29. Superlative Degree के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।

She is the most beautiful girl in the class.
He is the richest man in my village.
Akbar was one of the greatest kings.
Lata is the most intelligent girl.

30. जब वाक्य में noun + preposition + noun का प्रयोग हो तो प्रथम noun के पहले the का प्रयोग होगा।

The tea of Asam is famous.
The Ram of the Ramayana is an ideal personality.
The gold of India is famous.
I like the sweets of Gaya.
The mangoes on the tree are not ripe.
The chairs in the corner of this hall are broken.

31. Before office/cinema/theatre/circus the is used.

He is going to the office/cinema/theatre/circus.

32. Most of, All of, None of, Many of, Any of, Each of, Neither of, Either of, Half of, A part of, One of, Five of, One third of, the majority of इत्यादि के बाद आने वाले Countable Nouns के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

One of the students has been awarded.
Most of the boys have come.
One-third of the mangoes are rotten.
Five of the students have passed the examination.
A part of the mango is rotten.

33. कुछ idioms/idiomatic expressions में the का प्रयोग रहता है। जैसे :—

keep to the left/right — **speak the truth**
be in the air — **play the fool**
be on the air — **speak to the point**
What is the matter ? — **What is the difficulty ?**
What is the trouble ? — **He is in the right/wrong.**
The trouble with me is that ....

Some More Nouns With and Without 'the'

1. school/college/university, hospital, prison, church, bed, court, market

इनके पहले articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है जब इनका उल्लेख इनके मौलिक उद्देश्य के सम्बंध में हो। अगर हम school/college/university पढ़ने या पढ़ाने जाते हैं तब We go to school/college/university. परन्तु जब इनका प्रयोग किसी और उद्देश्य के लिए किया गया हो, जैसे—किसी से मिलने के लिए, कोई show देखने के लिए, कोई भाषण सुनने के,लिए तब We go to the school/college/university. इसी प्रकार अगर हम hospital एक patient या doctor के रूप में जाते हैं तब We go to hospital. परन्तु अगर हम किसी रोगी से मिलने जाते हैं या किसी अन्य प्रयोजन से जाते हैं तो We go to the hospital (to visit a sick friend). इसी प्रकार एक कैदी के रूप में We go to prison, परन्तु एक visitor के रूप में We go to the prison. प्रार्थना करने के लिए We go to church, परन्तु किसी अन्य प्रयोजन जैसे अपने दोस्त से मिलने We go to the church. मुकदमेबाजी के लिए We go to court, सोने के लिए We go to bed. परन्तु किसी अन्य प्रयोजन के लिए We go to the court/bed. संक्षेप में यही याद रखें कि जब इन nouns का उल्लेख general building/place के रूप में हो तो इनके पहले articles का प्रयोग होगा।

इसी प्रकार जब उल्लेख मौलिक उद्देश्य से सम्बंधित हो तब at/in के साथ भी इन nouns के साथ articles का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।

इन Examples पर विशेष ध्यान दें :—

A. We go to school at 10 o' clock everyday. (to study)
I went to the school to complain about the behaviour of one of the students.
I went to the college to witness a magic show.
There is a school/college in my village.
He is at school. (as a student)
He is at the school. (as a visitor)

B. When we are seriously ill we go to hospital. (not the hospital)
The injured were being carried to hospital.
He has been admitted to hospital.
I am going to the hospital to give my friend money.
We have to visit the hospital tomorrow.
We need to redecorate the hospital.
There is a big hospital here.

C. The thief was sent to prison.
The school is just in front of the prison.
He is in the prison. (as a visitor)

He will soon be released from prison.
He goes to the prison sometimes to give lectures.

D. We go to church to worship there.
He went to the church to see the dead body.
Everyone admired the church.
The church was very big.

E. I generall · go to bed at 10 o'clock. (to sleep)
The children are fighting on the bed.

F. The prisoner was brought to court for trial.
I have to appear in court to give evidence.
Yesterday there was a great rush in the court.

2. जब father/mother/uncle/auntie/brother/sister से speaker के अपने relatives का बोध हो तो इनके पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। परन्तु जब दूसरे के relatives का बोध हो तो the का प्रयोग होगा।

When the robbers entered the house Mother was in the kitchen and Father was in the office. (speaker अपने माता पिता के बारे में बोल रहा है।)

When the child was kidnapped the mother was sleeping and the father was watching television. (speaker बच्चे के माता पिता के बारे में कह रहा है।)

अब निम्नलिखित chart द्वारा समझें कि कहाँ the लगेगा और कहाँ the नहीं लगेगा :—

Without 'the'	With 'the'
3. ऋतु के नाम	
in spring, in summer in winter, in autum	in the spring season, in the winter season
4. Universities के नाम	
Bihar University, Patna University Delhi University, L.N. Mishra University	the University of Bihar the University of Patna
5. त्योहार एवं छुट्टियों के नाम	
Holi, Deepawali, Christmas Good Friday, Independence Day, Easter, New year	the Deepawali holiday (s), the Christmas holiday (s)
6. Date लिखने में	
March 10th 15th April	the tenth of March the fifteenth of April

7. यातायात के साधन (with by)

go / come / travel / leave	by	car	sit in the car
		bus	be on the bus
		bicycle	sit on the bicycle
		train	take the train
		boat	sit in the boat
		plane	be on the plane

8. भोजन के नाम

have / before / at / after / stay for	tea	He threw the tea.
	lunch	Everybody enjoyed the lunch.
	breakfast	The breakfast was good.
	dinner	The dinner was well cooked.
	supper	Why didn't you like the supper ?

9. दिन रात का समय (खासकर at, by, after, before के साथ)

at dawn/daybreak	during the day
at sunrise/sunset	admire the sunrise/sunset
at noon/midnight	in the afternoon
at dusk/twilight	I could not see her face clearly in the dusk/twilight.
at/by night	in/during the night
(by) day and night	in the day time
before morning/evening	in the morning/evening
after night	in the night

10.

Indian tea	the tea of India
Chinese history	the history of China
English teaching	the teaching of English
in Nepal	in the Nepal of today
London	the city of London
today's Times of India	the Times of India
God	the god of fire

Omission of the Articles

1. भाषा के नाम के पहले article नहीं लगता है।

I know English/French/Hindi/Urdu/Bengali/Tamil.
English is a rich language.

2. विषयों के नाम के पहले article नहीं लगता है।

I have no interest in history/physics/mathematics.

3. दिन तथा महीना के नाम के पहले Article नहीं लगता है।

January is the first month of the year.

Today is Monday/Sunday.
परन्तु on the first Monday.

4. बीमारियों के नाम के पहले articles नहीं लगता है।

He is suffering from cholera/small-pox.
परन्तु कुछ बीमारियों के नाम के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :—
the plague, the gout, the measles, the mumps.

5. पर्वों/ऋतुओं के नाम के पहले article नहीं लगता है।

I spent Christmas with my family.
I shall go to Simla in summer. (परन्तु in the summer season)

6. man, woman, humanity तथा mankind का प्रयोग जब व्यापक अर्थ में हो तो उसके पहले article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Man is mortal.
Mankind/Humanity is facing a great danger.
Woman has been portrayed by artists in several ways.

7. Society, science, parliament, death, life, Nature इत्यादि का प्रयोग जब सामान्य अर्थ में हो तब इसके पहले article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Society will not tolerate it.
(I spend Sundays in the society of my friends.)
Science and religion should go together.
(You must understand first the science in the scheme.)
Life is not a bed of roses.
(The life we live is very hard.)
Wordsworth was a poet of Nature.
Man is engaged in a constant struggle with Nature.
(He knows nothing of the nature of my work.)
Death forgives none.
(I can't bear the death of my love.)

8. खेल-कूद के नामों के पहले articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

I play football/tennis/cricket/badminton.

9. भोजन-सामग्री, भोजन के नामों के पहले article नहीं लगता है।

There is chicken/lamb/egg in the menu.
Do you like rice and fish ?
I take tea/coffee everyday.
When do you have lunch/dinner/supper/breakfast ?

Note : जब meal/dinner से specific kind का बोध हो तब article का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :—

I was invited to a dinner given to welcome the new chairman.

I didn't like the dinner/supper/breakfast.
We enjoyed the dinner.
It was really a very good breakfast.
He did not take the tea because it was cold.

10. appoint/crown/elect/make/declare के बाद आने वाले Noun (as a complement) के पहले article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे :—

He was crowned king. (not a/the king)
They appointed/elected/made/declared him chairman.

11. जब Nouns का प्रयोग parallel structures में होता है तब articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे :—

father and son	husband and wife	brother and sister
man to man	face to face	hand to hand
from door to door	from village to village	from dawn to dusk
from beginning to end	from right to left	from west to north
from top to bottom	arm in arm	hand in hand
day by day	side by side	on land and sea

12. Genitive Expressions के साथ article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है अगर पहला शब्द कोई Proper Noun हो।

a/the Ram's dog या Ram's a/the dog लिखना गलत है परन्तु
The dog of Ram लिखना सही है।
अतः आप लिख सकते हैं—
Sita's hat is new.
The hat of Sita is new.

Genitive expressions में अगर पहला शब्द Countable noun हो तो article का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—
the boy's book, the cat's tail, a week's holiday.

13. Type of/kind of/sort of के बाद आने वाले Noun के पहले article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है अगर उससे भेद/प्रकार/चुनाव का बोध हो।

What kind of tree is that ? (not the tree or trees)
I don't like this type of/kind of/sort of girl.
What kind of dress do you like ?

Note : जब type of/kind of/sort of से विशेष गुण या योग्यता का बोध होता है तब इसके बाद आने वाले Noun के साथ a/an का प्रयोग होता है।

What kind of a journalist is he ?
What sort of a book is that ?

14. Rank of/title of के बाद आने वाले noun के पहले article नहीं लगता है।

He was promoted to the rank of major/captain.
He was given the title of Nawab/Raja.

15. व्यक्ति, गाँव, शहर, जिला, राज्य, देश, महादेश के खास नाम के पहले सामान्य अर्थ में article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Ram is a good boy.
India is a big country.
Patna is the capital of Bihar.

16. जब turn का अर्थ become हो तो उसके बाद आने वाले शब्द के पहले article नहीं लगता है।

He turned Naxalite/politician/critic.
A frustrated lover turns mad.

परन्तु अन्य अर्थों में the का प्रयोग हो सकता है—

She turned the key in the lock.
He turned the handle but the door didn't open.

17. कुछ certain phrases में transitive verbs के बाद आने वाले object के पहले articles का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Soon the house **caught fire.** (not caught the fire)
Send word of your success in the examination. (not the word)
He didn't **give ear** to my advice. (not the ear)
Who was the first man to **set foot** on the moon ? (not the foot)
She is quick to **take offence.** (not the offence)
He **shook hands** with his old friends. (not the hands)

इसी प्रकार to cast anchor, to set sail, to strike root, to lose heart इत्यादि phrases में verb के बाद article नहीं आता है।

18. कुछ certain phrases हैं जिसमें Preposition के बाद article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे :—

at home	by day	in hand	on foot
at ease	by night	in debt	on duty
at night	by land	in time	on earth
at daybreak	by water	in jest	on horseback
at sunset	by river	in public	on demand
at sunrise	by train	in general	on purpose
at noon	by steamer	in favour of	on strike
at fault	by bus	in trouble	on death
at peace	by name	in turn	on sale
at first	by post	in front of	for sale
at last	by heart	in ink/pencil*	on business
at dinner	by mistake	in conclusion	on holiday
at tea	by hand	in silence	under ground
at anchor	by road	in fun	above ground
at sight	by air/sea	in order	by agreement
at work	by messenger	in business	on half-pay

* The letter was written in pencil/ink. परन्तु
(This is a pen/pencil. Dip the pen in the ink)

इसी प्रकार get in trouble, all day and night, all morning, next May, Last Sunday इत्यादि के साथ article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Repetition of the Articles

1. इसे समझें—

a black and white dog (= एक ही कुत्ता जो काला और उजला है।)
a black and *a* white dog (= दो कुत्ते–एक काला और दूसरा उजला)
a poet and dramatist (= एक ही व्यक्ति जो कवि और नाटककार हैं।)
a poet and *a* dramatist (= दो व्यक्ति-एक कवि हैं तथा दूसरा नाटककार हैं।)

ऊपर के उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है कि जब एक से अधिक noun या adjective एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध कराएँ तो सिर्फ एक ही के पहले article का प्रयोग होता है, परन्तु यदि अलग-अलग व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं का बोध हो तो उनमें से प्रत्येक के पहले article का प्रयोग होगा। जब वाक्य में इस प्रकार का प्रयोग हो तो Verb तथा Pronoun पर विशेष ध्यान दें।

A poet and dramatist is coming.
A poet and a dramatist are coming.
A black and white cow is grazing in the field.
A black and a white cow are grazing in the field.
The Principal and Secretary has awarded him.
The Principal and the Secretary have awarded him.

2. We may either say :—

(A) the first and the second chapter (not chapters)
[or] the first and second chapters (not chapter),
(B) the sixteenth and the seventeenth century (not centuries)
[or] the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries (not century)

And से जुटे हुए दो या दो से अधिक Ordinals के साथ जब एक ही Noun प्रयुक्त हो तो वह Noun Singular Number में होगा यदि प्रत्येक Ordinals के पहले the का प्रयोग हो और वह Noun Plural Number में होगा यदि सिर्फ प्रथम Ordinal के ही पहले the का प्रयोग हो।

Specific and Generic References

Specific तथा Generic References के बीच अन्तर को समझने के लिए इन उदाहरणों पर विचार करें—

A cow is grazing in the field.
The cow is grazing in the field.
The cows are grazing in the field.

यहाँ cow/cows के पहले a/the का प्रयोग specific reference में किया गया है, क्योंकि यहाँ हमारा ध्यान पूरी गाय जाति पर नहीं है, बल्कि गाय जाति के खास नमूने (specific specimens of the class 'cow') पर है। 'A' के प्रयोग से यह स्पष्ट होता है कि cow पूर्व परिचित/निश्चित नहीं है तथा 'The' के प्रयोग से यह स्पष्ट होता है कि cow पूर्व परिचित/निश्चित है। परन्तु सभी परिस्थितियों में reference specific है since we have in mind specific specimens of the class 'cow'.

पुनः इन पर विचार करें :—

A cow is an animal.
The cow eats grass.
Cows eat grass.

यहाँ A/The का प्रयोग generic reference में है, क्योंकि यहाँ हमारा ध्यान पूरी गाय जाति पर है। यहाँ हमारा इशारा किसी specific cow/cows पर नहीं है। तीसरे वाक्य में zero article का प्रयोग हुआ है। Here the reference is generic, since we are thinking of the class'cow' without special reference to specific cows.

इसी प्रकार

Water is changed into steam by heat.
(water का प्रयोग generic reference में है।)
The water is dirty. (यहाँ reference specific है।)

इस table पर ध्यान दें :—

Specific reference

the cow	the water
a cow	
the cows	

generic reference

the cow	water
a cow	
cows	

Nationality Words and Articles

निम्नलिखित तालिका को ध्यान से देखें :—

name of country or continent	adjective	Specific reference: singular	Specific reference: plural (two, ...)	generic reference: plural
Bhutan	Bhutani	a Bhutanese	Bhutanese	the Bhutanese
Burma	Burmese	a Burmese	Burmese	the Burmese
China	Chinese	a Chinese	Chinese	the Chinese

Japan	Japanese	a Japanese	Japanese	the Japanese
Nepal	Nepalese	a Nepalese	Nepalese	the Nepalese
Portugal	Portuguese	a Portuguese	Portuguese	the Portuguese
Switzerland	Swiss	a Swiss	Swiss	the Swiss
Vietnam	Vietnamese	a Vietnamese	Vietnamese	the Vietnamese
Iraq	Iraqi	an Iraqi	Iraqis	the Iraqis
Israel	Israeli	an Israeli	Israelis	the Israelis
Kuwait	Kuwaiti	a Kuwaiti	Kuwaitis	the Kuwaitis
Pakistan	Pakistani	a Pakistani	Pakistanis	the Pakistanis
Africa	African	an African	Africans	the Africans
America	American	an American	Americans	the Americans
Australia	Australian	an Australian	Australians	the Australians
Brazil	Brazilian	a Brazilian	Brazilians	the Brazilians
Canada	Canadian	a Canadian	Canadians	the Canadians
Europe	European	a European	Europeans	the Europeans
Germany	German	a German	Germans	the Germans
Greece	Greek	a Greek	Greeks	the Greeks
India	Indian	an Indian	Indians	the Indians
Italy	Italian	an Italian	Italians	the Italians
Norway	Norwegian	a Norwegian	Norwegians	the Norwegians
Russia	Russian	a Russian	Russians	the Russians
Sri Lanka	Sri Lankan	a Sri Lankan	Sri Lankans	the Sri Lankans
Asia	Asian	an Asian	Asians	The Asians
Denmark	Danish	a Dane	Danes	the Danes
Poland	Polish	a Pole	Poles	the Poles
Spain	Spanish	a Spaniard	Spaniards	the Spaniards
Sweden	Swedish	a Swede	Swedes	the Swedes
Arabia	Arabic	an Arab	Arabs	the Arabs
England	English	an Englishman	Englishmen	Englishmen the English
France	French	a Frenchman	Frenchmen	Frenchmen the French
Holland the Netherlands	Dutch	a Dutchman	Dutchmen	Dutchmen the Dutch
Ireland	Irish	an Irishman	Irishmen	Irishmen the Irish
Wales	Welsh	a Welshman	Welshmen	Welshmen the Welsh

यहाँ cow/cows के पहले a/the का प्रयोग specific reference में किया गया है, क्योंकि यहाँ हमारा ध्यान पूरी गाय जाति पर नहीं है, बल्कि गाय जाति के खास नमूने (specific specimens of the class 'cow') पर है। 'A' के प्रयोग से यह स्पष्ट होता है कि cow पूर्व परिचित/निश्चित नहीं है तथा 'The' के प्रयोग से यह स्पष्ट होता है कि cow पूर्व परिचित/निश्चित है। परन्तु सभी परिस्थितियों में reference specific है since we have in mind specific specimens of the class 'cow'.

पुनः इन पर विचार करें :—

A cow is an animal.
The cow eats grass.
Cows eat grass.

यहाँ A/The का प्रयोग generic reference में है, क्योंकि यहाँ हमारा ध्यान पूरी गाय जाति पर है। यहाँ हमारा इशारा किसी specific cow/cows पर नहीं है। तीसरे वाक्य में zero article का प्रयोग हुआ है। Here the reference is generic, since we are thinking of the class 'cow' without special reference to specific cows.

इसी प्रकार

Water is changed into steam by heat.
(water का प्रयोग generic reference में है।)
The water is dirty. (यहाँ reference specific है।)

इस table पर ध्यान दें :—

Specific reference

the cow	the water
a cow	
the cows	

generic reference

the cow	water
a cow	
cows	

Nationality Words and Articles

निम्नलिखित तालिका को ध्यान से देखें :—

name of country or continent	adjective	Specific reference		generic reference
		singular	plural (two, ...)	plural
Bhutan Burma China	Bhutani Burmese Chinese	a Bhutanese a Burmese a Chinese	Bhutanese Burmese Chinese	the Bhutanese the Burmese the Chinese

Japan	Japanese	a Japanese	Japanese	the Japanese
Nepal	Nepalese	a Nepalese	Nepalese	the Nepalese
Portugal	Portuguese	a Portuguese	Portuguese	the Portuguese
Switzerland	Swiss	a Swiss	Swiss	the Swiss
Vietnam	Vietnamese	a Vietnamese	Vietnamese	the Vietnamese
Iraq	Iraqi	an Iraqi	Iraqis	the Iraqis
Israel	Israeli	an Israeli	Israelis	the Israelis
Kuwait	Kuwaiti	a Kuwaiti	Kuwaitis	the Kuwaitis
Pakistan	Pakistani	a Pakistani	Pakistanis	the Pakistanis
Africa	African	an African	Africans	the Africans
America	American	an American	Americans	the Americans
Australia	Australian	an Australian	Australians	the Australians
Brazil	Brazilian	a Brazilian	Brazilians	the Brazilians
Canada	Canadian	a Canadian	Canadians	the Canadians
Europe	European	a European	Europeans	the Europeans
Germany	German	a German	Germans	the Germans
Greece	Greek	a Greek	Greeks	the Greeks
India	Indian	an Indian	Indians	the Indians
Italy	Italian	an Italian	Italians	the Italians
Norway	Norwegian	a Norwegian	Norwegians	the Norwegians
Russia	Russian	a Russian	Russians	the Russians
Sri Lanka	Sri Lankan	a Sri Lankan	Sri Lankans	the Sri Lankans
Asia	Asian	an Asian	Asians	The Asians
Denmark	Danish	a Dane	Danes	the Danes
Poland	Polish	a Pole	Poles	the Poles
Spain	Spanish	a Spaniard	Spaniards	the Spaniards
Sweden	Swedish	a Swede	Swedes	the Swedes
Arabia	Arabic	an Arab	Arabs	the Arabs
England	English	an Englishman	Englishmen	Englishmen the English
France	French	a Frenchman	Frenchmen	Frenchmen the French
Holland the Netherlands	Dutch	a Dutchman	Dutchmen	Dutchmen the Dutch
Ireland	Irish	an Irishman	Irishmen	Irishmen the Irish
Wales	Welsh	a Welshman	Welshmen	Welshmen the Welsh

Britain	British	a Briton	Britons	the British Britons
Scotland	Scots Scottish Scotch	a Scotsman a Scot a Scotchman	Scotsmen Scots Scotchmen	Scotsmen the Scots Scotchmen the Scotch

Generic/Universal Sense में Countable Nouns का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है—

The cow is an animal.
A cow is an animal.
Cows are animals
(not The cows are animals.)

Plural Countable Nouns के साथ The का प्रयोग Generic/Universal Sense में नहीं होता है, परन्तु अधिकांश Plural Nationality Names के साथ the का प्रयोग generic/universal sense में होता है जैसा कि ऊपर लिखित तालिका से स्पष्ट है।

The Germans are good musicians.
Germans are good musicians.
A German is a good musician.
The German is a good musician.

परन्तु जैसा कि तालिका से स्पष्ट है Englishmen/Frenchmen/Dutchmen/Scotsmen वगैरह के साथ generic/universal sense में the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Englishmen drink beer everyday. (Englishmen in general)
The Englishmen are now going to drink beer in that pup. (some particular Englishmen)
Study these sentences carefully :

Japanese / The Japanese } are very laborious.

The Japanese who live here are very laborious. (not Japanese)

EXERCISE 9

Put in a, an or the wherever necessary. Don't use any article where it is not necessary.

1. .... Everest is .... highest peak of .... Himalayas.
2. .... Andamans are a group of islands.
3. .... Ceylon is .... beautiful island and it is .... largest of all .... islands near India.

4. .... Ganges is a sacred river of .... Hindus.
5. .... Ramayana is .... great epic.
6. Have you read .... Gita ?
7. .... earth moves round .... sun.
8. .... wind is blowing from .... east.
9. Yoga originated in .... East.
10. We are travelling .... east.
11. .... moon is shining in .... sky.
12. It is .... biggest statue in .... world.
13. Do you read .... Hindustan Times everyday ?
14. .... Taj Mahal, ... Red fort and .... Golghar are worthseeing.
15. Do you know how to play .... violin ?
16. Today is .... fifth of May.
17. Will he come on .... Monday ?
18. In .... evening I usually watch .... television.
19. My wife always listens to .... radio.
20. .... television, ... radio and .... wireless are wonderful gifts of .... science.
21. .... Congress Party has been .... ruling party in India.
22. .... Toofan Express is arriving soon.
23. .... U.S.A. is one of .... great world powers.
24. Mohan, ... clerk, was shot dead yesterday.
25. Delhi, ... capital of India, is one of .... busiest places in India.
26. You shouldn't pull .... cat by .... tail.
27. Take……turning but one on your left.
28. Who was .... first to arrive here ?
29. Rita came .... first.
30. I am .... first in my family to go to university.
31. .... Eggs are sold by .... dozen.
32. .... rich should help .... poor.
33. .... richmen are proud by .... nature
34. .... better I know her, ... more I admire her.
35. He was .... wiser of .... two students.
36. .... water of this well is very cold.
37. When do you go to .... office ?
38. .... water in .... bottle is dirty.
39. Each of .... girls has .... pen.
40. None of .... students has passed .... examination.
41. Most of .... teachers are gentle and kind.
42. One should always speak .... truth.
43. What is .... matter ?
44. He got into .... trouble with the police.
45. What is .... trouble ?

46. Many trees lose their leaves in .... winter.
47. I spend .... winter in a warmer climate.
48. In .... winter season we have no trouble.
49. .... Bihar University has more students than .... University of Patna.
50. .... Deepawali is .... important festival in India.
51. How will you spend .... Deepawali holidays ?
52. I go to school by .... bicycle.
53. It is quite safe to travel by .... train.
54. He was sitting in .... car.
55. We shall have .... lunch before .... tea.
56. .... lunch was really wonderful.
57. I did not like .... tea because it had too much sugar.
58. .... storm came at .... midnight.
59. He will not return before .... morning.
60. In .... morning I go for .... walk.
61. .... Indian tea is famous.
62. Do you know .... Urdu ?
63. .... mathematics is not .... easy subject.
64. We has been suffering from .... cholera.
65. We play .... football in .... evening.

Hints :

1. See Some More Uses of 'the' Rule 1
2. See Some More Uses of 'the' Rule 2
3. x, a, the, the
4. See Some More Uses of 'the' Rules 3 & 11
8. the, the 9. the 10. x, 12. the, the, 17. x
18. 19 & 20. → See Some More Uses of 'the' Rule 10
21. the, the, 22. the, 23. the, the
24. See Some More Uses of 'the' Rule 15
26. the, the, 27, the, 28. the, 29. x, 30. the
31. x, the
32. See Some More Uses of 'the' Rule 26
33. x, x
34. See Some More Uses of the Rule 28
35. the, the, 36. See Some More Uses of 'the' Rule 30
37. the, 38. the, the, 39. the, a
40. 41 → See Rule 32
42. See Rule 33
43. the, 44. x, 45. the
46, 47 & 48 See Some More Nouns With & Without 'the' Rule 3
49. See Some More Nouns With & Without 'the' Rule 4

50. x, an 51. the, 52 x, 53. x, 54. a/the
55. x, x, 56. the, 57. the, 58. the, x, 59. x
60. the, a, 61. x, 62. x, 63. x, an
64. See Omission of the Articles Rule 4.
65. x, the

EXERCISE 10

Fill in the blanks with a, an or the where necessary :

1. .... man who is sleeping is my friend.
2. He is .... good man.
3. .... man is mortal.
4. .... mankind is in danger.
5. .... science and .... Nature should go together.
6. .... nature of Ram is not good.
7. .... science is .... exact discipline.
8. One should avoid .... society of .... bad persons.
9. God created .... man and .... woman for each other.
10. .... society has a right to see our deeds.
11. When the time comes .... death doesn't forgive .... life.
12. .... life we are living here is very hard.
13. I like .... rice and .... fish.
14. There is .... fish in .... bottle.
15. Mr Ram was elected .... captain.
16. He was elected .... chairman.
17. .... film was interesting from .... beginning to .... end.
18. I have to work from .... dawn to .... dusk.
19. He lends out money at .... interest; for he has much cash in .... hand.
20. I go to school on .... foot.
21. Keep .... books in .... order.
22. The letter was written in .... pencil.
23. There is .... pencil on .... table.
24. Dip .... pen in .... ink.
25. .... black and .... white dog is running in the field.
26. .... poet and .... dramatist have died today.
27. .... Principal and .... Secretary has awarded him.
28. I have read....... literature of........ seventeenth and .... eighteenth century.
29. I have read the literature of .... sixteenth and .... seventeenth centuries.
30. He is .... German.
31. .... Germans are hard-working.
32. .... Germans who live here are dishonest.
33 .... Englishmen drink beer in pubs.

34. .... English drink beer in pubs.
35. .... Englishmen who came here yesterday are going today.
36. .... French are famous for their food.
37. .... Frenchmen are famous for their food.
38. Where have .... Frenchmen gone ?
39. .... Italian who is singing there looks very smart.
40. .... Indians have faith in ......love and ...... peace.
41. .... Indians who live in Pakistan are not treated well.
42. He is .... Indian but I am .... European.
43. Robin Hood robbed .... rich and gave .... money to .... poor.
44. I often listen to .... music.
45. .... film was not very good but I liked .... music.
46. .... English people are very friendly.
47. .... English people I know are very friendly.
48. .... life would be very difficult without .... electricity.
49. He has gone to .... office.
50. I don't know who has drunk .... milk.
51. .... milk is useful for small children.
52. .... boys have plucked .... flowers.
53. Do you understand .... grammar taught in this book ?
54. He is not .... genius.
55. He is .... Daniel in wisdom.

Hints :

1. वही आदमी जो सो रहा है—खास आदमी
2. a, 3. X 4. X 5. X, X
6. the, 7. X, an, 8. the, X 9. X, X
10. X, 11. See Omission of Articles Rule 7
12. the, 13. X, X, 14. a, the,
15. & 16. See Omission of Articles Rule 10
17. the, X, X, 18. X, X, 19. X, X, 20, X
21. the, X, 22. X, 23. a, the, 24. the, X,
25. a, X, 26. have से स्पष्ट है कि यहाँ दो व्यक्तियों की चर्चा है।
27. has→Singular Verb—एक व्यक्ति की चर्चा है—See Repetition of the Article
28. the, the, the, 29. See Repetition of the Article Rule No. 2
30. a, 31. the, 32. the, 33. X, 34. the
35. the, 36. the, 37. X, 38. the, 39. the
40. the, X, X, 41. the, 42. an, a, 43. the, the, the
44. X, 45. the, the, 46. X, 47. the, 48. X, X
49. the, 50. the, 51. X, 52. the, the, 53. the
54. X, 55. a

EXERCISE 11

Insert suitable article where necessary :

1. Turn to .... left.
2. He can play on .... violin.
3. He makes .... toys in .... evening.
4. Jack and Jill went up .... hill to bring .... pail of water.
5. Dry these books in .... sun.
6. We shall do it on .... fourth of July.
7. .... Koran is a holy book.
8. Ram got .... best present.
9. He was in .... temper.
10. Mr. L.K. Advani is .... President of .... Bhartiya Janata Party.
11. Most of .... students are good.
12. He was on .... television.
13. .... truth about .... matter is unknown.
14. I am going to .... station to receive a friend.
15. .... rich are getting richer.
16. He has never seen .... Taj Mahal.
17. .... U. S. A. is a great country.
18. .... Statesmen has wide circulation.
19. Don't hate .... poor.
20. He went to .... United Kingdom with his wife.
21. He is one of .... best boys in his class.
22. He drives .... motor car at .... uniform speed.
23. .... young and .... old should live together.
24. .... world is a stage.
25. .... University is likely to be established in Arrah.
26. .... opportunity was lost.
27. Has .... postman brought anything for me ?
28. There is .... public meeting in .... Town Hall.
29. Can you tell me how to get to .... railway station ?
30. .... higher we go, ... cooler it is.
31. .... player who scored the first goal was loudly cheered.
32. One of my brothers live in .... U.S.A.
33. .... European is generally taller than .... Indian.
34. This is .... dog that I saw yesterday.
35. He is .... honourable man of .... locality.
36. I should like .... house in .... country.
37. .... boys sitting in .... corner are .... blind.
38. Some scientists from .... U.S.A. are coming to attend .... seminar.
39. Time makes .... worst enemies friends.

40. Sri Lanka is to .... south of India.
41. He was .... High Commissioner of India in .... UK.
42. Some people are against .... new educational policy.
43. He is .... man of wisdom.
44. Always speak .... truth.
45. .... water in .... pot is very hot.
46. It is .... pleasure to see you.
47. .... bird can fly high in .... sky.
48. .... Eggs are sold by .... dozen.
49. Wait for .... while.
50. English is .... language of .... people of England.
51. She has come without .... umbrella.
52. .... honest men speak .... truth.
53. The guide knows .... way.
54. Let us discuss .... matter seriously.
55. .... brave soldier lost .... arm in .... battle.
56. Do you know about .... accident ?
57. .... scheme failed for want of support.
58. .... only best quality is sold here.
59. May I have .... pleasure of your company ?
60. January is .... first month of .... year.
61. .... President brought .... discussion to .... close.
62. .... great many people assembled there.
63. He is .... better soldier than .... statesman.
64. There are .... hundred students in my school.
65. Draw .... map of India.
66. They didn't know that .... train was late by .... hour and .... half.
67. He was .... eye witness to .... accident on .... Toofan Express.
68. .... train suddenly stopped only before .... yard from ...... signal.
69. .... teacher is .... man or .... woman.
70. I believe in .... theory : .... eye for ...... eye; .... tooth for .... tooth.
71. .... London is on .... Thames.
72. .... Woman is weaker than .... man.
73. .... house I have just bought is .... house you will like.
74. .... word to .... wise is sufficient.
75. Get me .... kilo of sugar from .... nearest grocer.
76. English is .... important language. It is spoken all over .... world. It has now become .... international language. .... American people speak English as their native language.
77. Yesterday I met with .... accident. I lost .... purse and .... watch in .... accident.
78. Yesterday I saw .... one-legged man crossing .... road.

79. This is .... most interesting book on .... history of .... English language.
80. Soon .... Inspector of police reached .... scene of .... accident.

Hints :

1. the, 2. the, 3. X, the, 4. the, a
5. the, 6. the, 8. the, 9. a 10. the, the
11. the, 12. X, 13. the, the, 14. कोई खास station
15. See Some More Uses of The Rule 26
16. the, 17. the, 18. the, 19. the
20. See Some More Uses of the Rule 13
21. the, 22. a/the, a 23. the, the
24. the, 25. a, 26. an/the, 27. the
28. a, the, 29. the, 30. See Some More Uses of The Rule 28, 31. the, 32. the
33. a, an, 34. the, 35. an, the 36. a, the, 37. the, the, X
38. the, the 39. the, 40. the,
41. the, the 42. the 43. a. 44. the, 45. the, the, 46. a, 47. a/the, the, 48. X, the
49. a, 50. the, the, 51. an, 52. X, the 53. the, 54. the, 55. the, the/an, the
56. the, 57. the, 58. X, 59. a, 60. the, the
61. the, the, a 62. a, 63. a, a 64. a 65. the, 66. the, an, a 67. an, the, the
68. the, a, the, 69. a, a, a 70. the, an, the, a, the, 71. X, the
72. See Omission of Articles Rule 6
73. the, the, 74. a, the, 75. a, the, 76. an, the, an, X, 77. an, a, a, the
78. a, the, 79. the, the, X, 80. an, the, the

EXERCISE 12

Fill in the blanks with a, an or the where necessary.

1. .... girl was playing in .... street. .... girl was ten years old. She was playing with .... ball. .... ball was made of .... rubber. Suddenly .... dog came and began to frighten her. .... girl ran hastily to .... neighbouring house where .... elderly man was sitting with .... stick in .... hand. .... man took up .... stick, ran to .... dog and drove him out of .... street. .... girl thanked .... man and again went to play in .... street.
2. Once I was standing on .... bank of .... river. .... elderly Sadhu was selling .... beads. I bought some of .... attractive beads. .... fisherman was waiting for his catch. .... washerman was beating .... clothes against his slate. .... few young men were rubbing oil on their bodies. Some boys were bathing in .... river. It was so cold that even .... sun trembled in .... wavy water of .... river.
3. I like to eat .... sweets but I like .... sweets made from .... milk of .... cows most. Yesterday my uncle came with .... sweets.

Everybody liked .... sweets. But I didn't like them because they were made from .... milk of .... buffalo. Although I don't like to drink .... cow's milk yet my father forces me to drink .... milk everyday.

4. Did you see .... boy ? He is .... friend of mine. He is .... best boy of my school. All ...... teachers and .... students love him very much. He always helps .... poor boys. He will never tell .... lies. He has .... sound health. He drinks .... milk everyday. He also goes for .... walk in .... morning.

5. **A.** He gave me .... water to drink. But I couldn't drink .... water because it was smelling. I know that one should always drink .... fresh water. Give me .... water you have brought for you.

B. I have .... little water in .... bottle. I have kept it for me. So I can't give you any. You should have brought .... water with you. I have some empty bottles. Take ...... bottles and go to .... nearest village down .... hill. Perhaps you may get there .... water.

C. Give me .... little water you have in .... bottle. I have no courage to go to .... village in search of .... water.

D. If you are so thirsty drink ....water. And then go to ...... village with all ......empty bottles because soon we all will need......water to drink.

EXERCISE 13

Fill in the blanks with a, an or the where necessary.

1. I go to .... school at 10 o'clock.
2. She started going to .... school at .... age of five.
3. The children go to .... school.
4. She often comes to .... school to meet one of the teachers.
5. He is ill, so he can't go to .... school.
6. The workmen went to .... school to repair .... roof.
7. The Chief Minister visited .... school yesterday.
8. I must go to .... school to see the Headmaster.
9. After I leave .... school, I want to go to .... university.
10. The children are at .... school.
11. .... college was a good building.
12. He left .... college when he was twenty.
13. My son is old enough to go to .... school.
14. Some children hate .... school.
15. There is .... college in .... village.
16. When we are seriously ill we go to .... hospital.
17. We go to .... hospital as visitors.

18. .... injured were taken to .... hospital.
19. Sheela has just had .... operation. She is still at .... hospital.
20. He has come out of .... hospital.
21. I am going to .... hospital to attend the meeting.
22. The criminal was sent to .... prison.
23. He is in .... prison for robbery.
24. I went to .... prison to visit my friend.
25. I was in .... prison for two years.
26. She goes to .... church every Sunday.
27. .... church was very big.
28. .... church begins at 9 o'clock.
29. He was shot dead in .... church.
30. He went to .... church to repair the broken gates.
31. A religious Christian goes to .... church everyday.
32. I went to .... church to see my friend.
33. I go to .... bed at 11 o'clock.
34. It is time to go to .... bed now.
35. He is still in .... bed.
36. They are sitting on .... bed.
37. Can you give me .... bed for the night ?
38. .... children are playing on .... bed.
39. I had to appear in .... court to give evidence.
40. If you don't pay the money I shall have to go to .... court.
41. The criminal was brought to .... court for trial.
42. I went to .... court to buy some seeds.
43. I went to .... court the other day to meet the advocate.
44. Yesterday there was a great rush in .... court.
45. Will you be at .... home tomorrow ?
46. He is at .... home.
47. He went .... home.
48. I arrived .... home after dark.
49. We arrived at .... bride's home.
50. After leaving .... school, she worked as a cleaner in .... hospital.

Hints : Ex solve करने के पहले Some More Nouns with and without the Rule No. 1 का अच्छी तरह अध्ययन कर लें ।

1. x, 2. x, the, 3. x, 4. the 5. x, 6. the, the, 7. the, 8. the, 9. x, x, 10. x, 11. the. 12. x, 13. x, 14. x, 15. a, the, 16. x, 17. the 18. the, x, 19. an, x, 20.x 21. the, 22. x, 23. x 24. the, 25. x, 26. x, 27. the, 28. x, 29. the, 30. the, 31. x, 32. the, 33. x, 34. x, 35. x 36. the, 37. x, 38. the, the, 39. x 40. x, 41. x, 42. the, 43. यहाँ the का प्रयोग हो भी सकता है और नहीं भी, 44. the, 45. x, 46. x, 47.x 48. x, 49. the, 50. x, a.

EXERCISE 14

Correct the following sentences in regard to the use of articles in them.

1. I am going to marry a heiress.
2. The report was accepted by a unanimous vote.
3. Cigarette is made of the paper and the tobacco.
4. Meat we had at dinner was not well cooked.
5. We play the football in evening.
6. He ordered servant to leave a room.
7. Students thanked her for lecture she delivered yesterday.
8. The king Richard was very noble and kind.
9. Boys have played well.
10. She is quite beauty.
11. The parrot died few days ago.
12. We found a hare lying dead in very spot where it had been shot.
13. Little money is bettei than none.
14. I have never heard such absurd story.
15. He was found guilty of theft and was sent to the prison.
16. The ice is a frozen water.
17. Severe cold froze the ponds.
18. I have never known such hot weather.
19. Have you ever seen so tall man as that ?
20. Is there church in this town ?
21. The marriage is an union of two souls.
22. Water in the bottle is fresh.
23. Wordsworth has written about the Nature.
24. Nature of Ram is not good.
25. I have headache.
26. There is a dirt on the plate.
27. The child ran across a road.
28. I wrote to the Mother for sweets.
29. I spent the Holi at the home.
30. He is a worst player.
31. After a year or two, a question can be considered.
32. She hit me on ear.
33. I have a homework to do.
34. Do you have a good health ?
35. We go to the temple to pray God.
36. I am going to hospital to see my friend.

3. Auxiliary Verbs

1. English Verbs को दो major classes में बाँटा गया है—

   Lexical : to go, to eat, to laugh, to run, to walk, etc

   Auxiliary { Primary : to do, to have, to be
   Modal : can, may, shall, will, could, might, should, would, must, ought to, used to, need, dare

2. **Lexical Verbs :** Lexical Verbs को Ordinary Verbs भी कहते हैं। इनका स्वतंत्र अर्थ होता है और ये वाक्य में मुख्य क्रिया के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। इनके V^1, V^2, V^3, –S तथा –ing Forms होते हैं। इन वाक्यों में Lexical Verbs के प्रयोग को देखें—

   Ram **eats** a mango.
   He is **running**.
   He will **come** soon.
   Has he not **returned** yet ?
   What do you **want** ?
   What is he **doing** ?

3. **Auxiliary Verbs :** वैसी क्रियाएँ जो Tense, Mood, Voice तथा required expressions के निर्माण में मुख्य क्रिया की मदद करती हैं Auxiliary Verbs कहलाती हैं। इन वाक्यों में Auxiliary Verbs के प्रयोग को देखें—

   I **am** going.
   He **has** eaten.
   They **are** not helped.
   I **do** not know this.
   I **can** solve this problem.
   It **might** rain today.

Note : यहाँ आप यह जान लें कि कुछ Auxiliary Verbs (जैसे—am, is, are, have, has, etc) ऐसे हैं जिनका प्रयोग वाक्य में स्वतंत्र रूप से Main Verbs के रूप में भी होता है। पुनः be, do, have, need तथा dare ऐसे Auxiliary Verbs हैं जिनका प्रयोग Lexical Verbs के रूप में भी होता है। जैसे—

I **am** a boy.	(am — main verb)
He **is** a student.	(is — main verb)
He **has** a car.	(has — main verb)
She **was** a nurse.	(was — main verb)

He is **doing** the work (doing — lexical verb)
What do you **have** ? (have — lexical verb)
He **needs** my help. (need — lexical verb)

4. प्रयोग और बनावट के दृष्टिकोण से Auxiliary Verbs को दो भागों में विभक्त किया गया है—

Primary : to be, to have, to do

Modal : can, may, shall, will, could, might, should, would, must, ought to, used to, need, dare

5. Primary Auxiliaries :

Verb to be : be, am, is, are, was, were, been, being
Verb to have : have, has, had, having
Verb to do : do, does, did

6. Modal Auxiliaries : can, may, shall, will, could, might, should, would, must, ought to, used to, need तथा dare को Modal Auxiliaries कहते हैं।

ये 13 Verbs अन्य Verbs से इस प्रकार भिन्न हैं—

(a) Modals का प्रयोग सिर्फ Helping Verbs के रूप में होता है। इनका प्रयोग Main Verbs के रूप में नहीं होता है। जैसे—

I can help you.
He will go.
Ram may come today.

(b) इनके -s/es, V^1, V^2, V^3, –ing Forms नहीं होते। अतः सभी Persons के साथ इनका रूप अपरिवर्तित रहता है।

(c) Ought तथा Used को छोड़कर बाकी सभी के बाद Verb का मूल रूप प्रयुक्त होता है (बिना to के)। जैसे—

I can go. (not—I can to go)
He will come. (not —He will to come)
It might be true. (not—It might to be true)

(d) इनके Negative Verb Forms के लिए इनके बाद not प्रयुक्त होता है तथा Interrogative Verb Forms के लिए इन्हें Subject से पहले प्रयुक्त किया जाता है। जैसे—

He cannot go.
Can he go ?
He will come.
Will he come ?

(e) इनमें से used, dare तथा need तीन ऐसे Verbs हैं जिनके प्रयोग में कुछ variations हैं जिसका अध्ययन आप इसी अध्याय में आगे करेंगे।

7. **Marginal Modal Auxiliaries** : dare, need तथा used to को Marginal Modal Auxiliaries या Semi Modal Auxiliaries कहते हैं। ये तीनों ऐसे Verbs हैं जो अपने group के अन्य Verbs से कुछ अर्थों में भिन्न हैं। जहाँ अन्य Modals का प्रयोग Main Verbs के रूप में नहीं होता है वहीं dare तथा need का प्रयोग Main Verbs के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

I don't dare to go there.
He needs my help.

पुनः used to भी अपने group के अन्य Modals से भिन्न है। used to का Negative Form Modal के रूप में सिर्फ used not to तथा Interrogative Form सिर्फ Used I to ... ? होना चाहिए। लेकिन इसका Negative Form did not used/did not use तथा Interrogative Form Did I used to ...... और Did I use to ...... भी होता है।

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि need, dare तथा used to अपने group के Verbs से भिन्न हैं तथा इनके nature में variations हैं। इसलिए इन्हें Marginal Modal Auxiliaries कहा जाता है।

8. **Uses of the Modal Auxiliaries** : अब हम एक-एक कर इन Modals के प्रयोग पर विचार करेंगे।

Use of Can

निम्नलिखित अवस्थाओं में Can का प्रयोग होता है—

(a) शक्ति/योग्यता/क्षमता (power/ability/capacity) बताने के लिए, जैसे—

I can swim across the river.
I can solve this problem.
He can speak English.
The monkey can climb a tree.

Note : यहाँ Can का अर्थ है—be able to/be capable of/know how to, जैसे—

He can speak English.
= He is able to speak English.
= He is capable of speaking English.
= He knows how to speak English.

(b) permission के लिए, जैसे—

You can go now.
You can take books from the library.
Can I sit down ?
Can I have some more bread, please ?

Note : 1. यहाँ Can का अर्थ है—be allowed to/be permitted to, जैसे—

You can go home.
= You are allowed to go home.
= You are permitted to go home.

Note : 2. Can is less formal than may in this sense.

(c) सैद्धान्तिक सम्भावना (theoretical possibility) बताने के लिए, जैसे—

Anybody can make mistakes.
This can't be true.
Electricity can be dangerous.
Pets can be troublesome.

(d) आदत या स्वभाव (habit or nature) बताने के लिए, जैसे—

A lier can deceive anyone.
A saint can harm no one.
The police can harass an innocent person.

Use of Could / can

निम्नलिखित अवस्थाओं में Could का प्रयोग होता है—

(a) Can के Past Tense Form में, जैसे—

Ram told me that he could help me.
We did all that we could.
I am sorry. I could not attend your birthday party.

(b) भूतकाल में निहित क्षमता (past ability) बताने के लिए, जैसे—

I could pass the examination. (परीक्षा पास करने की क्षमता थी।)
She could drive a car at the age of six.
When I was young I could swim for hours.

Note : यहाँ Could के प्रयोग से सिर्फ क्षमता का बोध होता है, कार्य के पूरा होने का नहीं। कोई कार्य व्यापार सम्पन्न हुआ इसके लिए was/were able to, managed to, succeeded in इत्यादि का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

(i) He could pass the examination—परीक्षा पास करने की क्षमता थी, परन्तु पास किया या नहीं यह मालूम नहीं।

(ii) He was able to pass the examination. / He passed the examination—शक्ति और सामर्थ्य के कारण पास कर सका।

(c) विनम्र अनुरोध / अनुमति (polite request / permission के लिए, जैसे—

Could I smoke in here ?
Could I go home now ?
Could I borrow your book for a day ?

Note : Could is more formal than can/may in this sense.

(d) unreal conditions में संभाव्य क्षमता का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

If we had more money, we could buy a car.
You could catch the train if you would.
If he could help, he would.

Use of May

निम्नलिखित अवस्थाओं में May का प्रयोग किया जाता है—

(a) अनुमति (permission) के लिए, जैसे—

You may go now.
You may start the work.
You may borrow my car if you like.
May I come in ?

Note : 1. यहाँ May का अर्थ है be allowed to, जैसे—

You are allowed to go now.

2. अनुमति देने के प्रयोजन में Can से ज्यादा औपचारिक May है।

(b) संभावना + अनिश्चितता (possibility + uncertainty) का भाव व्यक्त करने के लिए, जैसे—

It may rain today.
He may be there.
Mohan may buy a car this year.
It may be true.

(c) इच्छा, अभिलाषा, प्रार्थना इत्यादि को व्यक्त करने के लिए, जैसे—

May you live long !
May God bless you !
May our king live long !

(d) उद्देश्य (purpose) व्यक्त करने के लिए, जैसे—

We eat so that we may live.
He works hard so that he may pass.

(e) अनिश्चितता तथा आश्चर्य व्यक्त करने के लिए, जैसे—

Who may be my enemy here ?
How old he may be !

Use of Might

निम्नलिखित अवस्थाओं में Might का प्रयोग किया जाता है—

(a) May के Past Tense Form में, जैसे—

Ram said that he might change his mind.

(b) संभावना व्यक्त करने के लिए, जैसे—

It might rain today.

She might come any time.

What the thief says might be true.

Note : कोई कार्य-व्यापार होने की संभावना जब बहुत अधिक हो तब Can का प्रयोग होता है। Can से कम तीव्रता का भाव May से तथा May से कम तीव्रता का भाव Might से व्यक्त होता है।

(c) polite request, permission के लिए, जैसे—

Might I smoke in here ?

Might I ask a question ?

Might I come in ?

Note : request / permission के लिए आपने Can, Could, May तथा Might का प्रयोग देखा है। Could/Might से Can/May की अपेक्षा अधिक नम्रता तथा झिझक का भाव व्यक्त होता है। पुनः May का प्रयोग Can से ज्यादा politeness का भाव व्यक्त करता है।

Use of Should

निम्नलिखित अवस्थाओं में should का प्रयोग होता है—

(a) Shall के past equivalent form में Should का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

I said that I should go home.
He asked me if I should do that.

(b) सलाह, निर्देश तथा विचार देने के लिए, जैसे—

You should consult a doctor at once.
You should not go there.
You should sit properly in the class.
We should be honest in our dealing.

(c) नैतिक दायित्व तथा कर्तव्य का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

We should love our country.
We should not tell a lie.
We should obey our elders.

(d) संभावना की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए, जैसे—

He should be sleeping there.
We should win the match.
It should rain today.

(e) इस प्रकार के expressions में, जैसे—

What should I do ?
How should I know that ?
It is a pity that she should beg.
It is odd that you should say this to me.
If you should change your mind, please let me know.

Use of Must

निम्नलिखित अवस्थाओं में Must का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

(a) जोरदार सलाह, आज्ञा, बाध्यता, कड़ा निर्देश इत्यादि की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए, जैसे—

You must take medicine in time.
You must be back by 11 o'clock.
You must do as you are told.
Candidates must answer all the questions.

(b) दृढ़ संकल्प (strong determination), कर्तव्य, दायित्व आदि की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए, जैसे—

I must go.
I must be honest.
We must respect our elders.
You must obey your parents.

Note : इस प्रकार यहाँ यह स्पष्ट है कि अधिक तीव्रता के लिए Should के बदले Must का प्रयोग होता है।

(c) जब possibility / conclusion की तीव्रता अधिक हो तब Should के बदले Must का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He must be sleeping there.
She must be forty years old.
He must be a thief.
There must be a mistake there.

Use of Ought to

निम्नलिखित अवस्थाओं में Ought to का प्रयोग होता है—

(a) नैतिक कर्तव्य (moral obligation) की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए, जैसे—

We ought to help the poor.
You ought to be polite to your teachers.
We ought to help our neighbours.
People ought not to take bribes.

(b) संभावना (possibility) की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए, जैसे—

They ought to be here by now.
Mohan ought to win the race.

(c) logical necessity की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए, जैसे—

You ought to start at once.
You ought not to be late.

Note : ऊपर सभी परिस्थितियों में Ought to के बदले Should का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं।

Use of Shall

(a) कोई कार्य-व्यापार भविष्य में सामान्य रूप से होगा, इसकी अभिव्यक्ति के लिए I/We के साथ Shall का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

I shall go tomorrow.
We shall work.
We shall go there tonight.

इस आशय के लिए Second Person तथा Third Person के साथ भी Shall का प्रयोग होता है जब वाक्य में प्रतिज्ञा, धमकी या आज्ञा का भाव निहित हो, जैसे—

You shall do it.
He shall do it.
You shall apologize for that.
You shall get your salary this month.
Do it or you shall be fined.

(b) First Person के साथ question में offer या suggestion की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए, जैसे—

Shall I open the gate ?

Use of Will

निम्नलिखित अवस्थाओं में Will का प्रयोग किया जाता है—

(a) कोई कार्य-व्यापार भविष्य में सामान्य रूप से होगा इसकी अभिव्यक्ति के लिए Second तथा Third Persons के साथ Will का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

You will go to Patna tomorrow.
He will help me.
She will come today.
They will return soon.

इस आशय के लिए भी **First Person** के साथ **Will** का प्रयोग होता है जब वाक्य से प्रतिज्ञा, दृढ़ निश्चय या धमकी की अभिव्यक्ति हो, जैसे—

I will take revenge on him.
I will do or die.
I will help you.
I will lend you my car.

(b) निमंत्रण, आग्रह तथा आदेश का भाव व्यक्त करने के लिए, जैसे—

Will you accompany us ?
Will you come to tea ?
Will you help me ?
You will do it any way.

(c) अवश्यम्भाविता **(inevitability)** का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

Accidents will happen.
Boys will be boys.

Use of Would

निम्नलिखित अवस्थाओं में **Would** का प्रयोग होता है—

(a) Indirect Speech में **shall/will** के **Past Tense Form** में **Would** का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

He said that he would do the work.

(b) polite request या **polite question** के लिए, जैसे—

Would you please listen to me ?
Would you please lend me your car ?
Would you return the papers by tomorrow ?

(c) संभावना **(probability)** का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

She would be her mother.
That would be a real saint.

(d) तीव्र इच्छा की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए, जैसे—

Would that I were young again !
Would that I were a bird !
I wish I would see her again.

(e) भूतकाल में कर्त्ता की आदत का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

Gandhijee would spin every morning.
He would sit all day with the book in his hand.
After lunch he would have a short nap.
He would go for a walk every morning.

(f) दृढ़ता / निश्चय (determination) का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

I would do whether you like it or not.
He would have his own way.
I would never surrender before him.

(g) तत्परता (willingness), चुनाव (choice), पसंद (preference) इत्यादि का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

He said that he would help me.
I would like to see him.
He would rather go than stay.
He would as soon die as beg.

(h) unreal conditions को व्यक्त करने के लिए, जैसे—

If I were a bird, I would fly to her.
If he had worked hard, he would have been successful.
If I had visited Agra, I would have seen the Taj Mahal.

Use of 'Used'

Modal Auxiliary 'Used' Defective Verb का Past Tense Form है जिसका Present Tense Form नहीं होता है। यह Affirmative, Negative तथा Interrogative में एक समान प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

Affirmative : He used to walk.
Negative : He used not to walk.
Interrogative : Used he to walk ?

Note : आजकल बोलचाल की भाषा में used not to के बदले did not use to का भी प्रयोग होता है। इसी प्रकार इसका Interrogative form did लगाकर इस प्रकार भी होता है—Did he use to walk ? यही कारण है कि इसे Marginal Modal Auxiliary कहते हैं।

Note : Modal Verb के रूप में Used के बाद Full Infinitive (to + v^1) का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। यही कारण है कि इसे Used to के रूप में निर्दिष्ट किया जाता है।

Note : use एक Lexical Verb भी है जिसका अर्थ है—उपयोग करना। इसका Past Tense Form used है। यहाँ आप ध्यान में रखेंगे कि Modal Verb Used Lexical Verb use के Past Tense Form used से भिन्न है।

Lexical Verb use के विभिन्न रूप uses, used, using होते हैं परन्तु Modal Verb Used का दूसरा कोई Form नहीं है।

अब हम Used to के प्रयोग पर विचार करें—

(a) Modal के रूप में Used to का प्रयोग past habit (भूतकाल की आदत) या past situation (भूतकाल की अवस्था) का बोध कराने में होता है। जैसे—

He used to drink beer.
I used to walk in the morning.
Bapu used to spin everyday.
She used to dislike me.
Man's life used to be simple.
They used to live in London.
There used to be roses in this garden.

(b) Used का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में भी होता है और तब इसका अर्थ होता है—अभ्यस्त (accustomed)। Adjective के रूप में इसके पूर्व be/become/get का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है जो किसी भी Tense में प्रयुक्त हो सकता है। साथ ही Used के बाद Preposition to + Noun/Pronoun/Gerund का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। जैसे—

I am used to noise.
She is used to working in a noisy room.
My servant is quite used to hard work.
They soon got used to driving on the left.
They are not used to rising early.

Use of Need/Dare

Need का अर्थ होता है—की आवश्यकता होना या पड़ना (to have to, be necessary)

Dare का अर्थ होता है—साहस करना, हिम्मत करना (to be courageous enough to do something)

Need तथा Dare को Semi-modals या Marginal Modal Auxiliaries कहते हैं। इसका कारण यह है कि यह अन्य Modals से कुछ अर्थों में भिन्न है। ये Modals भी हैं और Lexical Verbs भी हैं।

Need and Dare as Modal Auxiliaries : can, could, may, might, etc की तरह Need तथा Dare का प्रयोग Modals की तरह होता है।

इनका Negative : need not / needn't, dare not / daren't

Interrogative : Need / Dare I ... ?

(e) भूतकाल में कर्त्ता की आदत का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

Gandhijee would spin every morning.
He would sit all day with the book in his hand.
After lunch he would have a short nap.
He would go for a walk every morning.

(f) दृढ़ता / निश्चय (determination) का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

I would do whether you like it or not.
He would have his own way.
I would never surrender before him.

(g) तत्परता (willingness), चुनाव (choice), पसंद (preference) इत्यादि का बोध कराने के लिए, जैसे—

He said that he would help me.
I would like to see him.
He would rather go than stay.
He would as soon die as beg.

(h) unreal conditions को व्यक्त करने के लिए, जैसे—

If I were a bird, I would fly to her.
If he had worked hard, he would have been successful.
If I had visited Agra, I would have seen the Taj Mahal.

Use of 'Used'

Modal Auxiliary 'Used' Defective Verb का Past Tense Form है जिसका Present Tense Form नहीं होता है। यह Affirmative, Negative तथा Interrogative में एक समान प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

Affirmative : He used to walk.
Negative : He used not to walk.
Interrogative : Used he to walk ?

Note : आजकल बोलचाल की भाषा में used not to के बदले did not use to का भी प्रयोग होता है। इसी प्रकार इसका Interrogative form did लगाकर इस प्रकार भी होता है—Did he use to walk ? यही कारण है कि इसे Marginal Modal Auxiliary कहते हैं।

Note : Modal Verb के रूप में Used के बाद Full Infinitive (to + v^1) का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। यही कारण है कि इसे Used to के रूप में निर्दिष्ट किया जाता है।

Note : use एक Lexical Verb भी है जिसका अर्थ है—उपयोग करना। इसका Past Tense Form used है। यहाँ आप ध्यान में रखेंगे कि Modal Verb Used Lexical Verb use के Past Tense Form used से भिन्न है।

Lexical Verb use के विभिन्न रूप uses, used, using होते हैं परन्तु Modal Verb Used का दूसरा कोई Form नहीं है।

अब हम Used to के प्रयोग पर विचार करें—

(a) Modal के रूप में Used to का प्रयोग past habit (भूतकाल की आदत) या past situation (भूतकाल की अवस्था) का बोध कराने में होता है। जैसे—

He used to drink beer.
I used to walk in the morning.
Bapu used to spin everyday.
She used to dislike me.
Man's life used to be simple.
They used to live in London.
There used to be roses in this garden.

(b) Used का प्रयोग Adjective के रूप में भी होता है और तब इसका अर्थ होता है—अभ्यस्त (accustomed)। Adjective के रूप में इसके पूर्व be/become/get का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है जो किसी भी Tense में प्रयुक्त हो सकता है। साथ ही Used के बाद Preposition to + Noun/Pronoun/Gerund का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। जैसे—

I am used to noise.
She is used to working in a noisy room.
My servant is quite used to hard work.
They soon got used to driving on the left.
They are not used to rising early.

Use of Need/Dare

Need का अर्थ होता है—की आवश्यकता होना या पड़ना (to have to, be necessary)

Dare का अर्थ होता है—साहस करना, हिम्मत करना (to be courageous enough to do something)

Need तथा Dare को Semi-modals या Marginal Modal Auxiliaries कहते हैं। इसका कारण यह है कि यह अन्य Modals से कुछ अर्थों में भिन्न है। ये Modals भी हैं और Lexical Verbs भी हैं।

Need and Dare as Modal Auxiliaries : can, could, may, might, etc की तरह Need तथा Dare का प्रयोग Modals की तरह होता है।

इनका Negative : need not / needn't, dare not / daren't

Interrogative : Need / Dare I ... ?

Examples :

You need not go there.
Need she go there ?
I don't suppose he need wear a coat.
She dare not oppose her father.
Dare she oppose her father ?
How dare you touch me ?

Need and Dare as Lexical or Ordinary Verbs : go, eat, laugh, run, etc की तरह Need और Dare Lexical Verbs हैं। इनके V^1, V^2, V^3 तथा –ing Forms हैं। जैसे—

He needs my help.
He does not need my help.
Does he need my help ?
He does not dare to go there.
How can she dare to oppose her father ?

Note 1 : इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें और समझें—

(a) He need not go there. (need — modal)
(b) He does not need to go there. (need — lexical)
(c) How dare you touch her ? (dare — modal)
(d) How do you dare to touch her ? (dare — lexical)

He cannot go. **He dare not go.** **He need not go.**	**Modal**
He does not go. **He does not need.** **He does not dare.**	**Lexical**

Note 2 : जिस प्रकार Can, Could, May, Might, etc के -s/es form नहीं होते हैं उसी प्रकार Modal के रूप में Dare / Need के साथ -s/es नहीं जुटता है। अर्थात् ऐसा लिखना गलत है—

He dares not go there.
He cans not go there.
He needs not go there.

परन्तु जब Need/Dare का प्रयोग Lexical Verbs के रूप में होगा तब इनमें -s/es जुटेगा। जैसे—

He dares to go there.
He needs my help.

अतः आप इस बात को हमेशा ध्यान में रखें कि Dare / Need का प्रयोग Modals की तरह हो रहा है या Ordinary Verbs की तरह।

Exercises Worked Out

A. There are some sentences here. Say whether the verbs have been used as Full Verbs or as Auxiliaries.

Sentences	*Answers*
1. I am a boy.	(am — full verb)
2. I am going.	(am — auxiliary, going — full verb)
3. He did not go	(did — auxiliary, go — full verb)
4. He did it.	(did — full verb)
5. I have no money.	(have — full verb)
6. I have eaten.	(have — auxiliary, eaten—full verb)
7. What do you have ?	(do — auxiliary, have–full verb)
8. I have been absent.	(have — auxiliary, been— full verb)
9. I have been eating.	(have, been — auxiliaries, eating — full verb)
10. I shall be absent.	(shall — auxiliary, be — full verb)
11. He will be sleeping.	(will, be —auxiliaries, sleeping— full verb)
12. You need not go.	(need — auxiliary)
13. You need my help.	(need — full verb)
14. He does not need.	(does— auxiliary, need — full verb)
15. He used it carefully.	(used — full verb)
16. He used to walk.	(used —auxiliary, walk — full verb)

B. Use the following as Full Verbs—

are, be, has, had, does, need

Are — They are students.
Be — I shall be a doctor.
Has — He has a car.
Had — I had a jeep.
Does — He does no wrong.
Need — What do you need ?

C. Use the following as Auxiliaries—

is, have, did, do, be, need, dare

Is — He is going to school.
Have — I have eaten.
Did — I did not go there.
Do — Do I eat ?
Be — He will be beaten.
Need — Need I go there ?
Dare — He dare not ask.

D. Fill in the blanks with the most appropriate verbs, chosen from the ones given in the brackets.

1. The blind ......not see. (may, should, can, need, must)
2. ...... I come in, Sir ? (do, may, can, could)
3. It ...... rain today. (can, may, is)
4. You ...... take medicine in time. (can, should, may, ought to)
5. We ...... love our country. (can, might, should)
6. Visitors ...... tease the animals in this zoo. (need not, must not)
7. She ...... not oppose her father. (dares, dare, ought)
8. We ...... to respect our elders. (should, must, ought)
9. ...... God help you ! (may, might, must)
10. Everyone ...... die one day. (should, must, ought to)
11. He ...... not help me. (need, needs, ought)
12. She said that she ...... do. (can, could, will)
13. You ...... touch this live wire. (need not, must not)
14. ...... you to walk in the morning ? (did, used, do)

Ans. : 1. can, 2. may, 3. may, 4. should, 5. should, 6. must not, 7. dare, 8. ought, 9. may, 10. must, 11. need, 12. could, 13. must not, 14. used

EXERCISE 15

There are some sentences here. Say whether the verbs have been used as Full Verbs or as Auxiliaries.

1. We are friends.
2. We are going to Patna.
3. Why did you beat her ?
4. He did it carefully.
5. How does he do ?
6. Did he do that ?
7. Do you have money ?
8. He has nothing at all.
9. I had my lunch in time.
10. I had been absent.
11. It can be done.
12. It will never be right.
13. He does not need my help.
14. He need not say anything.
15. How dare you touch me ?
16. He used so many things.
17. He used to dance at night.
18. Used she to love you ?
19. How many cows do you have ?
20. If he could he would.

EXERCISE 16

A. Use the following as Full Verbs—

be, was, do, does, did, have, has, need, dare, used

B. Use the following as Auxiliaries—

is, am, be, been, did, has, need, dare, used

EXERCISE 17

Fill in the blanks with the most appropriate verbs, chosen from the ones given in the brackets.

1. He ...... need my help. (will, should, can)
2. You ...... see a doctor. (will, should, can)
3. ...... I have another mango ? (may, must, do)
4. ...... God give you peace ! (may, might, does)
5. No one ...... challenge God. (may, can, must, should)
6. ...... I go out, Sir ? (can, may, shall)
7. Every Bihari ...... speak Hindi. (may, can, must, should)
8. They ...... win the match. (may, ought to, are)
9. You...... take my book for a day. (may, might, must)
10. She ...... get full marks in the examination. (might, can, may)
11. Who knows what ...... happen ? (can, will, should)
12. You ...... come whenever you like. (can, may, might)
13. ...... you lift this box ? (can, may, could)
14. I thought he ...... be at home. (may, might, could)
15. You ...... have told me the truth. (might, may, can)
16. We eat that we ...... live. (may, can, should)
17. You ...... go to school in time. (must, ought to, should)
18. The parents ...... look after their children. (must, ought to, may)
19. You ...... not come today. (must, need, might)
20. You ...... not to beat your wife. (ought, need, dare)
21. They ...... have missed the train. (ought to, must, should)
22. Soldiers ...... obey orders without question. (must, should, ought to)
23. We ...... be kind. (can, ought to, may)
24. ...... I use this pen ? (shall, will, ought)
25. ...... that I were a bird ! (may, would, should)
26. He said that he ...... do it. (would, will, can)
27. They ...... not oppose us. (dare, ought, are)
28. We ...... to drink. (ought, should, used)
29. You ...... go if you ...... walk. (can, may, are)
30. He ...... have missed the train. (may, might, can)

EXERCISE 18

Direction **: same as above**

1. How old ...... he be ? (may, can, must)
2. Who am I that I ...... advise ? (should, can, may)
3. You ...... keep your promise. (must, can, may)

4. ...... you like to have a ride ? (will, would, must)
5. The lion ...... kill an ox. (may, can, will)
6. We ...... help the poor. (ought to, can, may)
7. If I were here I ...... tell him. (would, will, shall)
8. Judges ...... be honest. (must, should, might)
9. I wonder how he ...... say it. (can, may, dare)
10. What does he ... ? (has, have, got)
11. I have ...... nothing. (have, has, had)
12. He is used to ...... in a noisy room. (work, working, be)
13. This is the house where I ...... live. (used to, am, dare)
14. ...... you to love her ? (did, do, used)
15. He ...... not cry. (dares, dare, do)
16. She must ...... here by now. (have, be, been)
17. He ...... be mad. (can, must, ought to)
18. ...... it be true ? (can, may, might)
19. ...... you speak English ? (may, can, might)
20. You ...... tell me what he said. (do, are, ought)
21. ...... help me, please. (do, would, could)
22. ...... you lend me your pen for a minute, please ? (can, will, do)
23. The train is very late. So you ...... drive very fast. (do not, need not, must not)
24. You ...... use unfair means in the examination hall. (need not, must not, may not)
25. A child ...... play with a sharp knife. (must not, need not, cannot)
26. You ... go out for a walk every morning. (can, may, ought to)
27. I don't think I...... be able to go. (shall, should, can)
28. I wish you ...... tell me earlier. (should, would, must)
29. ...... I assist you? (shall, will, would)
30. He .... come, but I should be surprised. (will, can, might)
31. He said that I .... use his car any time. (can, might, should)
32. He is over eighty but ...... still read without glasses. (may, can, might)
33. If I ask her again, she ...... refuse. (may, can, should)
34. They died that we ...... live. (may, might, could)
35. We ...... all die one day. (must, should, ought to)

□ □ □

4. Time and Tense

Difference between Time & Tense : Time और Tense दो भिन्न चीजें हैं। Time से हमारा ताल्लुकात बीते हुए समय, वर्तमान समय तथा आने वाले समय से है। सारे संसार में समय को भूत (past), वर्तमान (present) तथा भविष्य (future) से निर्देशित करते हैं। इसका concept भाषा या व्याकरण से स्वतंत्र है। यह एक non-grammatical चीज है जिसे मानव तब भी महसूस करते थे जब वे कोई भाषा नहीं जानते थे। इसके विपरीत Tense पूर्णतः एक grammatical चीज है। यह क्रिया के विभिन्न रूपों का अध्ययन है (Tense is the study of the forms of the verbs)। Tense का रूप तथा विवेचन प्रत्येक भाषा में भिन्न-भिन्न है, परन्तु Time का concept सभी जगह एक ही है। I am buying a car next year (मैं अगले साल एक गाड़ी खरीद रहा हूँ)—इस वाक्य की क्रिया Present Tense में है, परन्तु इससे Future Time का बोध हो रहा है। यहाँ ध्यान देने वाली बात यह है कि क्रिया Present Tense में है इसके बावजूद इससे Future Time का बोध हो रहा है। अगर Time और Tense दोनों एक ही चीज होती तो Present Tense से सिर्फ Present Time का ही बोध होता Future Time का नहीं। स्पष्टतः Time और Tense दो भिन्न चीजें हैं।

Uses of the Tenses : अब हम प्रत्येक Tense के कुछ मुख्य प्रयोग पर विचार करेंगे।

I. Simple Present Tense

1. चिरन्तन सत्य (Universal Truth), सिद्धांत (Principle) तथा स्थायी कार्य-व्यापार (permanent activities) का बोध कराने के लिए इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

The sun rises in the east.
The earth moves round the sun.
The day is long in summer and short in winter.
Man is mortal.
A mother loves her children.
Water boils at 100°C.
Oil floats on water.
Honey is sweet.
Two and two is four.

2. नियमित (regular), स्वाभाविक (habitual), बार-बार होने वाले (repeated) तथा सामान्य (usual) कार्य-व्यापार की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

I get up everyday at five o'clock.
She goes to the cinema every Sunday.
I never tell a lie.
She always helps me.
He goes to school everyday.
I take tea without sugar.
I live at Patna.
Ram and Mohan are students.

3. अधिकार (possession) दिखलाने के लिए इस Tense का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

This book belongs to me.
He has a car.
He owns a big house.

4. Human feelings, emotions तथा mental activity को व्यक्त करने के लिए इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We love our country.
We believe in God.
I hate beggars.
I understand your problem.
I think he is always right.
I know that he can't do this.
I feel that I should not vex her.
Do you understand the problem ?
You trust in her.

5. इस Tense का प्रयोग भविष्य में होने वाले कार्यक्रम/निर्णय/पूर्व निर्धारित योजना का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है और इससे Future Time का बोध होता है। जैसे—

a. The Chief Minister comes here tomorrow.
(मुख्यमंत्री कल यहाँ आयेंगे।)

b. He leaves for London next Sunday.
(वह अगले रविवार को लंदन रवाना होगा।)

c. The plane takes off at 10 a.m.
(जहाज दस बजे उड़ेगी।)

d. I go to Bombay next week.
(मैं अगले सप्ताह बम्बई जाऊँगा।)

e. When does the college reopen ?
(कॉलेज पुनः कब खुलेगा ?)

Note : ऐसे वाक्यों में future time बतलाने वाले Adverb of time का प्रयोग होता है।

6. अगर Principal clause में Future Tense प्रयुक्त हो तो समय/शर्त का बोध कराने वाले Subordinate clause में Present Tense का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे—

We shall get wet if it rains.
You will get success if you try hard.
I shall teach him if he comes.
I will tell you the secret when you reach home.
I shall wait till you finish your lunch.
We shall start as soon as we are ready.
If you read, you will pass.
If you take medicine, you will get well.
If he runs fast, he will win.

7. भूतकाल की घटना को सुस्पष्ट तथा जोरदार बनाने के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

A gang of robbers attacks the village last night.
They open fire and carries away whatever they see.

8. अखबार में भूतकाल की घटना का विवरण देने के लिए भी Simple Present Tense प्रयुक्त होता है।

The Chief Minister challenges the Election Commissioner on many issues.
Three prisoners escape from jail.

9. मैच या किसी आयोजन का आँखों देखा हाल का वर्णन करने में commentary को living बनाने के ख्याल से Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Lara throws the ball. Kapil moves a bit and hits the ball and scores six runs.

10. Here या There से प्रारंभ होने वाले वैसे Exclamatory Sentences में Simple Present Tense का व्यवहार होता है जिससे किसी कार्य के जारी रहने का बोध होता है। जैसे—

Here comes the king !
There goes the bus !
Here he comes !
There she blows !

II. Present Continuous Tense

1. इस Tense का प्रयोग उस कार्य-व्यापार के लिए होता है जो बोलने के वक्त जारी हो (for an action going on at the time of speaking)। जैसे—

She is playing in the room.
He is singing.
I am reading a newspaper now.
My brother is sleeping.

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे काम के होने या चालू रहने का भी बोध कराने में होता है जो अभी तत्काल नहीं हो रहा है (इसी क्षण यानी बोलने के वक्त), परन्तु अभीष्ट समय के आस-पास या 'इन दिनों' हो रहा है (for an action happening about this time but not necessarily at the moment of speaking)। जैसे—

(a) He is reading mathematics these days.
वह आजकल गणित पढ़ रहा है—बोलने के वक्त नहीं, परन्तु आजकल—about this time.

(b) I am reading 'Hamlet'. (but I am not reading at this moment)

3. इस Tense का प्रयोग भविष्य में होने वाले कार्यक्रम/निर्णय/पूर्व निर्धारित योजना का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है, परन्तु इस आशय के लिए वैसे Adverb of Time का प्रयोग आवश्यक है जिससे Future Time का बोध हो। जैसे—

The Prime Minister is returning tomorrow.
We are buying a car next year.
She is coming tomorrow.
I am leaving for Delhi next week.
I am going to the cinema tonight.
The Chief Minister is landing at 8 o'clock.
She is dancing this evening.

4. इस Tense का प्रयोग कार्य करने के इरादे (intention) या सम्भावना (likelihood) का भी बोध कराने के लिए होता है और इससे future time का भाव व्यक्त होता है।

I am going to die.
I am going to buy a car.
We are going to play the match.

Note : निम्नलिखित verbs का प्रयोग साधारणत: Present Continuous Tense में नहीं होता है—

(a) **Verbs of perception :** see, hear, smell, notice, feel, taste
(b) **Verbs of appearing :** appear, look, seem
(c) **Verbs of emotion, state of mind or thinking :** want, wish, desire, feel, like, dislike, love, hate, hope, doubt, believe, disbelieve, think, suppose, agree, consider, remember, forget, know, understand, mean, mind
(d) **Verbs denoting possession :** have, own, possess, contain, consist of, belong to

इनके प्रयोग पर ध्यान दें :

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is knowing me well.	He knows me well.
I am understanding it.	I understand it.
I am feeling that you are correct.	I feel that you are correct.
I am believing it.	I believe it.
He is owning a car.	He owns a car.
He is having a beautiful wife.	He has a beautiful wife.
She is having a good house.	She has a good house.
I am smelling something burning.	I smell something burning.
Why is she appearing so sad ?	Why does she appear so sad ?
This book is belonging to me.	This book belongs to me.
The pot is containing milk.	The pot contains milk.

III. Present Perfect Tense

1. यह Tense एक प्रकार से past और present का मिश्रण है। इससे ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार का बोध होता है जो भूतकाल में हुआ (हाल में, नजदीक में, अभी-अभी कुछ देर पहले या कुछ दिन पहले या इतने दिन पहले जिसका कोई लेखा जोखा नहीं हो), परन्तु जिसका संबंध present से है, जिसका मतलब, विशेष अर्थ perfection या implication present time से है। जैसे—He has seen the Taj Mahal (उसने ताजमहल देखा है।) इस वाक्य की क्रिया Present Perfect Tense में है। ताजमहल देखने का काम past में हुआ। हो सकता है कि निकट भूत में हुआ हो या बहुत दिन पहले हुआ हो। इस तथ्य को Past Indefinite Tense द्वारा भी व्यक्त किया जा सकता है—He saw the Taj Mahal (उसने ताजमहल देखा)। परन्तु Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग इस वाक्य की क्रिया का प्रभाव वर्तमान से जोड़ता है जो क्रिया past time में सम्पन्न हुई। अर्थात् वाक्य का अभिप्राय यह हो सकता है—इसलिए वह ताजमहल के बारे में कह सकता है या इसलिए उसे दोबारा ताजमहल देखने की इच्छा नहीं है। परन्तु इस वाक्य की क्रिया का प्रयोग Past Indefinite Tense में किया जाए तो ऐसा कोई अभिप्राय वर्तमान समय में नहीं निकलेगा। कुछ और वाक्य लें और उसका संबंध वर्तमान से जोड़ें :

(a) He has washed his room. उसने अपना रूम साफ किया है। ⇒ इसलिए उसका रूम चमक रहा है या इसलिए उसका रूम साफ है। ⇒ रूम साफ करने का काम पहले हुआ परन्तु वर्तमान से इसका संबंध है।

(b) Ram has lost his pen. राम ने अपनी कलम खो दी है। ⇒ इसलिए वह पेंसिल से लिख रहा है / इसलिए वह उदास है / इसलिए वह डर रहा है कि उसके पिता उसे पीटेंगे। ⇒ अर्थात् वर्तमान से संबंध है।

(c) I have remembered my lesson. मैंने अपना पाठ याद कर लिया है। ⇒ इसलिए मैं अब खेलने जा रहा हूँ / अब आप मुझसे पूछ सकते हैं / अब मुझे पीटाने का डर नहीं है। ⇒ अर्थात् वर्तमान से संबंध है।

(d) I have eaten. मैंने खा लिया है। ⇒ अब मुझे खाने की जरूरत नहीं है / इसलिए आप मेरी चिन्ता न करें / इसलिए मैं अब खाने के झंझट से मुक्त हूँ। ⇒ अर्थात् वर्तमान से संबंध है।

(e) Have you seen my brother ? क्या तुम मेरे भाई को देखे हो ? ⇒ अर्थात् प्रश्नकर्त्ता यह जानना चाहेगा कि वह कहाँ है या वह उसके बारे में क्या opinion रखता है।

(f) I have broken my leg. मैंने अपनी टाँग तोड़ ली है। ⇒ टाँग अभी भी टूटी हुई है ⇒ वर्तमान से संबंध है। परन्तु I broke my leg से यह स्पष्ट नहीं होता कि अभी तक उसकी टाँग टूटी हुई है या ठीक हो गयी है।

आप देख रहे हैं कि क्रिया past time में सम्पन्न हुई, परन्तु उसका अभिप्राय, प्रभाव, विशेष अर्थ वर्तमान समय से है—यही Present Perfect Tense का मुख्य प्रयोग है।

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है जो भूतकाल में आरंभ हुआ और वर्तमान में जारी है। इस प्रकार के भाव के लिए साथ में for/since का भी प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We have lived in this house since 1959.
(अभी भी रह रहे हैं।)

We have known each other for ten years.
(अभी भी एक-दूसरे को जानते हैं।)

I have been ill since Monday.
(अभी भी बीमार हूँ।)

Note : 1. जो कार्य-व्यापार भूतकाल में शुरू हुआ और अभी भी जारी है उसे व्यक्त करने के लिए दो Tenses हैं—Present Perfect Tense तथा Present Perfect Continuous Tense. कुछ Verbs ऐसे हैं जिनका प्रयोग Present Perfect Tense तथा Present Perfect Continuous Tense दोनों में कर सकते हैं परन्तु वैसे verbs जो प्रायः Continuous Tense में प्रयुक्त नहीं होते हैं उनके लिए Present Perfect Tense का ही प्रयोग करना पड़ता है। जैसे—

I have lived in this town since 1968.
I have been living in this town since 1968.
He has studied for two hours.
He has been studying for two hours.

परन्तु "I have been knowing him for ten years" आप नहीं लिख सकते हैं। इसके बदले आपको लिखना होगा—I have known him for ten years. ऐसा इसलिए कि verb 'to know' का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में Continuous Tense में नहीं होता है।

Note 2. इस Tense के साथ ever (कभी), never (कभी नहीं), always (हमेशा), occasionally (कभी-कभी), often (प्रायः), several times (अनेक बार), already (पहले से ही, पहले ही), yet (अब तक, अभी तक), just (तुरंत),

lately (हाल में), **recently** (हाल में), **so far** (अब तक, जहाँ तक), **up to now** (अभी तक), **up to the present** (वर्तमान समय तक) इत्यादि **adverbs/adverbials** का प्रयोग होता है।

Note 3. इस **Tense** के साथ **'ago'** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है न ही भूतकालिक समयसूचक शब्दों का प्रयोग होता है।

Incorrect	*Correct*
He has come yesterday.	He came yesterday.
I have seen him two years ago.	I saw him two years ago.

IV. Present Perfect Continuous Tense

1. Present Perfect Continuous Tense का प्रयोग मुख्यतः उस कार्य-व्यापार को व्यक्त करने के लिए होता है जो **past** में प्रारंभ हुआ और अभी भी हो रहा है। जैसे—

He has been sleeping for two years.
It has been raining since morning.
I have been reading since 9 o'clock.
We have been living in this town for ten years.

2. Present Perfect Continuous Tense का प्रयोग वैसे कार्य-व्यापार को भी व्यक्त करने के लिए होता है जो **past time** में प्रारंभ हुआ, कुछ समय तक जारी रहा और अभी तत्काल बंद या समाप्त हो गया है। जैसे—

I am tired; I have been running round the town all day.
Someone has been writing with my pen.
He has been teasing her.
Someone has been wearing my shirt.

V. Simple Past Tense

1. Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार के लिए होता है जो भूतकाल में समाप्त हो गया। जैसे—

I met him yesterday.
He died in 1980.
She came to me.
He taught us.
My father bought a new car.
Newton discovered the laws of gravitation.
She missed the train last night.

2. Past time से **related situation** का वर्णन करने में भी इस **Tense** का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

It was very hot.
It was 1980.
Mohan was ill.
Vanka was an orphan.
She was a good girl.
We were happy there.

3. इस Tense का प्रयोग भूतकाल में कोई कार्य करने की आदत का बोध कराने में भी होता है। जैसे—

He always advised me.
She used to dance.
I used to smoke.
I never touched wine.
He always carried an umbrella.
I went home on Sundays.

4. भूतकाल में किसी कार्य के होते रहने का बोध कराने में भी कभी-कभी इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

While they danced, we sang.
While he played, I wrote a letter.
When the child played, the mother cooked food.

5. as if, as though, I wish, if only, it is time इत्यादि के बाद unreal past का बोध कराने के लिए Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

He talks as if he were my boss.
I wish I were a king.
If only I had enough money.
It is time we started playing tennis.

VI. Past Continuous Tense

1. Past Continuous Tense का प्रयोग प्रायः past time में किसी कार्य-व्यापार के जारी रहने का वर्णन करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

They were walking.
I was reading.
It was raining.
Boys were playing in the field.
When he came to me I was reading a novel.

2. उस स्थिति में भी Past Continuous Tense का प्रयोग होता है जब यह व्यक्त करना हो कि past time में किसी घटना के समय दूसरा कार्य-व्यापार पहले से continue कर रहा था। जैसे—

I was reading when he came in.
It was raining when he went out.
He was sleeping when he was shot dead.
He came in while I was reading.
I met him when he was crossing the bridge.
It was raining this morning when I got up.
He was sitting in the garden when the tree fell down.
The sun was shining when he went out.
We were living in France when the war began.

3. भूतकाल में एक ही समय में दो कार्य होते रहने की स्थिति बताने के लिए Past Continuous Tense का प्रयोग इस प्रकार किया जाता है।

While he was dancing, I was singing.
While the child was sleeping, the mother was doing the domestic work.

VII. Past Perfect Tense

1. यदि भूतकाल में दो कार्य हुए हों और एक कार्य दूसरे कार्य के बहुत पहले पूर्णरूपेण समाप्त हो गया हो, तो पहले समाप्त होने वाले कार्य के लिए Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होता है और बाद में समाप्त होने वाले कार्य के लिए Past Indefinite Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

डॉक्टर के आने के पहले रोगी मर चुका था। इस वाक्य से यह स्पष्ट है कि भूतकाल में दो काम हुए—(a) रोगी का मरना तथा (b) डॉक्टर का आना। 'रोगी का मरना' पहले पूरा हुआ। अतः इसके लिए Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होगा तथा 'डॉक्टर का आना' बाद में सम्पन्न हुआ। अतः इसके लिए Past Indefinite Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होगा। इस प्रकार इस वाक्य का अनुवाद होगा :—

The patient had died before the doctor came.

इस प्रकार Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया से यह बोध होता है कि कोई कार्य भूतकाल में किसी घटना के पहले सम्पन्न हो चुका था। कुछ और examples लें—

I had reached school before the bell rang.
When we reached there, the dinner had started.
She had finished her work before I went to her house.
The crops had failed before it rained.
I had left the place when he came.

Note : यदि भूतकाल में दो कार्य हुए हों, एक कार्य दूसरे कार्य के तुरंत बाद, तो कभी-कभी उन दोनों कार्यों के बीच इतना कम अंतराल रहता है कि यह बोध ही नहीं होता कि एक कार्य की पूर्णरूपेण समाप्ति के बाद ही दूसरा कार्य सम्पादित हुआ। ऐसे वाक्यों के दोनों भागों में Past Indefinite Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :—

(a) जब मैंने उसे पीटा तब वह गाली देने लगा।
When I beat him he began to abuse me.

(b) जब वर्ग समाप्त हुआ तब विद्यार्थी बाहर चले गए।
When the class ended the students went out.

2. आपने Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे वाक्यों में देखा है जिसके दो भाग हैं। कभी-कभी ऐसे वाक्यों के दो भाग नहीं होते हैं, परन्तु प्रसंग (context) से स्पष्ट रहता है कि अभीष्ट कार्य दूसरे कार्य के बहुत पहले ही समाप्त हो चुका था। ऐसे वाक्यों में दूसरा कार्य लुप्त (silent) या understood रहता है। ऐसे वाक्यों में भी Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

(a) I had already completed my work.
मैंने पहले ही अपना काम पूरा कर लिया था।

(b) She had reached much earlier.
वह बहुत पहले पहुँच चुकी थी।

(c) I had never been to Bombay before.
इसके पूर्व मैं बम्बई नहीं गया था।

3. Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग अनेक परिस्थितियों में Present Perfect Tense के Past Equivalent के रूप में होता है। जैसे—

(a) I have been ill for ten days. —Present Perfect Tense
I had been ill for ten days. —Past Perfect Tense

(b) I have served in the army since 1948. —Present Perfect Tense
I had served in the army since 1948. —Past Perfect Tense

(c) He has not drunk for ten years. —Present Perfect Tense
He had not drunk for ten years. —Past Perfect Tense

VIII. Past Perfect Continuous Tense

इस Tense की क्रिया से यह बोध होता है कि कोई कार्य-व्यापार भूतकाल में कुछ समय तक जारी था। जैसे—

I had been reading.
They had been fighting for ten years.
She had been dancing since 1980.

IX. Future Indefinite Tense
Or, Simple Future Tense

1. Simple Future Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार के लिए होता है जो भविष्य में सामान्य रूप से होगा। जैसे—

I shall go to Patna tomorrow.
He will help me.
I shall appear at the examination next year.

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग इच्छा (will), संकल्प (determination), चेतावनी (threat/command), इरादा (intention) इत्यादि का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है। जैसे—

I will serve the nation.
I will never tell a lie.
You shall not cheat her again.
You shall come in time.

X. Future Continuous Tense

इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार के लिए होता है जो भविष्य में किसी खास वक्त पर होता रहेगा।

He will be sleeping then.
I shall be staying there.

XI. Future Perfect Tense

इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार के लिए होता है जो भविष्य में किसी निर्धारित समय तक समाप्त हो चुका रहेगा।

I shall have finished the job by that time.
He will have come by ten o'clock.
The patient will have died before the doctor comes.
He will have come before I sleep.

Note : ध्यान दें कि शर्त वाले उपवाक्यों में Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग हुआ है।

XII. Future Perfect Continuous Tense

इस Tense से यह बोध होता है कि कार्य भविष्य में कुछ समय तक जारी रहेगा। जैसे—

I shall have been reading for two years.

Worked Out Examples

Use the correct verb form in the following sentences chosen from the ones given in brackets :

1. She......to school everyday. (goes, is going) **Ans. : goes**
2. I......her last year. (have met, met) **Ans. : met**
3. I......working in this school for the last ten years. (am, have been) **Ans. : have been**
4. We......him yesterday. (saw, have seen) **Ans. : saw**

5. He......ill since Friday. (has been, is) Ans. : has been
6. When I reached the station, the train......left. (has, was, had) Ans. : had
7. I shall help you, if you......to me. (will come, come) Ans. : come
8. I wish I......a rich man. (was, were, am) Ans. : were
9. He......up at 5 o'clock everyday. (gets, is getting) Ans. : gets
10. It......raining for an hour. (is, has been) Ans. : has been
11. He......for London next week. (left, leaves) Ans. : leaves
12. The thief......red handed. (was caught, caught) Ans. : was caught
13. While they prayed, we...... . (sing, sang) Ans. : sang
14. On Sunday they......to the movies. (went, go) Ans. : go
15. He said that she......tomorrow. (would go, will go) Ans. : would go
16. The Chief Minister......for Delhi tomorrow. (leaves, has left) Ans. : leaves
17. The boy......making a noise for a long time. (is, has been) Ans. : has been
18. Ram......gone before you came. (has, had) Ans. : had
19. The train......already. (has left, is leaving) Ans. : has left
20. Have you......him ? (saw, seen) Ans. : seen
21. The earth......round the sun. (moved, moves) Ans. : moves
22. They......out an hour ago. (have gone, went) Ans. : went
23. She......a letter now. (is writing, writes) Ans. : is writing
24. He told me that he......home. (was going, is going) Ans. : was going
25. She......for Bombay next week. (leaves, left) Ans. : leaves
26. I......newspaper every morning. (read, am reading) Ans. : read
27. He......because he is hungry now. (cries, is crying) Ans. : is crying
28. I......school before the bell rang. (had reached, reached) Ans. : had reached
29. He usually......in his bath. (sings, sang) Ans. : sings
30. He......when he was shot dead. (slept, was sleeping) Ans. : was sleeping
31. The tiger......by Ram. (killed, was killed) Ans. : was killed
32. Did you......him ? (see, saw) Ans. : see
33. He asked what I...... . (want, wanted) Ans. : wanted
34. He......when I saw him. (played, was playing) Ans. : was playing
35. If you......me I shall help you. (will help, help) Ans. : help
36. I saw him when I......for the bus. (waited, was waiting) Ans. : was waiting
37. She......at this moment. (reads, is reading) Ans. : is reading
38. She......absent for a long time. (is, has been) Ans : has been
39. I do not mind your......a little late. (coming, come) Ans. : coming

40. We shall play if the Headmaster......us. (allows, allowed)
Ans. : allows

41. He will have gone before I......to him. (go, shall go) **Ans. : go**
42. They......in Delhi since 1950. (lived, have lived) **Ans. : have lived**
43. Columbus......America. (discovered, had discovered)
Ans. : discovered

44. They will have reached the station before the train...... .
(starts, will start) **Ans. : starts**

45. I wish my brother......alive. (was, were) **Ans. : were**
46. I......a letter to her yesterday. (have written, wrote) **Ans. : wrote**
47. By this time tomorrow I......home. (shall reach, shall have reached)
Ans. : shall have reached

48. Ice......at 0° centigrade. (melts, is melting) **Ans. : melts**
49. Everything that......is not gold. (shines, is shining) **Ans. : shines**
50. He talks as if he......my master. (was, were) **Ans. : were**

EXERCISE 19

Use the correct verb form in the following sentences, chosen from the ones given in brackets.

1. He......to school everyday. (goes, is going)
2. The sun......in the east. (is rising, rises)
3. He always......by bus. (goes, is going)
4. On Sundays they......to the movies. (went, go)
5. He usually......in his bath. (sings, sang)
6. He......a poem now. (reads, is reading)
7. He......up at five o'clock everyday. (gets, is getting)
8. The baby......because it is hungry now. (cries, is crying)
9. He never......a lie. (is telling, tells)
10. He......in the field at the moment. (plays, is playing)
11. Ravi......to Delhi tomorrow. (is going, has gone)
12. She......for Bombay next week. (leaves, left)
13. I......Ram tonight. (am meeting, meet)
14. I......English this year. (study, am studying)
15. I......him tomorrow. (see, am seeing)
16. The Prime Minister......here tomorrow. (arrived, arrives)
17. He just......out. (has gone, goes)
18. Who has......my pen ? (stolen, stole)
19. He......the television now. (watches, is watching)
20. Hard work......success. (brings, brought)
21. She habitually......late. (comes, is coming)
22. I......never the Taj Mahal. (have seen, see)

23. He......in the office for the last ten years. (is working, has been working)
24. It......for two hours. (is raining, has been raining)
25. She......waiting for an hour. (is, has been)
26. He......letters since breakfast. (writes, has been writing)
27. I......for the bus since 4 o'clock. (am waiting, have been waiting)
28. I......absent for five days. (am, have been)
29. He......ill since Friday. (is, has been)
30. We......here for two days. (are, have been)
31. The boy......making a noise for a long time. (is, has been)
32. I......him for ten years. (have known, have been knowing)
33. They......out an hour ago. (have gone, went)
34. I......on him an hour ago. (call, called)
35. It......since last night. (rained, has been raining)
36. We......a film last night. (see, saw)
37. My father......yesterday. (has come, came)
38. Who......America ? (discovers, discovered)
39. She did not......a letter. (write, wrote)
40. He......home yesterday. (has gone, went)
41. I......him last year. (meet, met)
42. I......him on Sunday last. (have met, met)
43. We......this film. (see, saw)
44. Nehru......children. (loves, loved)
45. He......the letter. (tears, tore)

EXERCISE 20

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs given in the brackets.

1. He......next month. (went, will go)
2. My father......tomorrow. (comes, will come)
3. He......to Delhi tomorrow. (is going, went)
4. My father......seventy next month. (will be, will)
5. He......to Delhi last week. (will go, went)
6. I shall teach him if he...... . (will come, comes)
7. I shall help you if you......to me. (come, will come)
8. He......if he works hard. (will pass, passes)
9. Work hard or you...... . (will fail, fail)
10. She will not go out if it...... . (rains, rained)
11. The teacher......you if you go to him. (will help, is helping)
12. Don't come if it .... (rains, will rain)
13. The patient had died before the doctor...... . (comes, came)
14. The children had slept before I......home. (reached, reach)
15. She......the work before I went to her house. (finished, had finished)

16. When I reached the station, the train......left. (had, was)
17. He......school before the bell rang. (had reached, reached)
18. We arrived at the station after the train...... . (left, had left)
19. The crops......before it rained. (failed, had failed)
20. I......the place when he came. (left, had left)
21. I......a book when he came in. (read, was reading)
22. She......when I met her this morning. (was dressing, dressed)
23. I saw him when I......for a bus. (was waiting, waited)
24. When I......in the field, it started raining. (was sitting, sat)
25. He was shot dead when he...... . (was sleeping, slept)
26. While they played, we...... . (sing, sang)
27. When he heard the news, he...... . (wept, was weeping)
28. They......to the radio when I went out. (listened, were listening)
29. When it rained she......an umbrella. (carried, had carried)
30. We......in France when the war began. (lived, were living)
31. By next July he......his second novel. (will have written, will write)
32. He will have finished the work before you...... . (leave, will leave)
33. I wish I......a king. (am, were)
34. He told me that she......home. (was going, is going)
35. He......by Ram. (was beating, was beaten)
36. The second goal......by Ram. (scored, was scored)
37. He said that he......come soon. (will, would)
38. It can be...... . (done, do)
39. John speaks as if he......my boss. (is, were)
40. I don't mind your......a little late. (coming, come)
41. It is time we......playing tennis. (started, are)
42. I wish he......leader of my party. (was, were)
43. He was......red-handed. (catching, caught)
44. If I were a king I......you rich. (would make, will make)
45. The song he......was sweet. (sang, sings)

Some More Solved Examples

Fill in the blanks with the suitable forms of the verbs given in brackets.

1. The earth (move) round the sun.
2. I (see) him yesterday.
3. He (go) to Delhi tomorrow.
4. It (rain) for two hours.
5. I shall go before the sun (set).
6. If you help me I (help) you.
7. Who (discover) America ?
8. The patient (die) before the doctor came.

9. If I (be) a king, I would be happy.
10. I wish I (be) a king.
11. I (live) here since 1980.
12. He (not return) yet.
13. She (watch) the television now.
14. She (not see) me for a long time.
15. They (come) here a month ago.
16. She (go) to the cinema every Sunday.
17. My father (be) seventy next month.
18. He (miss) the train last night.
19. She (finish) the work before I went to her house.
20. The crops (fail) before it rained.
21. The book (come) out two months ago.
22. If I were a nightingale I (sing) day and night.
23. He speaks as if he (be) my boss.
24. Sita (go) out an hour ago.
25. We (be) here for two days.
26. Hard work (bring) success.
27. Oil (float) on water.
28. He (meet) me at the station.
29. He shall never fail as he (read) sincerely.
30. I (stay) here until he answers me.
31. He (be) a boy.
32. We (be) boys.
33. She habitually (come) late.
34. I wish he (be) leader of my party.
35. The dog (bark) at me.
36. The man was (bite) by a dog.
37. I (read) a book when he came in.
38. He was (shoot) dead.
39. Dickens (write) novels.
40. Pardon me for not (write) to you.
41. He was (beat) by the police.
42. When he heard the sad news he (weep).
43. I (meet) your father in Bombay.
44. Have you (write) the letter ?
45. If you (come) to my house, we (go) together.
46. He said that he (be) a diligent boy.
47. Sohan (realize) that his train had stopped.
48. I (think) she was quite attractive.
49. He hoped that he (have) not made a mistake.
50. The picture was (hang) on the wall.

51. All the guests were (seat) in the hall.
52. The English (leave) India for good.
53. I waited for my friend until he (come).
54. He would succeed if he (try).
55. When it rained she (carry) an umbrella.
56. This boy never (see) the sea.
57. Take care you (catch) a cold.
58. The fire (spread) to several houses.
59. The college (reopen) in July each year.
60. It is time we (start) playing tennis.
61. It is time he (go) there.
62. It is high time we (return) home.
63. I am fond of (play) tennis.
64. He thought of (do) my work.
65. Don't worry, I (lend) you some money.
66. We (live) in France when the war began.
67. After you (go), I went to sleep.
68. She was (dance) with Sohan.
69. I don't know who (bring) him up.
70. The song he (sing) was sweet.

ANSWERS

1. The earth moves round the sun.
2. I saw him yesterday.
3. He will go to Delhi tomorrow.
   Or, He is going to Delhi tomorrow.
4. It has been raining for two hours.
   Or, It has rained for two hours.
5. I shall go before the sun sets.
6. If you help me I shall help you.
7. Who discovered America ?
8. The patient had died before the doctor came.
9. If I were a king, I would be happy.
10. I wish I were a king.
11. I have been living here since 1980.
12. He has not returned yet.
13. She is watching the television now.
14. She has not seen me for a long time.
15. They came here a month ago.
16. She goes to the cinema every Sunday.
17. My father will be seventy next month.
18. He missed the train last night.
19. She had finished the work before I went to her house.

20. The crops had failed before it rained.
21. The book came out two months ago.
22. If I were a nightingale I would sing day and night.
23. He speaks as if he were my boss.
24. Sita went out an hour ago.
25. We have been here for two days.
26. Hard work brings success.
27. Oil floats on water.
28. He met me at the station.
29. He shall never fail as he reads sincerely.
30. I shall stay here until he answers me.
31. He is a boy.
32. We are boys.
33. She habitually comes late.
34. I wish he were leader of my party.
35. The dog is barking at me.
36. The man was bitten by a dog.
37. I was reading a book when he came in.
38. He was shot dead.
39. Dickens wrote novels.
40. Pardon me for not writing to you.
41. He was beaten by the police.
42. When he heard the sad news, he wept.
43. I met your father in Bombay.
44. Have you written the letter ?
45. If you come to my house, we shall go together.
46. He said that he was a diligent boy.
47. Sohan realized that his train had stopped.
48. I thought she was quite attractive.
49. He hoped that he had not made a mistake.
50. The picture was hung on the wall.
51. All the guests were seated in the hall.
52. The English left India for good.
53. I waited for my friend until he came.
54. He would succeed if he tried.
55. When it rained she carried an umbrella.
56. This boy has never seen the sea.
57. Take care you may catch a cold.
58. The fire spread to several houses.

59. The college reopens in July each year.
60. It is time we started playing tennis.

62. It is high time we returned home.
63. I am fond of playing tennis.
64. He thought of doing my work.
65. Don't worry, I will lend you some money.
66. We were living in France when the war began.
67. After you had gone,I went to sleep.
68. She was dancing with Sohan.
69. I don't know who brought him up.
70. The song he sang was sweet.

Explanatory Notes

(9 & 10) वाक्य में कोरी कल्पना/इच्छा का भाव है। इसे व्यक्त करने के लिए क्रिया Past Tense तथा Plural Number में प्रयुक्त होगी। be के विभिन्न रूप— am/is/are, was/were तथा been.

12. yet के कारण Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग हुआ है।

13. now के कारण Present Continuous Tense का प्रयोग हुआ है।

23 as if/as though के बाद Verb Past Tense तथा Plural Number में प्रयुक्त होगी।

36. Use of Passive Voice.

38. Use of Passive Voice.

46, 47 & 49. Indirect Narration/Sequence of Tense के कारण Past Tense का प्रयोग हुआ है।

50 & 51. Use of Passive Voice.

60, 61 & 62. ऐसे वाक्यों में It is time/It is high time के बाद प्रयुक्त verb Past Tense में होगा।

63. fond of, thought of, desirous of इत्यादि के बाद V-ing form प्रयुक्त होगा।

Solved Examples Continued

1. He (go) to his parents within a week.
2. I (write) a letter at the moment.
3. Slow and steady (win) the race.
4. Two and two (make) four.
5. The baby (cry) because it is hungry now.
6. How long you (learn) English ?
7. I (read) a novel when she came in.
8. The sun (shine) when I went out.
9. It (rain) this morning when I got up.
10. He (walk) in the field when he was shot dead.
11. He (take) his dinner when I (go) to see him.
12. He speaks as one who (know).

20. The crops had failed before it rained.
21. The book came out two months ago.
22. If I were a nightingale I would sing day and night.
23. He speaks as if he were my boss.
24. Sita went out an hour ago.
25. We have been here for two days.
26. Hard work brings success.
27. Oil floats on water.
28. He met me at the station.
29. He shall never fail as he reads sincerely.
30. I shall stay here until he answers me.
31. He is a boy.
32. We are boys.
33. She habitually comes late.
34. I wish he were leader of my party.
35. The dog is barking at me.
36. The man was bitten by a dog.
37. I was reading a book when he came in.
38. He was shot dead.
39. Dickens wrote novels.
40. Pardon me for not writing to you.
41. He was beaten by the police.
42. When he heard the sad news, he wept.
43. I met your father in Bombay.
44. Have you written the letter ?
45. If you come to my house, we shall go together.
46. He said that he was a diligent boy.
47. Sohan realized that his train had stopped.
48. I thought she was quite attractive.
49. He hoped that he had not made a mistake.
50. The picture was hung on the wall.
51. All the guests were seated in the hall.
52. The English left India for good.
53. I waited for my friend until he came.
54. He would succeed if he tried.
55. When it rained she carried an umbrella.
56. This boy has never seen the sea.
57. Take care you may catch a cold.
58. The fire spread to several houses.
59. The college reopens in July each year.
60. It is time we started playing tennis.
61. It is time he went there.

62. It is high time we returned home.
63. I am fond of playing tennis.
64. He thought of doing my work.
65. Don't worry, I will lend you some money.
66. We were living in France when the war began.
67. After you had gone,I went to sleep.
68. She was dancing with Sohan.
69. I don't know who brought him up.
70. The song he sang was sweet.

Explanatory Notes

(9 & 10) वाक्य में कोरी कल्पना/इच्छा का भाव है। इसे व्यक्त करने के लिए क्रिया Past Tense तथा Plural Number में प्रयुक्त होगी। be के विभिन्न रूप— am/is/are, was/were तथा been.

12. yet के कारण Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग हुआ है।

13. now के कारण Present Continuous Tense का प्रयोग हुआ है।

23 as if/as though के बाद Verb Past Tense तथा Plural Number में प्रयुक्त होगी।

36. Use of Passive Voice.

38. Use of Passive Voice.

46, 47 & 49. Indirect Narration/Sequence of Tense के कारण Past Tense का प्रयोग हुआ है।

50 & 51. Use of Passive Voice.

60, 61 & 62. ऐसे वाक्यों में It is time/It is high time के बाद प्रयुक्त verb Past Tense में होगा।

63. fond of, thought of, desirous of इत्यादि के बाद V-ing form प्रयुक्त होगा।

Solved Examples Continued

1. He (go) to his parents within a week.
2. I (write) a letter at the moment.
3. Slow and steady (win) the race.
4. Two and two (make) four.
5. The baby (cry) because it is hungry now.
6. How long you (learn) English ?
7. I (read) a novel when she came in.
8. The sun (shine) when I went out.
9. It (rain) this morning when I got up.
10. He (walk) in the field when he was shot dead.
11. He (take) his dinner when I (go) to see him.
12. He speaks as one who (know).

13. I (visit) Patna three times.
14. We (study) English for ten years.
15. You (not go) until I know the truth.
16. By next year he (write) the book.
17. She (finish) the work before you leave.
18. She (be) born in 1980.
19. Since when you (know) her ?
20. Keep quiet, I (listen) to the radio.
21. She will not go out if it (rain).
22. Examinations (hold) next month.
23. I thanked him for what he (do).
24. It (not snow) in summer.
25. He came oftener than we (expect).
26. I (know) him since 1981.
27. He felt that he (cheat) by a boy.
28. Don't disturb me. I (do) my home work.
29. I (smell) something burning.
30. I don't mind (wait) here for an hour.
31. This house (build)in 1967.
32. The police (arrest)the thief by tomorrow.
33. I (arrive) before the game was over.
34. Who (keep) you waiting ?
35. He ran away because he (be) afraid.
36. He (not speak) to me for over three years.
37. No, he isn't here. He just (go) out.
38. Did you (see) that ?
39. He (have) a red pen.
40. Work hard or you (fail).
41. If I were a bird, I (fly) to her.
42. He talks as if he (know) everything.
43. He always plays cricket but today he (play) football.
44. I (not see) the boy since yesterday morning.
45. I could (answer) all the questions but I had not enough time.
46. Hurry up, the taxi (wait).
47. The village girl never (see) a train.
48. The teacher will help you if you (go) to him.
49. He said that he can (do) the work.
50. He (hide) himself in a bush.

ANSWERS

1. He will go to his parents within a week.
2. I am writing a letter at the moment.
3. Slow and steady wins the race.

4. Two and two makes four.
5. The baby is crying because it is hungry now.
6. How long have you been learning English ?
7. I was reading a novel when she came in.
8. The sun was shining when I went out.
9. It was raining this morning when I got up.
10. He was walking in the field when he was shot dead.
11. He was taking his dinner when I went to see him.
12. He speaks as one who knows.
13. I have visited Patna three times.
14. We have studied English for ten years.
    Or, We have been studying English for ten years.
15. You shall not go until I know the truth.
16. By next year he will have written the book.
17. She will have finished the work before you leave.
18. She was born in 1980.
19. Since when have you known her ?
20. Keep quiet, I am listening to the radio.
21. She will not go out if it rains.
22. Examinations will be held next month.
23. I thanked him for what he had done.
24. It does not snow in summer.
25. He came oftener than we expected.
26. I have known him since 1981.
27. He felt that he was cheated by a boy.
28. Don't disturb. I am doing my homework.
29. I smell something burning.
30. I don't mind waiting here for an hour.
31. This house was built in 1967.
32. The police will have arrested the thief by tomorrow.
33. I had arrived before the game was over.
34. Who kept you waiting ?
35. He ran away because he was afraid.
36. He has not spoken to me for over three years.
37. No, he isn't here.He has just gone out.
38. Did you see that ?
39. He has a red pen.
40. Work hard or you will fail.
41. If I were a bird I would fly to her.
42. He talks as if he knew everything.
43. He always plays cricket but today he is playing football.
44. I have not seen the boy since yesterday morning.

45. I could have answered all the questions but I had not enough time.
46. Hurry up, the taxi is waiting.
47. The village girl has never seen a train.
48. The teacher will help you if you go to him.
49. He said that he could do the work.
50. He hid himself in a bush.

EXERCISE 21

Fill in the blanks with the suitable forms of the verbs given in brackets.

1. The sun (rise)in the east.
2. I (go) to school everyday.
3. She (go) to the cinema every Sunday.
4. Oil (float) on water.
5. He usually (write)in green ink.
6. She (go) away every week-end to sea-shore.
7. She (teach) me English.
8. He (go) to Kashmir last year.
9. My father (go) to Patna yesterday.
10. He (come) two years ago.
11. I (meet) him on Monday last.
12. She (miss) the train last night.
13. We (see) the film yesterday.
14. He (come) tomorrow.
15. I (go) next month.
16. Peter (buy) a car next year.
17. I shall help him if he (come) to me.
18. If he reads he (pass).
19. The teacher will help you if you (go) to him.
20. I will tell you the secret when you (reach) home.
21. I (stay) here until he answers me.
22. I (suffer) from fever for ten days.
23. He (live) here since Monday.
24. He (wait) here for an hour.
25. He (write) letters since breakfast.
26. She (learn) English for ten years.
27. Mr. Das (teach) in this college since 1960.
28. It (rain) for ten hours.
29. My father (be) ill for four days.
30. I (be) absent since Monday.
31. I (be) here for a year.
32. He (go)just out.

33. We (know) each other for years.
34. I (not see) him since morning.
35. He (write) a letter now.
36. Don't disturb him. He (worship).
37. The dog is (bark) at me.
38. He has (grow) old in my service.
39. She is (play) in the field.
40. Have you (write) the letter ?

EXERCISE 22

Direction : as in Ex. 3

1. He usually (sing) in his bath.
2. She habitually (come) late.
3. He (read) newspaper every morning.
4. He never (smoke).
5. Honesty (be) the best policy.
6. Who (discover) America ?
7. Newton (discover) the laws of gravitation.
8. I (not see) him for a long time.
9. My mother just (go) out.
10. He (come) here a month ago.
11. This boy never (see) the sea.
12. The patient (die) before the doctor came.
13. The crops (fail) before it rained.
14. He had slept before I (come).
15. They (live) here since Monday.
16. I (finish) the work just now.
17. I (leave) the place when he came.
18. The train (leave)before I reached the station.
19. When he heard the sad news, he (weep).
20. He has (sell) the old books.
21. I shall teach him if he (come).
22. Beat him if he (beat) you.
23. His father (die) yesterday.
24. I (forgive) the washerman if he returns my shirt.
25. He (leave) when I reached his house.
26. He (tear) the letter.
27. The sun (shine) when we went out.
28. She (sleep) when I went to her.
29. I saw him when I (wait) for a taxi.
30. He (eat) when he was shot dead.
31. I was playing when the bell (ring).

32. He (sit) in the garden when the tree fell down.
33. It (rain) this morning when I got up.
34. I came in while he (write).
35. When it (rain) she (carry) an umbrella.
36. When the war (begin) I was living in Delhi.
37. She (weep) when I saw her.
38. The train (leave) already.
39. By next Monday he (complete) the work.
40. He (finish) the work before you leave.

EXERCISE 23

Direction : as in Ex. 3

1. The Prime Minister (arrive) here next week.
2. I (go) to Delhi tomorrow.
3. While he played I (work).
4. I (buy) a car a month ago.
5. I (know) him for ten years.
6. I (be born) in London.
7. I wish I (be) a king.
8. If I were a king I (do) that.
9. I don't mind his (come) late.
10. He talks as if he (be) a king.
11. It is time we (start) playing.
12. It is high time we (return) home.
13. I am fond of(take) coffee.
14. The tiger was (shoot) dead.
15. He was seriously (beat).
16. The life of the girl (could not save).
17. The thief (arrest).
18. Hindi (speak) in Bihar.
19. He told me that he (go) home.
20. He asked me what my name(be).
21. She told me that she (can) do the work.
22. He speaks as one who (know).
23. He would succeed if he (try).
24. My father (be) eighty next month.
25. He will(have) to go home.
26. He (write) a book on the poetry of Tagore.
27. If I were a nightingale I (sing) day and night.
28. The college (reopen) in July every year.
29. He thought of (do) my work.
30. She (read) books when her husband is away.

31. I (finish) the work just now.
32. Don't worry, I (lend) you the money you need.
33. They (not find) him day before yesterday.
34. After you (go), I went to sleep.
35. When I last (see) him he was living in France.
36. I don't know who (bring) him up.
37. I was(wake) by my mother.
38. Don't (lie/lay) on the damp ground.
39. He hoped that he (have) not made a mistake.
40. If I were a king I (be) happy.

5. Non-Finites

रूप (form) के विचार से Verbs के दो भेद होते हैं—

(a) Finite Verb and

(b) Non-finite Verb

(a) Finite Verb : वह Verb जो वाक्य के Subject तथा Tense के अनुसार अपना रूप बदल लेता है, Finite Verb कहलाता है। जैसे—

I want to go.
He wants to go.
He wanted to go.
He is a doctor.
You are a doctor.
They were doctors.

इन वाक्यों में want, wants, wanted, is, are तथा were Finite Verbs हैं क्योंकि ये सभी Subject तथा Tense के अनुसार प्रयुक्त हुए हैं। इस प्रकार, Finite Verbs Subject तथा Tense से प्रभावित होकर सीमित (finite) हो जाते हैं।

(b) Non-finite Verb : वह Verb जो वाक्य के Subject तथा Tense के अनुसार अपना रूप नहीं बदल कर सदा एक रूप में रहता है, Non-finite Verb कहलाता है। जैसे—

I want **to go.**
He wants **to go.**
He wanted **to go.**

यहाँ 'to go' Non-finite Verb है क्योंकि यह Subject तथा Tense से अप्रभावित है। इस प्रकार, Non-finite Verbs Subject तथा Tense के द्वारा सीमित नहीं होते हैं।

Note : Non-finite Verb तथा Finite Verb में एक वड़ा अन्तर यह है कि जहाँ किसी वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Non-finite Verb का अपना कोई Subject नहीं होता है, वहीं Finite Verb का अपना एक Subject अवश्य होता है। जैसे—

He wants to go.

यहाँ 'wants' का Subject 'He' है, परन्तु 'to go' का अपना कोई Subject नहीं है। यह स्वयं एक Object के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है। अतः, इस वाक्य में wants Finite Verb है तथा to go Non-finite Verb.

Non-finite Verbs के तीन भेद होते हैं—

1. **Infinitive [to + Verb]**.
   to write, to play, to dance
2. **Gerund [Verb + ing]**
   writing, playing, dancing
3. **Participle**
   (a) Present Participle [Verb + ing]
   writing, playing, dancing
   (b) Past Participle
   written, spoken, broken
   (c) Perfect Participle
   having written, having played, having spoken

The Infinitive

Infinitive क्रिया का मूल रूप है। इसके शुरू में particle 'to' लगा रहता है, जैसे—to go, to eat, to laugh, etc. इसे Infinitive इसलिए कहते हैं कि Verb के इस रूप पर Subject के Number और Person का कोई प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है।

Kinds and Uses of the Infinitives :

वाक्य में प्रयोग के आधार पर Infinitives को दो भागों में बाँटा गया है—

(i) Simple Infinitives or Noun Infinitives तथा
(ii) Qualifying Infinitives or Gerundial Infinitives

(i) **Simple Infinitive :** जब Infinitive का प्रयोग Noun की तरह किया गया हो तब इसे Simple Infinitive कहते हैं। इस परिस्थिति में Noun की तरह इसका प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है—

(a) किसी Verb के Subject के रूप में; जैसे—

To walk is an exercise.
To err is human.
To forgive is divine.

(b) किसी Transitive Verb के Object के रूप में; जैसे—

Children like **to play**.
I want **to go** now.
I don't mean **to stay** here.

(c) किसी Verb के Complement के रूप में; जैसे—
It is yet **to decide**.
My desire is **to see** her again.
To see is **to believe**.

(d) किसी Preposition के Object के रूप में; जैसे—

He is about to die.

(ii) Qualifying Infinitive : जब Infinitive का प्रयोग किसी Noun, Adjective, Verb या Sentence को qualify करने के लिए किया गया हो तब इसे Qualifying Infinitive कहते हैं। इस परिस्थिति में इसका प्रयोग होता है—

(a) एक Adverb की तरह किसी Verb को qualify करने में; जैसे—

We eat to live.
I want to help my friend.
I come to bury Caesar.

स्पष्टतः यहाँ Infinitive से कार्य करने का उद्देश्य (purpose) का बोध होता है।

(b) एक Adverb की तरह किसी Adjective को qualify करने में; जैसे—

He is slow **to do his work.**
They are anxious **to learn.**
It is easy **to solve.**
This medicine is pleasant **to take.**

(c) एक Adjective की तरह किसी Noun को qualify करने में; जैसे—

I have no house **to live in.**
This is not the time **to repent.**
I like milk **to drink.**

(d) किसी sentence को qualify करने में; जैसे—

To tell you the truth, I have never loved her.
To be honest, I am not going to help you.

Bare Infinitives

प्रायः ऐसा समझा जाता है कि बिना 'to' के Infinitive का निर्माण नहीं हो सकता है। परन्तु बात एकदम ऐसी नहीं है। कुछ Verbs ऐसे हैं जिनके बाद Infinitives without to का प्रयोग होता है। ऐसे Infinitives without to को **Bare Infinitives** कहते हैं। इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें—

He made him **laugh.**
He did not let me **go.**
I heard him **cry.**
He bade me **go.**
You need not **ask.**

यहाँ ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त laugh, go, cry तथा ask ऐसे Infinitives हैं जिनके पहले to प्रयुक्त नहीं हैं। स्पष्टतः इन्हें यहाँ प्रयोग के हिसाब से Bare Infinitives कहेंगे।

Bare Infinitives का प्रयोग :

1. can, could, may, might, shall, will, should, would, must, need तथा dare Modal Auxiliaries के साथ Bare Infinitives का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I can **go.**
He may **do** this.
I shall **help** her.
She need not **go** there.
No one dare **oppose** him.

Note : जब need तथा dare का प्रयोग Modal Auxiliaries के रूप में न होकर Ordinary Verbs की तरह हो तब इनके बाद Full Infinitives प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे—

Who dares **to go** there ?
I don't need **to ask** for help.

2. feel, hear, see, watch, let तथा make के बाद Bare Infinitives का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I felt the earth **shake.**	[not, to shake]
I heard him **cry.**	[not, to cry]
I saw him **sleep.**	[not, to sleep]
I watched him **drive off.**	[not, to drive off]
Let him **do** this.	[not, to do]
He made me **weep.**	[not, to weep]

Note : जब see, hear तथा make का प्रयोग Passive Voice में होता है तब Full Infinitives का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He was seen **to enter** the office.
They were heard **to say** so.
He was made **to laugh.**

3. had better, had rather, would rather, sooner than, rather than, etc के बाद Bare Infinitives का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

You had better **ask** permission.
I had rather **stay** than depart.
I would rather **die** than suffer so.
I would sooner **die** than tell a lie.

4. But के बाद इस प्रकार के प्रयोग में Bare Infinitives का प्रयोग होता है । जैसे—

He does nothing but **play.**
My dog does everything but **speak.**
There is nothing to do but **wait.**

5. Help के बाद Bare Infinitive तथा Full Infinitive दोनों में से किसी एक का प्रयोग हो सकता है । जैसे—

He helped me **lift** the box.

He helped me **to lift** the box.

The Gerund

जब Verb + ing का प्रयोग Noun की तरह हो तब उसे Gerund कहा जाता है । इन वाक्यों में मोटे अक्षरों में छपे शब्द Gerunds हैं—

Walking is an exercise.
I like **reading** stories.
He is fond of **playing** cards.

Note : Gerund एक प्रकार का Noun है परन्तु अनेक परिस्थितियों में इसमें Noun तथा Verb दोनों के लक्षण रहते हैं । इसे समझने के लिए इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें—

(a) I like **reading** stories—यहाँ reading एक Gerund है । चूँकि यह Transitive Verb like का object है, अतः इसे Noun कहेंगे । पुनः stories इसका object है, अतः इसे Verb कहेंगे ।

(b) He began **walking** slowly—यहाँ walking एक Gerund है । Noun के रूप में यह Verb began का object है तथा Verb के रूप में adverb (slowly) इसको modify कर रहा है ।

Uses of the Gerund : Noun की तरह Gerund का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित रूप में किया जाता है—

(a) किसी Verb के Subject के रूप में—

Walking is an exercise.
Singing is my hobby.
Quarrelling kills peace.
Living on alms is not better than death.

(b) किसी Verb के Object के रूप में—

He enjoys **flying** kites.
I like **reading** stories.
He hates **lying.**
Stop **crying.**

(c) किसी Preposition के Object के रूप में—

He is fond of **hunting.**
I am tired of **waiting.**
I look forward to **seeing you again.**
He prevented me from **playing.**

(d) किसी Verb के Complement के रूप में—

Seeing is **believing.**
My hobby is **dancing.**
What I don't like is **smoking.**

Note : Infinitive तथा Gerund दोनों में Noun तथा Verb के लक्षण हैं। अतः अनेक वाक्यों में एक का प्रयोग दूसरे के स्थान पर हो सकता है। जैसे—

(a) To walk is an exercise.
Walking is an exercise.

(b) To see is to believe.
Seeing is believing.

(c) Teach me to dance.
Teach me dancing.

परन्तु, अनेक वाक्य ऐसे भी हैं जहाँ एक का प्रयोग दूसरे के स्थान पर नहीं हो सकता है, जैसे—

Do not stop **writing.** [not, to write]
I want **to go** there. [not, going]

Special Note 1. : जब किसी Verb को Preposition के तुरन्त बाद प्रयुक्त करना हो तो वहाँ अभीष्ट Verb का Gerund form ही प्रयुक्त होगा, जैसे—

I look forward **to seeing** you again.
I have no objection **to your living** here.
He is good **at diving.**
He is fond **of playing** cricket.
They are tired **of working.**
I am sorry **for keeping** you late.
He is not interested **in making** money.
He is thinking **of going** abroad.

Special Note 2. : निम्नांकित Verb + Preposition तथा Adjective + Preposition के बाद Gerund आता है न कि Infinitive—

abstain from, aim at, addicted to, bent on, confident of, desirous of, disqualified from, excel in, excuse for, hopeful of, insist on, persist in, prevent from, think of, go on, keep on, look forward to, refrain from, succeed in, tired of, take to, etc

इसी प्रकार इन शब्दों के बाद Gerund आता है न कि Infinitive—

avoid, enjoy, excuse, mind, hate, worth, it is no use, it is no good, can't help, etc

Examples :

I am confident of **winning.**

He prevented me from **doing it.**

I am desirous of **going abroad.**

He went on **laughing.**

He is addicted to **drinking.**

I am looking forward to **seeing you again.**

You must avoid **drinking.**

It is no use **crying** now.

I don't mind **waiting** him.

We could not help **laughing.**

ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में Gerund के बदले Infinitive का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता है ।

Special Note 3. : Gerund के पहले आनेवाला Noun/Pronoun को Objective Case या Possessive Case में रखा जा सकता है, परन्तु Possessive Case का प्रयोग करना ज्यादा अच्छा रहेगा—

He insisted on me/my reading it.

Special Note 4. : आपने देखा है कि अनेक परिस्थितियों में Gerund के बदले Infinitive तथा Infinitive के बदले Gerund का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता । इसके प्रयोग को ठीक से समझने के लिए इस chapter के अंत में बहुत सारे solved examples तथा exercises दिए गए हैं । आप उनका सावधानी से अध्ययन करें ।

The Participle

Participles तीन प्रकार के होते हैं—

(a) **Present Participle [Verb + ing], जैसे—**
playing, eating, laughing, etc

(b) **Past Participle [Verb + d/ed या अन्य उपयुक्त रूप], जैसे—**
played, eaten, laughed, gone, etc

(c) **Perfect Participle [having + past participle], जैसे—**
having played, having reached, having seen, etc

Uses of the Participles :

1. Present Participles की मदद से Progressive Tenses तथा Past Participles की मदद से Perfect Tenses बनाए जाते हैं । जैसे—

He is **playing.**
They were **dancing.**
I have **eaten.**
He will have **reached.**

2. जब एक ही Subject के द्वारा दो कार्य एक साथ किए जाएँ या एक कार्य दूसरे कार्य के तुरन्त बाद किए जाएँ, तब वाक्य में प्रथम कार्य व्यापार के लिए Present Participle का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

(a) He jumped up. He ran away.
= **Jumping up** he ran away.

(b) He opened the box and took out the watch.
= **Opening** the box he took out the watch.

(c) We saw the lion and ran away.
= **Seeing** the lion we ran away.

जब एक ही Subject के द्वारा दो कार्य इस प्रकार किए जाएँ कि एक के बिल्कुल पूरा होने पर दूसरा सम्पन्न हो तब वाक्य में प्रथम कार्य व्यापार के लिए Perfect Participle का प्रयोग होता है । जैसे—

(a) He did his job. He left the office.
= **Having done** his job, he left the office.

(b) He worked hard. He felt tired.
= **Having worked** hard he felt tired.

3. Present Participles तथा Past Participles का प्रयोग सामान्य Adjectives की तरह भी होता है और इस स्थिति में ये अपने बाद आने वाले Nouns को modify करते हैं, जैसे—

A **rolling** stone gathers no mass.
The child has a **smiling** face.
He is an **amusing** person.
He played a **losing** game.
He is a **drunken** person.
A **burnt** child dreads the fire.
This is a **boiled** egg.

Note : Participles का जब इस प्रकार सामान्य Adjectives की तरह प्रयोग होता है तब Past Participle Passive in meaning तथा Present Participle Active in meaning होता है, जैसे—

a burnt child = a child who is burnt
a rolling stone = a stone which rolls

4. [illegible] Noun या Pronoun को qualify करने के लिए Participles का [illegible] Predicatively तथा Absolutely भी होता है। अगर Rule-3 [illegible] Attributively है।

[illegible] Predicatively; as,

[illegible] seems worried. (modifying the subject)
[illegible] seems contented. (modifying the subject)
[illegible] kept me waiting. (modifying the object)

[illegible] Absolutely with a Noun or Pronoun going before; as,

The sun having risen, the birds began to fly.
The weather being hot, I did not go out.

[illegible] Participles का प्रयोग Verb–Adjective के रूप में भी हो सकता [illegible] Verb तथा Adjective दोनों के [illegible] [illegible] अगर इसका प्रयोग वाक्य के शुरू में हुआ तब यह वाक्य के Subject [illegible] Adjective के रूप में modify करेगा तथा एक Verb के [illegible] Object लेगा। अगर इसका प्रयोग main sentence के [illegible] अपने पहले आने वाले Noun को एक Adjective के रूप में modify करेगा तथा अपने बाद Verb के रूप में एक Object लेगा। इस तथ्य को इन उदाहरणों से समझें—

(a) The boy who heard the noise woke up.
= Hearing the noise, the boy woke up.

यहाँ दोनों वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखने पर यह स्पष्ट होता है कि Participle 'hearing' एक Adjective के रूप [illegible] Subject 'the boy' को modify कर रहा है तथा एक V[illegible] 'the noise' as an object ले रहा है। अतः [illegible] function एक Verb-Adjective के रूप में है।

(b) We saw a labo[illegible] basket on his head.
= We saw a [illegible] on his head.

यहाँ भी Part[illegible] आने वाले शब्द 'labourer' को [illegible] 'a basket' ले रहा है। [illegible] Adjective के रूप में [illegible]

6[illegible]

Te[illegible]

I saw him **reading** novels. (modifying him)
We saw him **swimming.** (modifying him)
He kept me **waiting.** (modifying me)
Alarmed by the noise, he rang up the police. (modifying he)
These are the windows **charmed** with magic. (modifying windows)
Having learnt that she was ill, I rushed to hospital. (modifying I)
The sun **having risen,** the birds began to fly. (modifying the sun)

Note : Gerund तथा Present Participle दोनों का एक ही रूप है— Verb + ing. इसलिए कभी-कभी विद्यार्थी भ्रम में पड़ जाते हैं कि वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Verb + ing का प्रयोग Gerund के रूप में हुआ है या Present Participle के रूप में। ऐसी स्थिति में आप इसके प्रयोग को देखें। अगर Verb + ing का प्रयोग एक Noun के रूप में हुआ है तब इसे Gerund कहेंगे। अगर Verb + ing का प्रयोग Continuous Tense बनाने में या एक Adjective के रूप में हुआ है तब इसे Participle कहेंगे। जैसे—

My hobby is dancing. (dancing=Noun=Gerund)
I am dancing. (dancing=Verb=Participle)
He is my dancing partner. (dancing=Adjective=Participle)

Wrong Use of Participles

चूँकि Participles एक Verb-Adjective है, अतः वाक्य में उस Noun या Pronoun का स्पष्ट उल्लेख रहना चाहिए जिसको इसे modify करना है; जैसे—

Walking through the park, the sun was very hot.

अब इस वाक्य को पढ़ने से ऐसा लगता है कि sun ही पार्क में टहल रहा था; क्योंकि यहाँ Participle walking जिस Noun/Pronoun को refer करना चाहता है उसका लोप है। अतः यह वाक्य अशुद्ध हुआ। इसका सही रूप होगा—

Walking through the park, I found the sun very hot.

इसी प्रकार, इन वाक्यों को देखें जिनमें उचित Noun/Pronoun का अभाव है—

1. **Being a rainy day, the schools were closed.** —Incorrect
   It being a rainy day, the schools were closed. —Correct
2. **Climbing up the hill, a temple was seen by him.** —Incorrect
   Climbing up the hill, I saw a temple. —Correct

Note : कुछ ऐसे भी constructions हैं जिनमें बिना उचित Noun/ Pronoun के Participle का प्रयोग होता है। इस स्थिति में Participle को Impersonal Absolute कहा जाता है। इन वाक्यों को देखें जो शुद्ध हैं—

4. Noun या Pronoun को qualify करने के लिए Participles का प्रयोग Predicatively तथा Absolutely भी होता है । ऊपर Rule–3 में जो Adjective की तरह इसका प्रयोग बतलाया गया है वह Attributively है ।

Predicatively; as,

He seems **worried.** (modifying the subject)
He seems **contented.** (modifying the subject)
You kept me **waiting.** (modifying the object)

Absolutely with a Noun or Pronoun going before; as,

The sun **having risen**, the birds began to fly.
The weather **being hot**, I did not go out.

5. किसी Participle का प्रयोग Verb–Adjective के रूप में भी हो सकता है जहाँ इसमें एक ही साथ Verb तथा Adjective दोनों के लक्षण मौजूद रह सकते हैं । इस स्थिति में अगर इसका प्रयोग वाक्य के शुरू में हुआ तब यह वाक्य के Subject को एक Adjective के रूप में modify करेगा तथा एक Verb के रूप में अपने तुरंत बाद एक Object लेगा । अगर इसका प्रयोग main sentence के बाद हुआ तब यह ठीक अपने पहले आने वाले Noun को एक Adjective के रूप में modify करेगा तथा अपने बाद Verb के रूप में एक Object लेगा । इस तथ्य को इन उदाहरणों से समझें—

(a) The boy who heard the noise woke up.
= **Hearing** the noise, the boy woke up.

यहाँ दोनों वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखने पर यह स्पष्ट होता है कि Participle 'hearing' एक Adjective के रूप में वाक्य के Subject 'the boy' को modify कर रहा है तथा एक Verb के रूप में अपने बाद 'the noise' as an object ले रहा है । अतः यहाँ Participle का function एक Verb-Adjective के रूप में है ।

(b) We saw a labourer who was carrying a basket on his head.
= We saw a labourer, **carrying** a basket on his head.

यहाँ भी Participle 'carrying' अपने ठीक पहले आने वाले शब्द 'labourer' को modify कर रहा है तथा अपने बाद एक object 'a basket' ले रहा है । निश्चित ही यहाँ Participle का function एक Verb–Adjective के रूप में है ।

6. वाक्य में Participles का प्रयोग अनेक प्रकार से हो सकता है । परन्तु, Tense/Voice formation को छोड़कर अन्य सभी स्थितियों में यह वाक्य में प्रयुक्त किसी Noun या Pronoun को अवश्य modify करेगा ।

इन वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त Participles को देखें जिन्हें मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित किया गया है—

I saw him **reading** novels. (modifying him)
We saw him **swimming.** (modifying him)
He kept me **waiting.** (modifying me)
Alarmed by the noise, he rang up the police. (modifying he)
These are the windows **charmed** with magic. (modifying windows)
Having learnt that she was ill, I rushed to hospital. (modifying I)
The sun **having risen,** the birds began to fly. (modifying the sun)

Note : Gerund तथा Present Participle दोनों का एक ही रूप है—Verb + ing. इसलिए कभी-कभी विद्यार्थी भ्रम में पड़ जाते हैं कि वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Verb + ing का प्रयोग Gerund के रूप में हुआ है या Present Participle के रूप में। ऐसी स्थिति में आप इसके प्रयोग को देखें। अगर Verb + ing का प्रयोग एक Noun के रूप में हुआ है तब इसे Gerund कहेंगे । अगर Verb + ing का प्रयोग Continuous Tense बनाने में या एक Adjective के रूप में हुआ है तब इसे Participle कहेंगे । जैसे—

My hobby is dancing. (dancing=Noun=Gerund)
I am dancing. (dancing=Verb=Participle)
He is my dancing partner. (dancing=Adjective=Participle)

Wrong Use of Participles

चूँकि Participles एक Verb-Adjective है, अतः वाक्य में उस Noun या Pronoun का स्पष्ट उल्लेख रहना चाहिए जिसको इसे modify करना है; जैसे—

Walking through the park, the sun was very hot.

अब इस वाक्य को पढ़ने से ऐसा लगता है कि sun ही पार्क में टहल रहा था; क्योंकि यहाँ Participle walking जिस Noun/Pronoun को refer करना चाहता है उसका लोप है । अतः यह वाक्य अशुद्ध हुआ । इसका सही रूप होगा—

Walking through the park, I found the sun very hot.

इसी प्रकार, इन वाक्यों को देखें जिनमें उचित Noun/Pronoun का अभाव है—

1. **Being a rainy day, the schools were closed. —Incorrect**
   It being a rainy day, the schools were closed. —Correct
2. **Climbing up the hill, a temple was seen by him. —Incorrect**
   Climbing up the hill, I saw a temple. —Correct

Note : कुछ ऐसे भी constructions हैं जिनमें बिना उचित Noun/Pronoun के Participle का प्रयोग होता है । इस स्थिति में Participle को Impersonal Absolute कहा जाता है । इन वाक्यों को देखें जो शुद्ध हैं—

Considering all points, he was quite right.
Roughly speaking, there were sixty persons there.

यहाँ Participle जिस Noun/Pronoun को refer करना चाहता है वह indefinite है जिसका उल्लेख करना आवश्यक नहीं है ।

Exercises Worked Out

(i) Fill in the blanks with infinitives with or without to :

1. They promised ...... me. (help)
2. He appears ...... a good man. (be)
3. I am glad ...... you. (meet)
4. He used ...... there. (live)
5. I want ...... to Patna. (go)
6. ...... is pleasant. (play)
7. Have you any questions ...... (ask) ?
8. It is difficult to make her ...... (understand).
9. He made her ...... (laugh).
10. He is about ...... (die).
11. It is easy ...... (solve).
12. You need not ...... there. (go)
13. I saw him ...... (sleep).
14. You had better ...... here. (stay)
15. She heard the baby ...... (cry).

Answers : 1. to help, 2. to be, 3. to meet, 4. to live, 5. to go, 6. to play, 7. to ask, 8. understand, 9. laugh, 10. to die, 11. to solve, 12. go, 13. sleep, 14. stay, 15. cry.

(ii) Rewrite the following sentences using the infinitives :

1. Swimming is not very easy.
2. Writing a good letter is difficult.
3. Seeing is believing.
4. Saying is easy but doing is difficult.
5. It will be bad if you waste your time.
6. I am so tired that I cannot run.
7. She hopes that she will succeed.
8. Give me a book which I should read.
9. I shall succeed and I am sure of it.
10. Everyone wishes that he might enjoy life.
11. He has come to Delhi so that he might see the places worth seeing.
12. I shall be delighted if I join you.
13. I hope that I shall meet you next week.
14. I was sorry when I heard the news of his death.
15. It seems that it is impossible.
16. They say that she is very rich.

Answers :

1. To swim is not very easy.
2. To write a good letter is difficult.
3. To see is to believe.
4. To say is easy but to do is difficult.
5. It will be bad to waste your time.
6. I am too tired to run.
7. She hopes to succeed.
8. Give me a book to read.
9. I am sure to succeed.
10. Everyone wishes to enjoy life.
11. He has come to Delhi to see places worth-seeing.
12. I shall be delighted to join you.
13. I hope to meet you next week.
14. I was sorry to hear the news of his death.
15. It seems to be impossible.
16. She is said to be very rich.

(iii) Combine the following sentences by using an infinitive :

1. I speak the truth. I am not afraid of it.
2. I have a lot of work. I have to do it.
3. He works hard. He wants to pass the examination.
4. The man was serious. He wanted to know the fact.
5. I had to drink. I wanted water.

Answers :

1. I am not afraid to speak the truth.
2. I have a lot of work to do.
3. He works hard to pass the examination.
4. The man was serious to know the fact.
5. I wanted water to drink.

(iv) Complete the following sentences by using appropriate infinitives :

1. He went to the hospital ......
2. She is anxious ......
3. It is everyone's duty ......
4. He worked hard ......
5. The teacher made the boys ......
6. It is not easy ...... her ......

Answers :

1. He went to the hospital to see his friend.
2. She is anxious to meet her father.
3. It is everyone's duty to follow rules.
4. He worked hard to pass the examination.

5. The teacher made the boys stand up.
6. It is not easy to make her understand.

(v) *Write a sentence on each of the following patterns :*

1. Noun + Verb + Infinitive
2. Noun + Verb + Pronoun+ Infinitive
3. Infinitive + Verb + Infinitive
4. Subject + Verb + Infinitive + Noun
5. Subject + Verb + Pronoun + Infinitive + Adverb

Answers :

1. Ram wants to go.
2. He ordered me to go.
3. To see is to believe.
4. I want to help Ram.
5. I ordered him to stay there.

(vi) *Correct the following sentences in respect of the infinitives wrongly used in them :*

1. I heard someone closing the door.
2. It is a pleasure meeting you.
3. I order you to let him to work here.
4. He made me to laugh.
5. Smoke is a bad habit.
6. He decided going home.
7. He likes playing football.

Answers :

1. I heard someone close the door.
2. It is a pleasure to meet you.
3. I order you to let him work here.
4. He made me laugh.
5. To smoke is a bad habit.
6. He decided to go home.
7. He likes to play football.

EXERCISE 24

A. *Rewrite the following sentences filling in the blanks with infinitives with or without to :*

1. ...... on the footpath is safe. (walk)
2. This is not the time .... (repent)
3. He promised ...... me. (help)
4. Give me a pen ...... with. (write)
5. He wants ...... an engineer. (be)
6. What are you going ...... (do)

7. You ought ...... your elders. (respect)
8. What made you ...... ? (laugh)
9. They must ...... you a telegram. (send)
10. Here is a chair ...... on. (sit)
11. Let him ...... this work. (do)
12. They dare not ...... me. (oppose)
13. I cannot dare ...... there. (go)
14. You had better ...... a new course. (take)
15. I would rather die than ... . (beg)
16. I heard him .... (cry)
17. I saw him ...... it. (do)
18. I will not let you .... (die)
19. He does nothing but .... (play)
20. He was made .... (laugh)
21. I felt the earth .... (shake)
22. There is nothing to do but .... (wait)
23. He helped me ...... the car. (push)
24. You need not ...... anything. (say)
25. You don't need ...... anything. (say)

B. Rewrite the following sentences using the infinitives :

1. Walking is an exercise.
2. Finding fault is easy.
3. Earning money is not easy.
4. Seeing is believing.
5. Saying is easy but doing is difficult.
6. He is so weak that he cannot fight.
7. Praising all alike is praising none.
8. She promised that she would help me.
9. I was surprised when I heard the news.
10. We expect that we shall win the match.
11. I hope I shall meet you again.
12. I worked hard that I might win scholarship.
13. The chairman was the first man who arrived at the meeting.
14. They say that he is very rich.
15. The conductor stood at the gate, so that he might check the tickets.
16. It seems that he is a thief.
17. He was sorry when he heard the sad news.
18. Do you understand what you have to do ?
19. She was told that she must not dirty her frock.
20. They were delighted when they learned of the arrival of their headman.

C. *Combine the following sentences by using an infinitive :*

1. He took out the knife. His object was to stab the passerby.
2. He works hard. He wants to earn his living.
3. She visits the poor. It is in this way that she can help them.
4. Give me a pen. I have to write with.
5. He will succeed. He hopes so.
6. He sent me to a village. He wanted me to live there.
7. I am saving money. I want to buy a car.
8. I am learning English. I want to read Shakespeare.
9. I am buying paint. I want to paint my box.
10. She has a box. She plans to put his savings in it.

D. *Complete the following sentences by using appropriate infinitives :*

1. They refused........................
2. I don't want........................
3. Is this the chair .... ?
4. He made us........................
5. He went to market.....................
6. She is very eager.....................
7. I am too young........................
8. You had better die than...............
9. She could hardly.....................
10. You had rather die than..............
11. I heard him..........................
12. He was seen...........................
13. Why did the teacher make the boys...............
14. It is very gracious of you.............................
15. Is this the house.................?

E. *Write a sentence on each of the following patterns :*

1. Noun + Verb + Infinitive
2. Noun + Verb + Pronoun + Infinitive
3. Infinitive + Verb + Adjective
4. Infinitive + Verb + Infinitive
5. Subject + Verb + Infinitive + Noun
6. Subject + Verb + Pronoun + Infinitve + Adverb
7. It + Verb + Adjective + Infinitive
8. Noun + Verb + Preposition + Infinitive
9. Pronoun + Verb + Infinitive + Object
10. There + Verb + Nothing + Infinitive

F. Correct the following sentences in respect of the infinitives wrongly used in them :

1. He made me to do it.
2. I heard him to say so.
3. You had better to read this book.
4. He does nothing but to play.
5. He is rich enough for buying a car.
6. He did not let me to go.
7. He need not to go there.
8. How dare you to touch me ?
9. I watched him to drive off.
10. It is a pleasure meeting such a cheerful person.

Exercises Worked Out

(i) Put the verbs in brackets into the gerund :

1. (Swim) is an exercise.
2. I hate (borrow) money.
3. You must give up (smoke).
4. (See) is (believe).
5. I don't enjoy (travel) by bus.
6. He was punished for (disobey) his teacher.
7. You should try to avoid (drink).
8. I prefer (read) to (write).
9. It is no use (wait).
10. I am looking forward to (see) you.
11. Stop (shout) and start (work).
12. They don't allow (smoke) here.
13. I don't feel like (work).
14. Please go on (write).
15. After (read) the article I gave up (smoke).

Answers : 1. swimming, 2. borrowing, 3. smoking, 4. seeing, believing, 5. travelling, 6. disobeying, 7. drinking, 8. reading, writing, 9. waiting, 10. seeing, 11. shouting, working, 12. smoking, 13. working, 14. writing, 15. reading, smoking.

(ii) Rewrite the following sentences using the gerund :

1. To walk is a healthy exercise.
2. To tell a lie is easier than to speak the truth.
3. To please everybody is to please nobody.
4. It is not easy to swim.
5. It is easier to ask questions than to answer them.

Answers :

1. Walking is a healthy exercise.
2. Telling a lie is easier than speaking the truth.
3. Pleasing everybody is pleasing nobody.
4. Swimming is not easy.
5. Asking questions is easier than answering them.

(iii) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form (gerund or infinitive) :

1. The doctor advised me (give up) (smoke).
2. I wish (see) her.
3. Would you mind (shut) the window ?
4. I advise you (start) (look) for a flat at once.
5. I have begun (chew) betels for a week.
6. I am afraid of (violet) the rules.
7. It means (invite) trouble.
8. You should try (understand) the situation.
9. They enjoy (swim) in the river.
10. Gandhi insisted on (do) things honestly.
11. What did he want (do) ?
12. Who is responsible for (break) this chair ?
13. We can not live without (eat).
14. I am happy (see) you.
15. He stopped (talk).

Answers :

1. The doctor advised me to give up smoking.
2. I wish to see her.
3. Would you mind shutting the window ?
4. I advise you to start looking for a flat at once.
5. I have begun chewing betels for a week.
6. I am afraid of violating the rules.
7. It means inviting trouble.
8. You should try to understand the situation.
9. They enjoy swimming in the river.
10. Gandhi insisted on doing things honestly.
11. What did he want to do ?
12. Who is responsible for breaking this chair ?
13. We can not live without eating.
14. I am happy to see you.
15. He stopped talking.

(iv) Correct the following sentences in respect of the gerunds and other connected words :

1. I don't mind they coming late.

2. I am looking forward to see you again.
3. Stop to play now.
4. I could not remember to post the letter.
5. Would you mind to open the door.
6. There is no harm to go there.
7. It is no use to ask him to stay.
8. I can't help to laugh.
9. I don't enjoy to go to the theatre.
10. He prefers walk to run.
11. I like to ride.

Answers :

1. I don't mind their coming late.
2. I am looking forward to seeing you again.
3. Stop playing now.
4. I could not remember posting the letter.
5. Would you mind opening the door.
6. There is no harm in going there.
7. It is no use asking him to stay.
8. I can't help laughing.
9. I don't enjoy going to the theatre.
10. He prefers walking to running.
11. I like riding.

(v) *Complete the following sentences, by adding a construction with a gerund :*

1. I am tired....................
2. Would you mind..............
3. They don't allow..............
4. He hates.......................
5. There is no danger of the wall....................

Answers :

1. I am tired of working.
2. Would you mind closing the gate ?
3. They don't allow smoking in here.
4. He hates waiting.
5. There is no danger of the wall falling down.

EXERCISE 25

A. *Rewrite the sentences putting the verbs in brackets into the gerund :*

1. (Read) makes a man perfect.
2. You must give up (gamble).

3. I am fond of (play) cricket.
4. Stop (argue) and start (work).
5. Students must avoid (smoke).
6. Good persons hate (quarrel).
7. I prefer (read) to (write).
8. Do you enjoy (travel) by bus ?
9. I am tired of (do) this work.
10. Children love (play).
11. (Use) unfair means at the examination is not desirable.
12. Sohan was punished for (disobey) his teacher.
13. I like Indian ways of (live).
14. I like (read) Shakespeare.
15. What I most detest is (smoke).
16. (Hunt) tigers was a favourite game in our country.
17. (Praise) all alike is (praise) none.
18. They insist on my (start) at once.
19. There is no fear of the train (come) late.
20. I think of (go) there.
21. He could not help (cry).
22. You can make fire by (rub) two sticks together.
23. There is no danger of the wall (fall) down.
24. I began (read) a novel yesterday.
25. Do you mind (wait) a little here ?
26. Thank you for (help) us.
27. Do you enjoy (read) novels ?
28. It has stopped (rain).
29. I hate(borrow).
30. I am against (sing) aloud.
31. It is no use (cry) over spilt milk.
32. He finished (speak) and sat down.
33. I am looking forward to (read) your novels.
34. I am thinking of (leave) this job and (go) abroad.
35. She was fined for (drive) without lights.
36. It is not worth (buy).
37. Who enjoys (go) to the doctor ?
38. Would you mind (move) a little ?
39. I don't feel like (work).
40. Imagine (live) with someone who never stops (talk).
41. I love (eat) oranges, but I dislike (peel) them.
42. I didn't mind their (come) late.
43. I can't understand his (be) in love with a bad-tempered girl like Mary.
44. I solicit the favour of your (grant) me a week's leave.
45. He will not object to my (live) here.

B. Rewrite the following sentences using a gerund :

1. To do something is better than to do nothing.
2. To see is to believe.
3. It is improper to laugh at the blind.
4. It is bad to eat much.
5. To swim is an exercise.

EXERCISE 26

A. Rewrite the following sentences putting the verbs in brackets into the correct form (gerund or infinitive) :

1. He warned me (not touch) the wire.
2. I can't understand her (behave) like this.
3. I don't allow my son (smoke) at all.
4. I don't allow (smoke) in my study room.
5. Please go on (write); I don't mind (wait).
6. Would you mind (lend) me fifty rupees.
7. Try (forget) it; it is not worth (worry) about.
8. I am very sorry for (be) late.
9. I am looking forward to (see) you.
10. He made me (do) it again.
11. Let him (go) early as he wanted (meet) his mother.
12. He told me (try) (come) early.
13. Children prefer (play) to (read).
14. Try (avoid) (be) late.
15. He hates (answer) the phone.
16. I don't enjoy (read) classic novels.
17. Stop (quarrel) and start (read).
18. He is said (be) the best doctor in the town.
19. I had better (stay) here.
20. He felt somebody (touch) his pocket.
21. He was made (give up) (smoke).
22. He is fond of (dance).
23. I had never an opportunity of (meet) you.
24. We saw him (sit) in the park.
25. I am afraid of (violate) the rules.
26. There was no opportunity (ask) questions.
27. He went (see) his father.
28. I am used to (stand) in queues.
29. Do what you (like) (do).
30. I expect you (be) here by 11 o'clock.
31. We can't live without (eat).
32. I heard somsone (close) the gate.

33. He suggested (wait) till dawn.
34. Who is responsible for (break) the window glass ?
35. I don't like her (read) my letters.

C. *Correct the following sentences in respect of the gerunds and other connected words :*

1. We are looking forward to welcome you next week.
2. I don't mind Ram coming late.
3. Would you mind to wait a little here.
4. He is afraid to go out of his house.
5. It is no use to criticise a villain.
6. Try to avoid to travel by bus.
7. He went on to talk about his accident.
8. We intend to see the Red Fort.
9. I forbade him from going.
10. He does nothing but to play.
11. I am fond to play cricket.
12. He thinks to go to Delhi.
13. I enjoy to read Shakespeare.
14. They insisted on me starting at once.
15. I have no object to hear your story again.

D. *Complete the following sentences by adding a construction with a gerund :*

1. Would you mind....................
2. I could not help....................
3. I hate................................
4. Try to avoid........................
5. It is no use..........................
6. I am looking forward to..............

EXERCISES WORKED OUT

(i) *Rewrite the following sentences, using the participle construction :*

1. The boy heard the noise and woke up.
2. As the weather was warm, I took off my coat.
3. He opened the drawer and took out his revolver.
4. I went to the Principal and submitted my application.
5. The hunter took careful aim and shot the tiger.
6. He turned to the left and entered a cave.
7. I was encouraged by my success and made further efforts.
8. We were charmed with the scenery and decided to prolong our way.

Answers :

1. Hearing the noise the boy woke up.
2. The weather being warm, I took off my coat.
3. Opening the drawer he took out his revolver.
4. Going to the Principal, I submitted my application.
5. Taking careful aim, the hunter shot the tiger.
6. Turning to the left he entered a cave.
7. (Being) encouraged by my success, I made further efforts.
8. (Being) charmed with the scenery we decided to prolong our way.

(ii) Join the following pairs of sentences by using participles :

1. We drove along the road. We saw many beautiful buildings.
2. I turned on the light. I was astonished at what I saw.
3. The magician took pity on the mouse. He turned it into a cat.
4. I was tired of waiting and decided to stop working.
5. The stable door was open. The horse was stolen.
6. She was deserted by her husband. She died of a broken heart.
7. He had finished eating. He stood up to make a speech.
8. I received permission from my father. I went to Bombay.

Answers :

1. Driving along the road, we saw many beautiful buildings.
2. Turning on the light I was astonished at what I saw.
3. Taking pity on the mouse, the magician turned it into a cat.
4. Being tired of waiting I decided to stop working.
5. The stable door being open, the horse was stolen.
6. (Being) deserted by her husband, she died of a broken heart.
7. Having finished eating he stood up to make a speech.
8. Having received permission from my father I went to Bombay.

(iii) Fill in the blanks with participles :

1. My neighbour is an......................person.
2. This is a ....egg.
3. The police found the................articles.
4. A..............child dreads the fire.
5. It is a..............issue.
6. Don't jump off the.................train.

7. Gandhijee loved all..............creatures.
8. He kept me......................
9. He seems........................
10. .... a noise, I woke up.

Answers : 1. amusing, 2. boiled, 3. stolen, 4. burnt, 5. burning, 6. running, 7. living, 8. waiting, 9. worried, 10. hearing.

(iv) Correct the following sentences in respect of participles and other connected words :

1. Being a very hot day, I did not go out.
2. Sleeping on the bed, a mouse ran over the child.
3. Climbing up the hill, a temple was seen by him.
4. Arriving late, the show had already begun.
5. Entering the room the papers were lying all scattered about.
6. Sitting on the gate, a scorpion stung him.
7. Entering the room, the darkness faced him.
8. Going round the corner, a horrible sight was seen.

Answers :

1. It being a very hot day, I did not go out.
2. Sleeping on the bed, the child was run over by a mouse.
3. Climbing up the hill, he saw a temple.
4. Arriving late, he found that the show had already begun.
5. Entering the room I found the papers all lying scattered about.
6. Sitting on the gate he was stung by a scorpion.
7. Entering the room he faced the darkness.
8. Going round the corner, I saw a horrible sight.

Exercise 27

A. Rewrite the following sentences, using the participle construction.

Examples :

(a) The thief saw the policeman and ran away.
Ans. Seeing the police man the thief ran away.

(b) As the weather was warm, I took off my coat.
Ans. The weather being warm, I took off my coat.

(c) He was dissatisfied with the job and resigned it.
Ans. (Being) dissatisfied with the job he resigned it.

1. The man heard the noise and woke up.
2. I walked up to the front door and rang the bell.
3. He opened the drawer and took out a revolver.
4. The hunter took up his gun and shot the tiger.
5. As the day was very hot we decided to stay there.

6. The play was very popular, so it was difficult to get tickets.
7. When he returned home, he found the child missing.
8. He loudly knocked at the gate and demanded admission.
9. As I thought it was quite cheap, I bought it.
10. As I did not know the way, I asked a policeman.
11. I was tired of waiting and decided to go back home.
12. He was driven out of the country and settled down in a foreign land.
13. The boy was discouraged by his failure and made no more efforts.
14. They were depressed by tiredness and decided to take rest.
15. The boy was encouraged by the teacher and he joined the army.

Hints : 7. on returning home........., 9. thinking it..........., 10. not knowing..................

B. ***Join the following pairs of sentences by making use of participles:***

Examples :

(a) She opened the drawer. She found the missing ring.

Ans. Opening the drawer, she found the missing ring.

(b) He was rejected by all his friends. He decided to leave the country.

Ans. (Being) rejected by all his friends he decided to leave the country.

1. She opened the door. She found her mother waiting.
2. He swept the floor. He found a valuable coin.
3. He entered the cave. He saw a snake.
4. She bought a ticket. She entered the cinema hall.
5. The child ran towards the road. He slipped and fell down.
6. I knew that he was helpless. I wanted to help her.
7. He found no one at home. He left the house in a bad temper.
8. The criminal removed all traces of his crime. He left the building.
9. We looked towards the palace. We saw the princess at the window.
10. I opened the safe. I found the money intact.
11. He returned home. He found the child missing.
12. They were beaten by their enemies. They decided to attack again.
13. He was struck by her beauty. He decided to marry her.
14. The stable door was open. The horse was stolen.

C. Join/Rewrite the following by making use of the participle construction :

Examples :

(a) He finished the work. He went to bed.

Ans. Having finished the work he went to bed.

(b) He typed the letter and put it before the officer for his signature.

Ans. Having typed the letter he put it before the officer for his signature.

1. He failed twice. He did not want to try again.
2. He learnt the lesson. He went to bed.
3. The engineer finished his job. He left the office.
4. He had finished eating. He stood up to make a speech.
5. She passed all her examinations. She went up to the university.
6. He searched in vain for the ring. He decided to go to the police station.
7. He failed in the first attempt. He made no further attempts.
8. He stole a watch. He looked for a place to hide it.
9. He had spent all his money. He decided to return back home.
10. He read the book page by page. He wanted to sell it.
11. He had earned enough money. He wanted to lead a luxurious life.
12. He passed the examination and decided to join the army.
13. He built a house. He wanted to marry and lead a happy life.

D. Fill in the blanks with participles :

1. Don't jump off the .... train. (run)
2. ....dogs seldom bite. (bark)
3. He was carrying a ....gun. (load)
4. The......... soldiers were carried to hospital. (wound)
5. She came .... (weep)
6. He seems .... (satisfy)
7. A ....opportunity never returns. (lose)
8. .... my work I left home. (do)
9. .... the lion's roar the hunter took aim. (hear)
10. .... the tiger he fled away. (see)

E. Correct the following sentences in respect of participles and other connected words :

1. Being a rainy day, I did not go out.
2. Being wet outside, we decided to have indoor games.
3. Being in haste, the door could not be locked.

4. Running through the woods, his clothes were torn by thorns.
5. Climbing up the tree, the house was seen by him.
6. Sweeping the floor, a necklace was found.
7. Getting out of bed, a scorpion bit him.
8. Shining in the sky, we saw the first star.
9. When paying by cheque, a bank card should be shown.
10. Disappointed by circumstances, hope was lost to him.

Solved Examples

A. ***Pick out the infinitives, gerunds and participles in the following examples :***

1. I am very glad to see you.
2. I am fond of collecting stamps.
3. I don't enjoy going to the dentist.
4. They don't allow smoking in here.
5. You should form the habit of reading.
6. Sleeping is necessary to life.
7. I am looking forward to seeing you again.
8. Hearing the noise, he ran to the window.
9. He saved the drowning child.
10. He was carrying a loaded gun.

Answers : 1. to see—infinitive, 2. collecting—gerund, 3. going—gerund, 4. smoking—gerund, 5. reading—gerund, 6. sleeping—gerund, 7. looking—participle, seeing—gerund, 8. hearing—participle, 9. drowning—participle, 10. carrying—participle, loaded— participle.

B. ***Rewrite the following sentences putting the verbs in brackets into the correct form (infinitive or gerund or participle).***

1. He told me (try) (come) early.
2. Do you (wish) (be) an engineer ?
3. He finished (speak) and sat down.
4. Are you thinking of (leave) your job and (go) abroad ?
5. He hates (be) kept (wait).
6. I hate (borrow) money.
7. We met a girl (carry) a basket of flowers.
8. The general was used to (give) orders.
9. The snow kept (fall) and the workmen grew tired of (try) (keep) the roads clear.
10. (See) her (weep) I went to see what was wrong.
11. We ever found her (beam) with smile.
12. It means (invite) troubles.
13. (Learn) that he was ill, I rushed to the hospital.
14. I will not (let) you go.
15. I (hear) him (cry).

Answers :

1. He told me to try to come early.
2. Do you wish to be an engineer ?
3. He finished speaking and sat down.
4. Are you thinking of leaving your job and going abroad ?
5. He hates to be kept waiting. Or, He hates being kept waiting.
6. I hate borrowing money.
7. We met a girl carrying a basket of flowers.
8. The general was used to giving orders.
9. The snow kept falling and the workmen grew tired of trying to keep the roads clear.
10. Seeing her weeping I went to see what was wrong.
11. We ever found her beaming with smile.
12. It means inviting troubles.
13. Having learnt that he was ill, I rushed to the hospital.
14. I will not let you go.
15. I heard him cry.

EXERCISE 28

A. Pick out the infinitives, gerunds and participles in the following examples :

1. I am tired of playing.
2. He is a man to be admired.
3. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
4. Hearing the noise, the boy woke up.
5. Walking in the morning is good for health.
6. He is fond of playing cricket.
7. I saw him moving in the garden.
8. I cannot go on doing nothing.
9. Stop playing.
10. I have an aversion to fishing.
11. The man seems worried.
12. A burnt child dreads the fire.
13. I heard her sing.
14. We saw a clown standing on his head.
15. I hate sitting in the dark.

B. Rewrite the following sentences putting the verbs in brackets into the correct form (infinitive or gerund or participle) :

1. It is no use his (study) at this time.
2. Would you mind (wait) a moment ?

3. He never thinks of (help) me, but he expects me (help) him.
4. The teacher does not allow (talk) in the class.
5. I don't enjoy (go) to the theatre.
6. He has ruined his sight by (read) small print.
7. (Do) his work he went out for a walk.
8. He went (see) his father.
9. He went on (talk) about his accident.
10. He helped me (push) the car.
11. Would you (like) (come) in my car ?
12. Don't forget (lock) the door before (go) to bed.
13. I did not want (do) it but he made me (do) it all over again.
14. There is nothing (do) but (wait) till somebody comes (let) us out.
15. (Open) the drawer he took out a revolver.
16. He disliked (work) late.
17. I have no objection to (hear) your story again.
18. I am sorry for (keep) you waiting.
19. He is used to (work) at night.
20. How dare you (touch) me ?

6. Question Tags

1. तुम राम को जानते हो न ? — You know Ram, **don't you** ?
2. वह घर गया था न ? — He went home, **didn't he** ?
3. तुम राम के भाई हो न ? — You are Ram's brother, **aren't you ?**
4. तुम मांस नहीं खाते हो न ? — You don't eat meat, **do you** ?
5. आप मेरी मदद करेंगे न ? — You will help me, **won't you** ?
6. तुमने ऐसा किया है न ? — You have done so, **haven't you** ?

इस प्रकार के वाक्य ज्यादातर बोलचाल की भाषा में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। वक्ता ऐसे वाक्यों से अपना अनुमान/विचार आदि व्यक्त करते हैं, परंतु साथ ही अपनी जिज्ञासा, शक या संदेह के कारण इसकी पुष्टि श्रोता से चाहते हैं। ऐसे English sentences के एक भाग Assertive/Imperative तथा दूसरा भाग Interrogative होते हैं। यह दूसरा भाग Question Tag कहलाता है।

Questions तथा Question Tags में अन्तर है। Questions पूर्ण वाक्य होते हैं तथा इनका प्रयोग स्वतंत्र रूप से होता है। Question Tags का प्रयोग स्वतंत्र रूप से नहीं होता है; ये किसी वाक्य के अंत में प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

जब हम किसी बात को नहीं जानते हैं तो Questions का प्रयोग करते हैं। परन्तु जब हमारे सामने कोई ऐसा तथ्य/अनुमान/विचार आता है जिस पर हम पूर्णतः आश्वस्त नहीं रहते हैं तो इसकी पुष्टि के लिए Question Tags का प्रयोग करते हैं। Question Tag प्रयोग करने वाला व्यक्ति श्रोता से यह उम्मीद रखता है कि वह उसके कथन की पुष्टि करेगा। इस प्रकार Question Tags का प्रयोग आम बोलचाल की भाषा में अनौपचारिक रूप से किया जाता है।

1. **Question Tags are short additions to sentences, to ask for confirmation of something we are not sure about, or to ask for agreement.**

2. **Question Tags are not full questions. They can't stand by themselves like other questions.**

3. **The use of Question Tags is colloquial.**

Question Tags बनाने के लिए **Anomalous Finites** का प्रयोग किया जाता है। अतः आप निम्नलिखित 24 Anomalous finites तथा Anomalous finites + not के संक्षिप्त रूप (contracted forms) को अवश्य याद कर लें :—

do + not	= don't	will + not	= won't
does + not	= doesn't	can + not	= can't
did + not	= didn't	should + not	= shouldn't
Am I not...	= Aren't I...?	would + not	= wouldn't
is + not	= isn't	could + not	= couldn't
are + not	= aren't	may + not	= mayn't
has + not	= hasn't	might + not	= mightn't
have + not	= haven't	ought + not	= oughtn't
had + not	= hadn't	must + not	= mustn't
was + not	= wasn't	used + not	= usedn't
were + not	= weren't	need + not	= needn't
shall + not	= shan't	dare + not	= daren't

Question Tags के Pattern

1. Anomalous Finite + Subject ?
2. Anomalous Finite + n't + subject ?

Note : 1. Question Tags बनाने में lexical verbs (जैसे—go, eat, laugh, etc) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

2. जब किसी statement के अंत में Question Tag का प्रयोग करते हैं तो Question Tag के Anomalous finite का चयन statement में प्रयुक्त Anomalous Finite पर निर्भर करता है । अगर statement में कोई Anomalous finite न रहे तो Question Tag में do/does/did का प्रयोग होगा। Question Tags का Anomalous finite Singular Number में होगा कि Plural Number में इसका चयन Question Tag में प्रयुक्त subject के अनुसार होगा न कि statement में प्रयुक्त subject के अनुसार।

3. Question Tag का subject सिर्फ Pronoun या Introductory 'There' ही हो सकता है। Question Tag में **Noun** का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Question Tags बनाने के नियम

1. यदि मूलकथन **positive** हो तो **Negative Question Tag** का प्रयोग होगा और यदि मूलकथन **Negative** हो तो **Positive Question Tag** का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे :—

You take tea, don't you ?
You don't take tea, do you ?
She is beautiful, isn't she ?
She is not beautiful, is she ?
Ram went home, didn't he ?
Ram did not go home, did he ?

He will help me, won't he ?
He will not help me, will he ?
I am right, aren't I ?
I am not a coward, am I ?

Note : एक बात ध्यान में रखें कि negative statement का अर्थ यह नहीं है कि वाक्य में negative verbs का प्रयोग अवश्य हो। आपको ऐसे अनेक वाक्य मिलेंगे जिनमें positive verbs का प्रयोग है, परन्तु negative subject/ object/ complement/adverb के प्रयोग से वाक्य में नकारात्मक भाव है। ऐसे वाक्यों के साथ भी Positive Question Tags का प्रयोग होता है। जब neither, no, not, never, none, no one, nobody, nothing, few, little, hardly, rarely, scarcely, seldom इत्यादि का प्रयोग हो तो अभीष्ट clause को Negative statement ही मानें। जैसे :—

They had no friend, had they ?
No one knows this, do they ?
Nobody is allowed to come, are they ?
Nothing is perfect, is it ?
They have nothing, have they ?
A barking dog seldom bites, does he ?
Few people will come, will they ?
Neither of them helped you, did they ?
He knows little about her, does he ?

परन्तु a few तथा a little positive expressions हैं।

They have a little money, haven't they ?
Only a few students will get the awards, won't they ?

2. Positive request/command के साथ Positive या Negative Question Tag आता है। परन्तु Negative request/command के साथ Positive Question Tag ही आता है। Normally request/command के साथ will you/ won't you Question Tag के रूप में आता है। जैसे :—

Open the door, will you ?
Open the door, won't you ?
Don't open the door, will you ?
Please pass me your note book, will you ?
Please pass me your note book, won't you ?
Don't go there again, will you ?
Don't forget, will you ?
Don't try to cheat me any more, will you ?

Note : (a) ज्यादा urgency दिखाने के लिए positive request/command के साथ "won't you ?" Question Tag का ही प्रयोग होता है।

Remember to shut the door, won't you ?
Be careful while counting rupees, won't you ?

(b) जब Imperative Verb से डाँट/फटकार का भाव स्पष्ट हो तो "can't you ?" Question Tag का प्रयोग होता है।

Use your own pen, can't you ?
Use your own sense, can't you ?
Shut up, can't you ?

3. Let's (let us ....) के साथ "shall we ?" Question Tag का प्रयोग होता है।

Let's dance, shall we ?
Let us go, shall we ?
Let us play together, shall we ?

परन्तु Let him/ her/ them/Ram इत्यादि के साथ "will you ?" Question Tag आता है।

Let him do that, will you ?
Let them go, will you ?

Question Tags के Subjects का चयन

1. अगर मूलकथन का subject कोई Personal Pronoun है तो Question Tag का subject भी वही Personal Pronoun होगा। अगर मूलकथन का subject कोई Noun हो तो Question Tag का subject उक्त Noun के Number तथा Gender के अनुसार he/ she/ it/they होगा। जैसे :—

They read, don't they ?
She reads, doesn't she ?
You know it, don't you ?
We saw him, didn't we ?
I have not cheated you, have I ?
It is true, isn't it ?
Ram and Shyam are friends, aren't they ?
Ram was absent, wasn't he ?
Sita is not beautiful, is she ?
The boys are not going tomorrow, are they ?
The chair is not strong enough, is it ?

2. अगर मूलकथन के subjects there, one , this/that, these/those हो तो Question Tags के subjects क्रमशः there, one, it तथा they होंगे। जैसे :—

There is beauty in it, isn't there ?
One can't do this, can one ?
This is mine, isn't it ?
That is enough, isn't it ?

These are his cows, aren't they ?
Those are good examples, aren't they ?

Note : परन्तु ध्यान दें कि जब one, this, that, these तथा those का प्रयोग Adjectives की तरह हो यानी इनके तुरन्त बाद Noun प्रयुक्त हो तो Question Tag का subject Noun के अनुसार he/she/it/they होगा। जैसे :—

One boy can lift it, can't he ?
This boy came yesterday, didn't he ?
Those pens are mine, aren't they ?
This chair is useless, isn't it ?
This girl is beautiful, isn't she ?
That woman has no sense, has she ?

3. अगर मूलकथन का subject no one, anyone, someone, everyone, everybody, somebody या nobody हो तो Question Tag का subject 'they' होगा। जैसे :—

No one could do so, could they ?
Everyone helped you, didn't they ?
Someone stole my pen, didn't they ?
Somebody will come to help you, won't they ?
Anyone can do so, can't they ?
Nobody has seen God, have they ?
Everybody is your enemy, aren't they ?

4. जब no, any, every, some इत्यादि के साथ thing लगा रहे यानी nothing, anything, something या everything मूलकथन का subject रहे तो Question Tag के subject के रूप में 'it' का प्रयोग होगा 'they' का नहीं। जैसे :—

Everything is clear to you, isn't it ?
Nothing could be done, could it ?
Something is there, isn't it ?
Anything can be done for you, can't it ?

5. जब statement का subject All of us/None of us/One of us/Anyone of us/ Some of us/ Most of us/ Everyone of us/ Either of us/ Neither of us रहे तो Question Tag के subject के रूप में we आयेगा। जब us के बदले you या them रहे तो Question Tag के subject के रूप में क्रमशः you तथा they आयेगा। जैसे :—

All of us can do this, can't we ?
All of you can do this, can't you ?
All of them can do this, can't they ?

Most of you have read the book, haven't you ?
Most of them don't know this, do they ?
Neither of you has done this, have you ?
Either of you is guilty, aren't you ?
None of us have seen the Taj Mahal, have we ?

Some Special Notes :

1. I am your best friend, aren't I ? यहाँ aren't I ? सही Question Tag है। इसके बदले amn't I ? न लिखें।

2. Negative Question Tag में Anomalous finite + not के संक्षिप्त रूप (contracted form) का ही प्रयोग करें।

3. dare/need का प्रयोग Full Verb तथा Auxiliary Verb दोनों ही प्रकार से होता है। जब मूलकथन में dare/need का प्रयोग Auxiliary Verb की तरह हो तो Question Tag में dare/need का ही प्रयोग होगा। परन्तु जब मूलकथन में dare/need का प्रयोग Full Verb के रूप में हो तो Question Tag में dare/need का प्रयोग न होकर कोई अन्य उपयुक्त Anomalous finite का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे :—

He dare not go there, dare he ?
He does not dare to go there, does he ?
They have dared to beat him, haven't they ?
I needn't ask him, need I ?
I don't need to ask him, do I ?
He dares to go there, doesn't he ?
He needs a book, doesn't he ?
I will need nothing, will I ?
No students dare disobey, dare they ?
You need have no fear, need you ?
Nobody will dare to beat us, will they ?

4. अगर मूलकथन में 'used to' का प्रयोग हो तो Question Tag में usedn't/didn't का प्रयोग होगा। अगर usedn't to का प्रयोग हो तो used/did का प्रयोग होगा जैसे:—

He used to go there, usedn't he ?
He used to go there, didn't he ?
They usedn't to go there, used they ?
They usedn't to go there, did they ?

Worked Out Examples

1. I am right, ... ? aren't I
2. I am not guilty, ... ? am I

3. I am doing for you, ... ?	aren't I
4. You are reading well, ... ?	aren't you
5. You are not sure, ... ?	are you
6. Ram is very rich, ... ?	isn't he
7. They are not anxious, ... ?	are they
8. We are ready to face every danger, ... ?	aren't we
9. She has broken the glass, ... ?	hasn't she
10. Sheela has love for you, ... ?	hasn't she
11. The boys have played well, ... ?	haven't they
12. Mohan has not yet decided, ... ?	has he
13. We have been trying for years, ... ?	haven't we
14. Sita and Geeta will be present, ... ?	won't they
15. We shall win the match, ... ?	shan't we
16. Ganesh will not help you, ... ?	will he
17. I shall have success, ... ?	shan't I
18. It will not be raining then, ... ?	will it
19. He can't defeat you, ... ?	can he
20. We can do everything, ... ?	can't we
21. She might come today, ... ?	mightn't she
22. The boys could pass, ... ?	couldn't they
23. They wouldn't dance, ... ?	would they
24. We may win the race, ... ?	mayn't we
25. You should not beat your brother, ... ?	should you
26. We ought to respect our teachers, ... ?	oughtn't we
27. He was very brave, ... ?	wasn't he
28. They were not ready, ... ?	were they
29. He was to start the work, ... ?	wasn't he
30. You were learning how to drive, ... ?	weren't you
31. She must help her sister, ... ?	mustn't she
32. He had an elephant, ... ?	hadn't he
33. You had to support him, ... ?	hadn't you
34. Mohan had not gone there, ... ?	had he
35. Ram knows me very well, ... ?	doesn't he
36. The girl sings well......?	doesn't she
37. I always help you, ... ?	don't I
38. They don't beat you, ... ?	do they
39. Rajesh doesn't come to school, ... ?	does he
40. He speaks English well, ... ?	doesn't he
41. You leave for Bombay tomorrow, ... ?	don't you
42. She does not do her job, ... ?	does she
43. She likes tea, ... ?	doesn't she
44. They kept silent, ... ?	didn't they

45. Rakesh made a mistake, ... ? didn't he
46. He tried to cheat me, ... ? didn't he
47. The boys went to the zoo, ... ? didn't they
48. Rakesh and Suresh did not go there, ... ? did they
49. You did not go there, ... ? did you
50. She did not come in time, ... ? did she

Question : Make meaningful sentences from the following table :

1. We find a large number of men waiting at the railway platform, 2. We don't see animals in their natural surroundings at a zoo, 3. You often go to your teacher, 4. He helps me with books, 5. He can take book home, 6. You will not tease him, 7. You have already read about pollution, 8. I can drive a scooter,	don't we ? don't you ? doesn't he ? do we ? can't I ? will you ? haven't you ? can't he ?

Ans. 1. We find a large number of men waiting at the railway platform, don't we ?
2. We don't see animals in their natural surroundings at a zoo, do we?
3. You often go to your teacher, don't you ?
4. He helps me with books, doesn't he ?
5. He can take this book home, can't he ?
6. You will not tease him, will you ?
7. You have already read about pollution, haven't you ?
8. I can drive a scooter, can't I ?

Question : Make sentences from the following :

The Prime Minister I You He	leaves leave	for	Goa London Bonn Bombay Delhi	tomorrow	doesn't he ? don't I ? don't you ?

Ans. 1. The Prime Minister leaves for Goa tomorrow, doesn't he ?
2. I leave for London tomorrow, don't I ?
3. You leave for Delhi tomorrow, don't you ?
4. He leaves for Bombay tomorrow, doesn't he ?

EXERCISE 29

Rewrite the following sentences, adding question tags.

1. I am right.
2. I am not your enemy.
3. I am helping you.
4. We are friends.
5. We are not weak.
6. You are satisfied.
7. You are returning tomorrow.
8. She has a car.
9. He has not gone.
10. They have been defeated.
11. Ram has been playing since 9 o'.clock.
12. She was irritated.
13. They were not ready.
14. I had warned you again and again.
15. She had beauty.
16. You had not a car.
17. Mohan will not help me.
18. She will do it.
19. We shall win the match.
20. We shall not do it.
21. Ganesh will have reached.
22. I shall get a prize.
23. We can't defeat them.
24. My brother can solve it.
25. It can be done.
26. Farmers should know the modern ways of cultivation.
27. You should not make a noise in the class.
28. We should obey our parents.
29. He would die.
30. We must serve the country.
31. You ought to help the poor.
32. They could pass the examination.
33. It might rain today.
34. Our team may win the match.
35. She knows English.
36. The girl sings well.
37 He always helps you.
38. They know how to swim.
39. I want to help you.
40 Indian farmers work hard.
41. She does not like you.
42. I don't tell a lie.
43. They do not go there.
44. You write well.
45. Sita kept silent.
46. He loved you.
47. He does not vex you.
48. I went there.
49. He wanted to save her.
50. The girls danced well.
51. He did not wait for me.
52. She did not support you.
53. They didn't appear at the examination.
54. She does not do her job.
55. I wanted to teach the boy.
56. They tried their best.
57. He leaves for Patna tomorrow.

Solved Examples :

1. You dare not touch it, ... ? — dare you
2. You don't dare to touch it, ... ? — do you
3. He dares to beat him, ... ? — doesn't he
4. You daren't go there, ... ? — dare you
5. You don't dare to go there, ... ? — do you

6. You dare to go there, ... ? — don't you
7. She dared to abuse him, ... ? — didn't she
8. The boys dared to stay there, ... ? — didn't they
9. We dare not face him, ... ? — dare we
10. She dare not face her father, ... ? — dare she
11. She does not dare to face her father .... ? — does she
12. We need not go there, ... ? — need we
13. We don't need to go there, ... ? — do we
14. We need to go there, ... ? — don't we
15. We needed your help, ... ? — didn't we
16. Sita need not come here, ...? — need she
17. I needn't read, ... ? — need I
18. I don't need to read, ... ? — do I
19. He needs money, ... ? — doesn't he
20. You don't need my help, ... ? — do you
21. You used to smoke, ... ? — didn't you
22. You used to smoke, ... ? — usedn't you
23. She used not to go there, ... ? — used she
24. She used not to go there, ... ? — did she

EXERCISE 30

Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags :

1. He dare not catch snakes, ... ?
2. He does not dare to catch snakes, ... ?
3. He dares to catch snakes, ... ?
4. I dared to oppose him, ... ?
5. You dare not ask her father, ... ?
6. You don't dare to ask her father, ... ?
7. He has dared to go there, ... ?
8. I need not finish that work today, ... ?
9. I don't need to finish that work today, ... ?
10. I need your help, ... ?
11. I don't need your help,...... ?
12. She need not ask him, ... ?
13. She does not need to ask him, ... ?
14. You need not have hurried, ... ?
15. You will need me, ... ?
16. She needn't come here, ... ?
17. She used to like you, ... ?
18. You used to smoke a pipe, ...
19. I usedn't to like her, ... ?
20. They usedn't to go there, ... ?
21. You used the money to set up a project, ... ?

Solved Examples :

1. Now I have no work, ... ?	have I
2. The poor boy has no chance of success, ... ?	has he
3. Nobody was ready, ... ?	were they
4. Neither of them was ready, ... ?	were they
5. Nobody can harm me, ... ?	can they
6. I have no one to support, ... ?	have I
7. No one is to be blamed, ... ?	are they
8. Nothing is perfect, ... ?	is it
9. He has little knowledge, ... ?	has he
10. I know a little about her, ...?	don't I
11. Few persons were present there, ... ?	were they
12. You have a few good books, ... ?	haven't you
13. It is rarely found these days, ... ?	is it
14. She seldom goes there, ... ?	does she
15. Shut the door, ... ?	will you/won't you
16. Please do me a favour, ... ?	will you/won't you
17. Do come tomorrow, ... ?	will you/won't you
18. Don't cheat her, ... ?	will you
19. Don't go there, ... ?	will you
20. Please write to her, ...?	will you/won't you
21. Don't be disappointed, ... ?	will you
22. Let us dance, ...?	shall we
23. Let's play together, ... ?	shall we
24. Let's finish this work now, ... ?	shall we
25. Let him do that, ... ?	will you
26. Let the boys go out, ... ?	will you

EXERCISE 31

Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags :

1. He had no friends, ... ?
2. You have no objection, ... ?
3. We can say nothing about him, ... ?
4. She has no time for me, ... ?
5. No one has seen God, ... ?
6. Nobody has ever said so, ... ?
7. She does nothing, ... ?
8. Neither of them has sense, ... ?
9. He seldom comes to me, ... ?
10. He has never eaten meat, ... ?
11. He hardly knows her, ... ?

12. He hardly ever makes a mistake, ... ?
13. Nothing went wrong, ... ?
14. Nobody liked the play, ... ?
15. Few people here would agree to his proposal, ... ?
16. I know little about the plan, ... ?
17. We know a little about the plan, ... ?
18. Do that at once, ... ?
19. Kindly do me a favour, ... ?
20. Bring a glass of water, ...
21. Please give me money, ... ?
22. Don't be late tomorrow, ... ?
23. Don't go there again, ... ?
24. Kindly don't tease her again, ... ?
25. Let's start the work, ... ?
26. Let us dance together, ... ?
27. Let him do the work, ... ?
28. Nobody dare oppose me, ... ?

Solved Examples :

1. There are two boys in the class, ... ?	aren't there
2. There is no doubt, ... ?	is there
3. There were four boys there, ... ?	weren't there
4. There is no hope here, ... ?	is there
5. There was truth in that, ... ?	wasn't there
6. One can't beat him, ... ?	can one
7. This is useless, ... ?	isn't it
8. That was not for me, ... ?	was it
9. These are his, ... ?	aren't they
10. Those are not for her, ... ?	are they
11. One man can lift it, ... ?	can't he
12. This boy is innocent, ... ?	isn't he
13. That boy has broken the chair, ... ?	hasn't he
14. Those mangoes are rotten, ... ?	aren't they
15. This girl is beautiful, ... ?	isn't she
16. This is of no use to me, ... ?	is it
17. No one dare come here, ... ?	dare they
18. No one would come, ... ?	would they
19. Anyone will do this, ... ?	won't they
20. Anyone can easily break the gate, ... ?	can't they
21. Someone might come, ... ?	mightn't they
22. Everybody is ready now, ... ?	aren't they
23. Somebody has beaten the dog, ... ?	haven't they

24.	Nobody can challenge us, ... ?	can they
25.	No salt is allowed, ... ?	is it
26.	Nothing was said, ... ?	was it
27.	Anything can be sold, ... ?	can't it
28.	Everything is bright and beautiful, ... ?	isn't it
29.	Something must be done for us, ... ?	mustn't it
30.	All of us are present, ... ?	aren't we
31.	All of you can be beaten, ... ?	can't you
32.	All of them had gone there, ... ?	hadn't they
33.	None of us have fault, ... ?	have we
34.	Some of us can do that, ... ?	can't we
35.	Neither of you is responsible, ... ?	aren't you
36.	Either of us can be cheated, ... ?	can't we
37.	Neither of us has deceived you, ... ?	have we
38.	Everyone of them can buy this, ... ?	can't they

EXERCISE 32

Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags :

1. There is no reason to go, ... ?
2. There are a lot of monkeys in the garden, ... ?
3. There must be something there, ... ?
4. One should always mind one's own business, ... ?
5. This is beautiful, ... ?
6. This boy can do us no harm, ... ?
7. That is yours, ... ?
8. That chain is made of steel, ... ?
9. That girl sings well, ... ?
10. These are for sale, ... ?
11. Those are rotten, ... ?
12. These boys have no sense, ...?
13. These pens are very costly, ... ?
14. Those men were working against us, ... ?
15. Nobody dare go there, ... ?
16. No one here can solve this problem, ... ?
17. Everybody will support us, ... ?
18. Somebody has stolen my pen, ... ?
19. Hardly anybody came, ... ?
20. Nobody liked the play, ... ?
21. Everything is clear to you, ... ?
22. Something has been left behind, ... ?
23. Nothing can cure him, ...?
24. Anything wasn't left, ... ?

25. All of us can defeat him, ... ?
26. All of them have arrived, ... ?
27. All of you are tired, ... ?
28. None of us wanted to stay there, ...
29. None of you have been able to do this, ... ?
30. Some of them have agreed to your proposal, ... ?
31. Most of them don't know the fact, ... ?
32. Neither of us can pay the rent, ... ?
33. Either of you is responsible for it, ... ?
34. None of those boys are willing to do this, ... ?

EXERCISE 33

Fill in the blanks :

1. .... the best player, aren't I ?
2. .... done this, have we ?
3. .... going today, is she ?
4. They have cheated you, ... ?
5. It .... done, could it ?
6. You won't be late, ... ?
7. Ram .... true, was he ?
8. They .... help us, will .... ?
9. They had .... loss, had they ?
10. No one wanted to help the poor orphan, ... ?
11. We have nothing to do, ... ?
12. He .... face me, dare he ?
13. He seldom visit us, ... ?
14. Please give me your note books, ... ?
15. Let us try to win the match, ... ?
16. He did .... come, did .... ?
17. There is .... hope here , is .... ?
18. You leave for Delhi tomorrow, ... ?
19. This .... enough for me, is .... ?
20. .... can't do this, ... one ?
21. There came nobody, ... ?
22. Open the gate, ... ?
23. No student dare go out, ... ?
24. The fisherman caught nothing, ... ?
25. I did, ... ?

7. Emphatic With Do/Does/Did

Emphatic का अर्थ है 'जोरदार'। मुख्य क्रिया के पहले do/does/did का प्रयोग कर कुछ वाक्यों को emphatic बनाया जाता है।

1. जब वाक्य में प्रयुक्त क्रिया Simple Present Tense में हो तो do/does का प्रयोग करें; जब प्रयुक्त क्रिया Simple Past Tense में हो तो did का प्रयोग करें। एक बात ध्यान में रखें कि do/does/did के बाद हमेशा V^1 ही प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे—

Non-emphatic	*Emphatic*
I know her.	I do know her.
We help you.	We do help you.
You know English.	You do know English.
He eats meat.	He does eat meat.
She loves him very much.	She does love him very much.
Ram plays tennis.	Ram does play tennis.
I went there.	I did go there.
He went fishing.	He did go fishing.
He wanted to go.	He did want to go.
She told a lie.	She did tell a lie.
He heard the news.	He did hear the news.

2. जब वाक्य में have/has/had का प्रयोग मुख्य क्रिया के रूप में हो तो emphatic बनाने के लिए do have/does have/did have का प्रयोग करें। ध्यान मे रखें कि do/does/did के बाद have का प्रयोग होगा has/had का नहीं। जैसे—

Non-emphatic	*Emphatic*
I have a car.	I do have a car.
She has a radio.	She does have a radio.
She had a cow.	She did have a cow.

3. Imperative Sentence को emphatic बनाने के लिए Verb के पहले Do का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ ध्यान में रखें कि does/did का प्रयोग Imperative Sentence के Verb के पहले कभी नहीं होगा। जैसे—

Non-emphatic	*Emphatic*
Come tomorrow.	Do come tomorrow.
Write me a letter soon.	Do write me a letter soon.
Come in.	Do come in.
Please help her.	Please do help her.
Please have a cup of tea.	Please do have a cup of tea.
Have a rest now.	Do have a rest now.
Have patience.	Do have patience.

Note : ऊपर बतलाए गए वाक्यों में do/does/did का प्रयोग वाक्य को जोरदार बनाने के लिए किया गया है। ऐसे वाक्यों में do/does/did का अनुवाद होता है— जरूर/अवश्य। जैसे—

1. I do go there. — मैं वहाँ अवश्य/जरूर जाता हूँ। मैं वहाँ जाता तो हूँ।
2. She does love me. — वह मुझे अवश्य/जरूर प्यार करती है। वह मुझे प्यार करती तो है।
3. He did help you. — उसने अवश्य/जरूर तुम्हारी मदद की। उसने तुम्हारी मदद की तो थी।
4. I did write to him. — मैंने उसे अवश्य/जरूर लिखा था। मैंने उसे लिखा तो था।
5. He does have peace. — उसे शांति अवश्य/जरूर है। उसे शांति तो है।
6. Please do help me. — कृपया मेरी मदद अवश्य/जरूर करें।

From Emphatic to Non-emphatic

Emphatic Sentences को Non-emphatic बनाने के लिए वाक्य में प्रयुक्त do/does/did को हटा दें तथा subject के number तथा verb के tense के अनुसार आवश्यक परिवर्तन करें। Emphatic Imperatives को Non-emphatic बनाने के लिए मात्र do को हटा दें। जैसे :—

Emphatic	*Non-emphatic*
I do help you.	I help you.
She does know me.	She knows me.
She did buy the book.	She bought the book.
I do have a car.	I have a car.
She does have sympathy for me.	She has sympathy for me.
Do tell me a story.	Tell me a story.
Please do come tomorrow.	Please come tomorrow.

Worked out Examples

Emphatic	*Non-emphatic*
1. I do believe in God.	I believe in God.
2. She does believe in God.	She believes in God.
3. You do play tennis.	You play tennis.
4. I do read at night.	I read at night.
5. Ram does play cricket.	Ram plays cricket.
6. He does want to read.	He wants to read.

7. Birds do sing.	Birds sing.
8. He does often help me.	He often helps me.
9. Boys do make a noise.	Boys make a noise.
10. I did go there.	I went there.
11. She did read.	She read.
12. He did play tennis.	He played tennis.
13. She did steal my pen.	She stole my pen.
14. He did go fishing.	He went fishing.
15. She did go shopping.	She went shopping.
16. He did try to win the match.	He tried to win the match.
17. I do have a car.	I have a car.
18. He does have the book.	He has the book.
19. She does have a golden ring.	She has a golden ring.
20. You do have a radio.	You have a radio.
21. I did have knowledge.	I had knowledge.
22. She did have faith.	She had faith.
23. I did have a car.	I had a car.
24. Do help her.	Help her.
25. Do write your name here.	Write your name here.
26. Do post the letter.	Post the letter.
27. Do run fast.	Run fast.
28. Please do come tomorrow.	Please come tomorrow.
29. Please do have a cup of tea.	Please have a cup of tea.
30. Please do tell me a story.	Please tell me a story.
31. Do try again.	Try again.
32. Do give me money.	Give me money.
33. Do have patience.	Have patience.
34. Do have faith in God.	Have faith in God.
35. Do have a cup of tea.	Have a cup of tea.

Non-emphatic	*Emphatic*
1. I know her very well.	I do know her very well.
2. I believe in God.	I do believe in God.
3. You read fast.	You do read fast.
4. She loves you.	She does love you.
5. He knows English.	He does know English.
6. Ram plays tennis.	Ram does play tennis.
7. My mother loves me.	My mother does love me.
8. Some boys take tea.	Some boys do take tea.
9. He stole my pen.	He did steal my pen.
10. He looked at me.	He did look at me.
11. They came yesterday.	They did come yesterday.

12. She wanted to go.	She did want to go.
13. I went fishing.	I did go fishing.
14. I ran fast.	I did run fast.
15. I have a horse.	I do have a horse.
16. She has a watch.	She does have a watch.
17. Ram has a red pen.	Ram does have a red pen.
18. I have two brothers.	I do have two brothers.
19. I had a coat.	I did have a coat.
20. They had a radio.	They did have a radio.
21. She had love for me.	She did have love for me.
22. Go there.	Do go there.
23. Believe in God.	Do believe in God.
24. Type carefully.	Do type carefully.
25. Write me a letter soon.	Do write me a letter soon.
26. Please help me.	Please do help me.
27. Please come tomorrow.	Please do come tomorrow.
28. Answer these questions.	Do answer these questions.
29. Show me your teeth.	Do show me your teeth.
30. Have tea now.	Do have tea now.
31. Have patience.	Do have patience.
32. Please have a cup of milk.	Please do have a cup of milk.
33. She wants to help you.	She does want to help you.
34. He saved the snake.	He did save the snake.
35. Everyone wants to succeed.	Everyone does want to succeed.

EXERCISE 34

Make the following sentences emphatic :—

1. I read.
2. He reads.
3. I know Mohan. .
4. He plays cricket.
5. You make a noise.
6. He speaks the truth.
7. She tells a lie.
8. She likes fish.
9. We love you.
10. He believes in God.
11. Heera knows the fact.
12. I wrote him a letter.
13. She stole my purse.
14. He won the match.
15. The peon rang the bell.
16. He went fishing.
17. He laughed at me.
18. She helped the poor.
19. He tried his best.
20. He wanted to save you.
21. He tried to succeed.
22. She told me a story.
23. He taught me English.
24. I have a car.
25. She has a ring.
26. I have a black coat.
27. She has beauty.
28. They have books.
29. I had a bicycle.
30. She had a bicycle.

31. He had faith in God.
32. We had a radio.
33. Come in.
34. Please come in.
35. Switch on the radio.
36. Write me soon.
37. Kindly give me money.
38. Please give me your book.
39. Have a rest now.
40. Have faith in God.
41. Please have a cup of tea.
42. Make tea for me.
43. He went shopping.
44. He succeeded.
45. The boy went home.
46. The hen laid eggs.
47. I have a golden watch.
48. Take medicine in time.
49. He tried to win the match.
50. He had a jeep.

EXERCISE 35

Make the following sentences non-emphatic :—

1. I do help the poor.
2. He does help the poor.
3. She does want to marry Mohan.
4. You do respect your elders.
5. He does like fish.
6. I did see her yesterday.
7. He did lose his purse.
8. She did laugh at me.
9. The girl did dance well.
10. I did go fishing.
11. She did go shopping.
12. He did try to win.
13. I do have faith in God.
14. He does have faith in God.
15. She does have a car.
16. I do have a horse.
17. He does have an elephant.
18. We do have friends.
19. The farmer did have a dog.
20. I did have a gun.
21. She did have a golden ring.
22. Do begin the work at once.
23. Do try to help her.
24. Please do make tea for me.
25. Do tell me a story, please.
26. Do have patience.
27. Do have a rest now.
28. Do have a cup of tea.
29. Please do have coffee.
30. He did look at me.
31. He does have peace.
32. He did tell a lie.
33. They did have a car.
34. He did succeed.
35. I do know the man.
36. I did borrow money from him.
37. I do want to sleep.
38. They did have a chance.
39. Do have mercy on him.
40. Do tell me what you want.

8. Interchange of Affirmative and Negative Sentences

Affirmative Sentence को Negative Sentence में तथा Negative Sentence को Affirmative Sentence में transform किया जा सकता है। Transformation की प्रक्रिया समझने से पहले आप यह जान लें कि Affirmative Sentence तथा Negative Sentence में एक विशेष अन्तर क्या है।

Affirmative Sentence में कोई भी negative word प्रयुक्त नहीं होता है, जबकि Negative Sentence में negative word का रहना आवश्यक है। निम्नलिखित प्रमुख negative words हैं :—

not, no, none, never, nobody, nothing, neither, nor

Affirmative Sentence को Negative Sentence में transform करने के लिए यह आवश्यक है कि वाक्य में इस प्रकार का परिवर्तन लाया जाए जिससे वाक्य में एक negative word आ जाए तथा वाक्य के अर्थ/भाव में परिवर्तन भी न हो। इसी प्रकार Negative Sentence को Affirmative Sentence में transform करने के लिए यह आवश्यक है कि वाक्य में इस प्रकार का परिवर्तन लाया जाए जिससे वाक्य में प्रयुक्त negative word का लोप हो जाए तथा वाक्य के अर्थ/भाव में परिवर्तन न हो। इस प्रकार के interchanging के लिए कुछ उपाय बतलाए जा रहे हैं जिन्हें ध्यान से समझें :—

1. वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त प्रमुख शब्दों (key-words) के antonyms की सहायता से Affirmative को Negative में तथा Negative को Affirmative में बदला जा सकता है। जैसे :—

Affirmative	*Negative*
She is wise.	**She is not foolish.**
This knife is sharp.	**This knife is not blunt.**
My friend is a rich man.	**My friend is not a poor man.**
This is impossible.	**This is not possible.**
I shall remember your kindness.	**I shall not forget your kindness.**
She is innocent.	**She is not guilty.**
I am always right.	**I am never wrong.**
I dislike her.	**I don't like her.**
He is a clever man.	**He is no fool.**
I am doubtful.	**I am not sure.**
He is sometimes careless.	**He is not always careful.**
Man is mortal.	**Man is not immortal.**
She is always happy.	**She is never unhappy.**

Negative	*Affirmative*
Nobody will deny it.	Everybody will admit it.
Lata's voice is not harsh.	Lata's voice is sweet.
His son is not intelligent.	His son is dull.
He is not honest.	He is dishonest.
They did not believe the story.	They disbelieved the story.
She did not trust me.	She distrusted me.
He did not lose the match.	He won the match.
Never tell a lie.	Always speak the truth.
I shall never forget you.	I shall always remember you.
My wife is not always foolish.	My wife is sometimes wise.

2. Affirmative Sentence को Negative Sentence में transform करने के लिए कभी-कभी दो negative sense वाले words का प्रयोग किया जाता है और ठीक इसके विपरीत प्रक्रिया द्वारा Negative Sentence को Affirmative Sentence में transform किया जाता है। जैसे :—

Affirmative	*Negative*
She loves you.	She is not without love for you.
I am hopeful.	I am not without hope.
He is wise.	He is not without wisdom.
Everyone loves you.	There is no one who does not love you.
Every rose has a thorn.	There is no rose without a thorn.
He tried every plan.	He left no plan untried.
Everyone who was present there praised his speech.	There was no one present there who did not praise his speech.
Where there is fire there is smoke.	There is no smoke without fire.

Negative	*Affirmative*
Brutus was not without love for Caesar.	Brutus loved Caesar.
He is not without money.	He has money.
There is no good man without certain principles.	Every good man has certain principles.
There was no one present who did not criticize his conduct.	Everyone present criticized his conduct.
He did not leave any note-book uncorrected.	He corrected all the note-books.
There is no gain without risk.	Every gain has risk.
There is no thunder without lightning.	There is always some lightning before thunder.
There is no boy who is not playing.	All the boys are playing.

3. Verb "to fail" का प्रयोग कर/लोप कर कुछ वाक्यों का transformation इस प्रकार किया जाता है।

Affirmative	*Negative*
I saw the Red Fort.	I did not fail to see the Red Fort.
I played the game.	I did not fail to play the game.
The juggler performed his feats nicely.	The juggler did not fail to perform his feats nicely.
She will help the poor orphan.	She will not fail to help the poor orphan.
When I am late my mother beats me.	My mother does not fail to beat me when I am late.
He must have seen the Taj Mahal when he went to Agra.	He must not have failed to see the Taj Mahal when he went to Agra.
Learn your lesson well.	Don't fail to learn your lesson well.
He failed to see me when I came in.	He did not/could not see me when I came in.

Negative	*Affirmative*
He did not fail to see the Taj Mahal.	He saw the Taj Mahal.
I did not fail to thank him for his help.	I thanked him for his help.
He did not fail to appear at the examination.	He appeared at the examination.
He did not catch the ball.	He failed to catch the ball.

4. Affirmative Sentences में प्रयुक्त only/alone को none but में, as soon as को no sooner ...... than में तथा whenever/when को never but में परिवर्तित कर Negative Sentences बनाए जाते हैं। ठीक इसके विपरीत none but को only/alone में, no sooner .... than को as soon as में तथा never but को whenever/when में परिवर्तित कर Negative Sentences को Affirmative Sentences में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। संक्षेप में इसे ध्यान में रखें—

Only alone	⇔	none but
as soon as	⇔	no sooner .... than
Whenever/when	⇔	never but

Affirmative	*Negative*
Only the rich can buy this car.	None but the rich can buy this car.
Only a fool would behave like this.	None but a fool would behave like this.
Only a coward would flee from his duty.	None but a coward would flee from his duty.

Only Mohit came to see me.	None but Mohit came to see me.
Only graduates need apply.	None but graduates need apply.
The brave alone deserve the fair.	None but the brave deserves the fair.
As soon as the bell rang the students went into the classroom.	No sooner did the bell ring than the students went into the classroom.
As soon as we reached the station, the train whistled off.	No sooner did the train start than the train whistled off.
It always pours when it rains.	It never rains but pours.
Whenever I see her I am reminded of my beloved.	I never see her but am reminded of my beloved.

Negative	*Affirmative*
None but a child could talk like this.	Only a child could talk like this.
None but Ram can do it.	Only Ram can do it.
None but the brave deserves the fair.	Only the brave deserve the fair.
None but he wanted to help me.	Only he wanted to help me.
No sooner had they heard the bell than they ran away.	As soon as they heard the bell, they ran away.
No sooner did he see a lion than he ran away.	As soon as he saw a lion, he ran away.
No sooner did I go out than it began to rain.	As soon as I went out, it began to rain.
It never rains but pours.	It always pours when it rains.

5. कुछ वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त adjectives/adverbs के Degrees of Comparison में परिवर्तन लाकर Affirmative Sentences को Negative में तथा Negative Sentences को Affirmative में transform किया जा सकता है। जैसे :—

Affirmative	*Negative*
Ram is as good as Mohan.	Mohan is not better than Ram.
Sita is more beautiful than Geeta.	Geeta is not as beautiful as Sita.
Suresh is the most intelligent boy of my school.	No other boy of my school is as intelligent as Suresh.
London is richer than any other city in the world.	No other city in the world is as rich as London.

Negative	*Affirmative*
Mohan is not as rich as Sohan.	Sohan is richer than Mohan.
He is not wiser than you.	You are as wise as he.

No other boy in the class can sing as well as you can.	You can sing better than any other boy in the class.
No other English poet is as great as Shakespeare.	Shakespeare is the greatest English poet.
The cat can't run as fast as the dog can.	The dog can run faster than the cat.

6. By using or removing 'too'

Affirmative	*Negative*
The news is too good to be true.	The news is so good that it cannot be true.

Negative	*Affirmative*
He is so honest that he can't accept bribe.	He is too honest to accept bribe.
His services cannot be forgotten.	His services have been too great to be forgotten.

7. Miscellaneous Examples : कुछ sentences ऐसे हैं जिनका interchanging किसी खास नियम से नहीं हो पाता है। ऐसे वाक्यों के अर्थ/भाव समझ कर उपयुक्त word/phrase की सहायता से Affirmative को Negative में तथा Negative को Affirmative में transform करें।

Affirmative	*Negative*
My brother is a good singer.	My brother is no mean singer.
He is a man of marked intelligence.	He is a man of no mean intelligence.
He abstains from wine.	He does not take wine.
He went to school everyday.	He never absented himself from school.
It is unique.	Nothing is like this.
He lived only a few years in Nepal.	He did not live many years in Nepal.
All the women wept.	There was no woman but wept.
Only a few men would be cruel to a beggar.	Not many men would be cruel to a beggar.
He seldom goes there.	He does not go there very often.
The two sisters are alike.	The two sisters are not unlike each other.
He won all the matches.	He did not lose a single match.

Negative	*Affirmative*
His fortune did not improve with time.	His fortune became worse with time

Don't smoke here.	Refrain from smoking here.
She is no fool.	She is a clever woman.
Don't make a noise.	Keep quiet.
I was asked not to smoke.	I was prohibited from smoking.
We did not find the road very bad.	We found the road fairly good.
Not many persons were present there.	Only a few persons were present there.
There is nothing similar in the world.	Everything is dissimilar in the world.

EXERCISE 36

Turn the following sentences into the Negative forms without altering the sense :—

1. My friend is wise.
2. This is possible.
3. I shall always remember your help.
4. She is always careful.
5. An honest man is always right.
6. Mrs Sinha's voice is sweet.
7. Everyone dislikes her.
8. Man is mortal.
9. This boy is dull.
10. They are innocent.
11. You have always distrusted me.
12. I am always present.
13. We won the match.
14. I always treat her fairly.
15. My knife is sharp.
16. Everyone was hopeful.
17. He is a bad man.
18. I was doubtful whether it was his.
19. Everybody will admit that he did his best.
20. He is honest.
21. You are sometimes foolish.
22. My friend is a poor man.
23. Always speak the truth.
24. He is always happy.
25. Every gain has risk.
26. His behaviour was decent.
27. Everyone makes mistakes.
28. Every rose has a thorn.

29. Everyone present there cheered.
30. Where there is smoke, there is fire.
31. Brutus loved Caesar.
32. He finished everything.
33. Everyone who was present praised his speech.
34. They had money.
35. I love her.
36. She beat everybody.
37. Every problem can be solved.
38. I saw the Red fort.
39. He failed to keep his word.
40. He failed to appear at the examination.
41. He failed to notice me when I came in.
42. I thanked him for his help.
43. Work hard.
44. He came in time.
45. He must have seen the Red Fort when he went to Delhi.

EXERCISE 37

Transform the following into negative sentences :

1. As soon as the thief saw the police, he ran away.
2. As soon as he approached the place, he was arrested.
3. As soon as the teacher entered the room, everybody was silent.
4. As soon as he saw the tiger, he fled.
5. As soon as I went out, it began to rain.
6. As soon as the bell rang, the boys went to their classes.
7. Only a little child could talk like this.
8. Only Moti came to see me.
9. The brave alone deserve the fair.
10. Only a millionaire can afford such extravagance.
11. Only Suresh can do this.
12. Only a coward would flee from his duty.
13. Only the evening star has yet appeard.
14. Only a fool would behave in such a way.
15. The poor alone deserve help.
16. It always pours when it rains.
17. Whenever I see him I am reminded of my brother.
18. Only graduates need apply.
19. As soon as he saw a bear approaching, he climbed up a tree.
20. I am as tall as you.
21. He is as tall as his elder brother.
22. Ram is more intelligent than his brother.

23. Shakespeare is the greatest English dramatist.
24. Bombay is bigger than any other town in India.
25. He can do as well as his brother.
26. I know this place as well as you do.
27. Iron is the most useful of all metals.
28. She is too proud to beg.
29. The tree is too high for me to climb.
30. My father is too weak to walk.
31. I lived only a few years in Bihar.
32. Only a few women can keep a secret.
33. Keep quiet.
34. Remember me.
35. All the children cried.
36. I always get up in the morning.
37. Look before you leap. (Don't leap ....)
38. He went to school everyday.
39. He is an excellent artist.
40. You must have seen the Taj Mahal.

EXERCISE 38

Change the following into affirmative sentences without altering the sense:—

1. He is never sure.
2. Your conduct is not decent.
3. This is not reliable.
4. He was not kind.
5. It is not wise to waste money.
6. He is not alive to the faults of his son.
7. No one is always careful.
8. No one will deny it.
9. I shall never forget it.
10. God is not mortal.
11. He is no fool.
12. She is not guilty.
13. She did not disbelieve me.
14. Brutus was not without love for Caesar.
15. There is no one who will not die one day.
16. Old men are not always wise.
17. There was no one present who did not shed tears at his death.
18. I am not without money.
19. She is not without hope.
20. There is no rose without a thorn.

21. She did not fail to catch the ball.
22. None but a fool would behave like that.
23. None but she can do it.
24. None but the rich can travel by aeroplane.
25. None but Mohit will solve it.
26. No sooner had they heard the bell than they ran outside.
27. No sooner had he seen the tiger than he fled.
28. No sooner did I enter the hall than the lecture began.
29. No sooner did I go out than it began to rain.
30. He is no mean man.
31. He does not lead a happy life.
32. There is no man who has no failings.
33. We did not find many books on the table.
34. It is not always easy to help someone.
35. There is no smoke without fire.
36. Mohan is not as strong as Sohan.
37. He is not better than his elder brother.
38. No other city in the world is as rich as London.
39. No other leader in India was as great as Mahatma Gandhi.
40. He is so poor that he can't buy a watch.
41. He could not catch the train.
42. None but the brave deserves the fair.
43. They left no plan untried.

9. Interchange of Interrogative and Assertive Sentences

कुछ Interrogative Sentences ऐसे होते हैं जिनका अभिप्राय प्रश्न पूछना नहीं होता है। वैसे Interrogative Sentences को बिना अर्थ/भाव बदले Assertive Sentences में परिवर्तित किया जा सकता है। ठीक वैसे ही Assertive Sentences को बिना अर्थ/भाव बदले Interrogative Sentences में परिवर्तित किया जा सकता है। इस प्रकार के interchanging के लिए कुछ नियम हैं जिन्हें यहाँ बतलाया जा रहा है।

1. Anomalous Finite से शुरु होने वाले Interrogative Sentences को Assertive Sentences में transform करने की विधि :—

(i) Interrogative Sentences में प्रयुक्त verb + subject के word-order के बदले वाक्य में subject + verb का word-order दें।

(ii) यदि Interrogative Sentence में not/no या कोई अन्य negative word हो तो अभीष्ट Assertive Sentence में इसका लोप कर दें। यदि Interrogative Sentence में कोई Negative word प्रयुक्त न हो तो अभीष्ट Assertive Sentence में not/no/never या कोई अन्य उपयुक्त negative word दें।

(iii) note of interrogation के जगह पर full stop दें।

Interrogative	*Assertive*
Am I a thief ?	I am not a thief.
Am I not right ?	I am right.
Is she beautiful ?	She is not beautiful.
Can a man live for ever ?	A man cannot live for ever.
Do I not love you ?	I love you.
Did she not abuse you ?	She abused you.
Shall I ever forget you ?	I shall never forget you.
Can the blind see ?	The blind cannot see.
Have I no love for you ?	I have love for you.

इसी प्रकार Assertive Sentences को Interrogative Sentences में transform किया जा सकता है।

Assertive	*Interrogative*
The deaf cannot hear.	Can the deaf hear ?
He is innocent.	Is he not innocent ?
Human nature cannot change.	Can human nature change ?

I know her.	Don't I know her ?
She loves me.	Does she not love me ?
I do not vex her.	Do I vex her ?
I did not tell a lie.	Did I tell a lie ?
He abused me.	Did he not abuse me ?

2. who से शुरु होनेवाले Interrogative Sentences को Assertive में transform करने के लिए everyone/no one/nobody/ none का प्रयोग करते हैं। Everyone का प्रयोग तब करते हैं जब Interrogative sentence में negative word प्रयुक्त रहता है। No one/none/nobody का प्रयोग तब करते हैं जब Interrogative Sentence में negative word प्रयुक्त नहीं रहता है। जैसे :—

Interrogative	*Assertive*
Who does not know Gandhijee ?	Everyone knows Gandhijee.
Who does not love his country ?	Everyone loves his country.
Who would not run from a lion ?	Everyone would run from a lion.
Who can surpass her in beauty ?	No one can surpass her in beauty.
Who has seen the wind ?	No one has seen the wind.
Who can put up with such an insult ?	None can put up with such an insult.
Who is greater than God ?	No one is greater than God.
Who has no fear in the world ?	Everyone has fear in the world.

इसी प्रकार **'who'** का प्रयोग कर Everyone/no one/none/nobody से शुरु होने वाले Assertive Sentences को Interrogative Sentences में transform किया जा सकता है। जैसे :—

Assertive	*Interrogative*
Everyone wishes to live long.	Who does not wish to live long ?
Everyone would cry when struck.	Who would not cry when struck ?
Everyone would love his motherland.	Who would not love his motherland ?
Everyone likes to get money.	Who does not like to get money ?
No one can climb the sky.	Who can climb the sky ?
No one will tolerate such injustice.	Who will tolerate such injustice ?
No one is without problems.	Who is without problems ?

3. निम्नलिखित उदाहरणों को ध्यान से देखें और transformation की प्रक्रिया को समझें।

Interrogative	*Affirmative*
1. When will he become a doctor ?	He will never become a doctor.
2. When will you have sense ?	You will never have sense.
3. When can their glory fade ?	Their glory can never fade.
4. How can I repay your kindness ?	I can never repay your kindness.
5. How can man better die than facing fearful odds ?	Man cannot die better than facing fearful odds.
6. Where will he not be respected ?	He will be respected everywhere.
7. Where will you have peace ?	You will have peace nowhere.
8. What though the field be lost ?	It does not matter even if the field is lost.
9. What if you are stronger than I ?	It does not matter much even though you are stronger than I.
10. What does it matter if I lose ?	It does not matter much even if I lose.
11. What more can I do ?	I can do nothing more.
12. Why waste time here ?	It is no use wasting time here. It is useless to waste time here. It is extremely foolish to waste time here.
13. Why eat so much ?	It is no use eating so much. It is useless to eat so much. It is extremely improper to eat so much.
14. Why cry over spilt milk ?	It is no use crying over spilt milk. It is no use to cry over spilt milk. It is mere waste of time to cry over spilt milk.

Worked out Examples

Transformation of Interrogative Sentences into Assertive Sentences.

Interrogative	*Assertive*
1. Am I not a fly like thee ?	I am a fly like thee.
2. Am I a lion ?	I am not a lion.
3. Are you not a thief ?	You are a thief.
4. Have I not warned you ?	I have warned you.
5. Did they help me ?	They did not help me.
6. Were you not absent ?	You were absent.
7. Shall I ever forget your kindness ?	I shall never forget your kindness.

8. Can the blind see ?	The blind cannot see.
9. Can the leopard change its spot ?	The leopard cannot change its spot.
10. Can a man live for ever ?	A man cannot live for ever.
11. Can anyone put up with such an insult ?	No one can put up with such an insult.
12. Can any man eat grass ?	No man can eat grass.
13. Can a mother forget her son ?	A mother cannot forget her son.
14. Can we see Mrs. Indira Gandhi again ?	We cannot see Mrs. Indira Gandhi again.
15. Should one not help the poor ?	One should help the poor.
16. Is money everything ?	Money is not everything.
17. Is blood not thicker than water ?	Blood is thicker than water.
18. Does he not smoke ?	He smokes.
19. Does anything succeed like success ?	Nothing succeeds like success.
20. Were we born simply to die ?	We were not born simply to die.
21. Does he know me ?	He does not know me.
22. Can it be true ?	It cannot be true.
23. If you prick us, do we not bleed ?	If you prick us we bleed.
24. Is there anything greater than love ?	There is nothing greater than love.
25. Who would not run from a lion ?	Everyone would run from a lion.
26. Who can put up with such an insult ?	No one can put up with such an insult.
27. Who would not love his country ?	Everyone would love his country.
28. Who can challenge God ?	None can challenge God.
29. Who can describe the beauty of the Taj Mahal ?	No one can describe the beauty of the Taj Mahal.
30. Who does not want to be rich ?	Everyone wants to be rich.
31. Who would not hate such a liar ?	Everyone would hate such a liar.
32. Who does not know Gandhijee ?	Everyone knows Gandhijee.
33. Who else could have stolen it ?	Nobody else could have stolen it.
34. Who could do better under the circumstances ?	No one could do better under the circumstances.
35. Who would not cry when beaten ?	Everyone would cry when beaten.
36. Who cares for the poor ?	Nobody cares for the poor.

37. Who has no problem ? — Everyone has problems.
38. Who is here so rude as not to love his country ? — There is none here so rude as not to love his country.
39. Why waste time in this fruitless occupation ? — It is useless to waste time in this fruitless occupation.
40. When will he become a gentleman ? — He will never become a gentleman.
41. How can I repay his kindness ? — I can never repay his kindness.
42. How can I cheat her ? — I cannot cheat her.
43. What if you don't give me money ? — It does not matter much even though you don't give me money.
44. What if you are the son of a minister ? — It does not matter much even though you are the son of a minister.
45. What more can I do for you ? — I can do nothing more for you.
46. What if nobody helps me ? — It does not matter much even though nobody helps me.

Transformation of Sentences into Questions

Assertive	*Interrogative/Question*
1. He is a good man.	Is he not a good man ?
2. I am not guilty.	Am I guilty ?
3. They will not help you.	Will they help you ?
4. He does not drink.	Does he drink ?
5. She spends a lot on her dress.	Does she not spend a lot on her dress ?
6. She helped you.	Did she not help you ?
7. The deaf cannot hear.	Can the deaf hear ?
8. The blind cannot see.	Can the blind see ?
9. Man is mortal.	Is man not mortal ?
10. The leopard cannot change its spots.	Can the leopard change its spots ?
11. A man cannot live for ever.	Can a man live for ever ?
12. There is nothing better than a busy life.	Is there anything better than a busy life ?
13. This is not the kind of dress to wear in school.	Is this the kind of dress to wear in school ?
14. The beauty of Nature is beyond description.	Is the beauty of Nature not beyond description ?
15. I have warned you of this danger over and over again.	Have I not warned you of this danger over and over again ?
16. Money is not everything.	Is money everything ?
17. I shall never forget those happy days.	Shall I ever forget those happy days ?

18. No one can put up with such an insult.	Can anyone put up with such an insult ?
19. Human nature cannot change.	Can human nature change ?
20. It cannot be true.	Can it be true ?
21. Knowledge is power.	Is knowledge not power ?
22. This is not the way to behave towards elders.	Is this the way to behave towards elders ?
23. Nothing succeeds like success.	Does anything succeed like success ?
24. This book is of no use to me.	Of what use is this book to me ?
25. Everyone knows Gandhijee.	Who does not know Gandhijee ?
26. Everyone wants to be rich.	Who does not want to be rich ?
27. Everyone would love his country.	Who would not love his country ?
28. None can put up with such an insult.	Who can put up with such an insult ?
29. No one could do better under the circumstances.	Who could do better under the circumstances ?
30. No one can touch the sky.	Who can touch the sky ?
31. He will never do that.	Will he ever do that ?
32. Nobody will vote for him.	Who will vote for him ?
33. Everyone is ready to die for his country.	Who is not ready to die for his country ?

EXERCISE 39

Transform the following into assertive sentences :—

1. Am I your enemy ?
2. Am I not innocent ?
3. Are you not a bad man ?
4. Have I not warned you ?
5. Is she not rich ?
6. It she not guilty ?
7. Is man not mortal ?
8. Do I not love you ?
9. Doesn't an honest man suffer ?
10. Does she help us ?
11. Does he come everyday in time ?
12. Did I quarrel with her ?
13. Did she not warn you ?
14. Were we not tired ?
15. Shall I ever forget his kindness ?
16. Shall we not win the match ?
17. Can the blind see ?
18. Do the deaf hear ?

19. Can human nature change ?
20. Can the leopard change its spots ?
21. Can a man live for ever ?
22. Can man stand against fate ?
23. Should he beat the old man ?
24. Is there anything better than a busy life ?
25. If you prick us, do we not bleed ?
26. Is this the kind of dress to wear in school ?
27. Shall I ever forget those happy days ?
28. Does anything succeed like success ?
29. Who would not run from a lion ?
30. Who can put up with such an insult ?
31. Who is here so rude as not to love his country ?
32. Who does not love his motherland ?
33. Who would not love his motherland ?
34. Who can be more faithful than a true friend ?
35. Who can surpass her in dancing ?
36. Who would not cry when struck ?
37. Who likes to be poor ?
38. Who does not want to lead a happy life ?
39. Who will jump forty feet high ?
40. What more can I do ?
41. How can man die better than facing fearful odds ?
42. How can I repay him ?
43. When can her glory fade ?
44. When will you understand the ways of the world ?
45. What could we do without your help ?
46. Where can we go without money ?
47. Why cry over spilt milk ?
48. Of what use is this ring to me ?
49. What though the field be lost ?
50. What if you are the friend of a governor ?

EXERCISE 40

Transform the following into Interrogative Sentences:—

1. Blood is thicker than water.
2. I can never forget his kindness.
3. He is not a simple man.
4. He loves all of us.
5. I want to help you.
6. She always abuses me.
7. I don't drink.

8. They should not laugh at him.
9. I shall never forget your kindness.
10. They will not help you.
11. I tried to see you.
12. He cannot change his nature.
13. This is not the way to behave towards your elders.
14. There is nothing greater than love.
15. You promised to help me.
16. Everyone wants to earn money.
17. Everyone knows Gandhijee.
18. Everyone knows that honesty is the best policy.
19. Everyone loves his country.
20. Everyone has desire.
21. Everyone likes to be respected.
22. Everyone would run from a lion.
23. No one can touch the sky.
24. Nobody will believe it.
25. Everybody has heard of Jesus Christ.
26. No one can put up with such an insult.
27. No one will believe your honesty.
28. No one could do better under the circumstances.
29. A man cannot live for ever.
30. You will have peace nowhere.
31. There is none here so rude as not to love his country.
32. You have never seen such a beautiful sight.
33. The blind cannot see.
34. The deaf cannot hear.
35. Human nature cannot change.
36. No one would defeat him in wrestling.
37. He will never be an engineer.
38. Nothing succeeds like success.
39. Everyone would cry when struck.
40. All human beings are mortal.
41. The beauties of Nature are beyond description.
42. Never was there such a beautiful sunset as this.
43. Grapes cannot be gathered from thistles.
44. Nobody could oppose him.
45. Everyone is ready to die for the country.
46. We shall bleed if you prick us.
47. A father cannot forget his son.
48. A leopard cannot change its spots.
49. This is not the kind of dress to wear in school.
50. No one saw such a beautiful sunset as this.

10. Interchange of Exclamatory and Assertive Sentences

Exclamatory Sentence आश्चर्य, दुःख, सुख, आनन्द, क्रोध, नफरत, प्रशंसा या इच्छा की तीव्र अभिव्यक्ति है जिसे सरल एवं स्पष्ट रूप से व्यक्त कर Assertive Sentence में transform किया जा सकता है। उदाहरण के लिए मान लें कि आप एक सुन्दर दृश्य देखते हैं और आपके मुख से अचानक निकल जाता है—कितना सुन्दर यह दृश्य है !—How beautiful the scene is ! आपका यह कथन एक Exclamatory Sentence है । इसी बात को आप सरल एव स्पष्ट रूप से कह सकते हैं—यह दृश्य बहुत सुन्दर है—The scene is very beautiful और यह एक Assertive Sentence है । अतः Exclamatory Sentences के अर्थ/भाव समझ कर उसे Assertive Sentences में transform किया जा सकता है तथा ठीक उसी प्रकार Assertive Sentences को Exclamatory Sentences में transform किया जा सकता है। यहाँ transformation की प्रक्रिया को समझने के लिए कुछ नियम बतलाए जा रहे हैं जिन्हें गहराई से अध्ययन करें।

1. What/How से शुरु होने वाले Exclamatory Sentences को Assertive में बदलने का नियम :—

(a) Assertive Sentence की शुरुआत Subject + Verb के शब्द-क्रम से करें।

(b) what/how के बाद adjective/adverb हो तो what/how के बदले very दें। अगर what के बाद noun आये तो what के बदले **great, fine, lovely, wonderful, strange, peculiar, terrible** इत्यादि में से किसी एक adjective का प्रयोग करें।

(i) What a good book it is !
It is a very good book.

(ii) What a beautiful scene this is !
This is a very beautiful scene.

(iii) How fast he runs !
He runs very fast.

(iv) How cold it is !
It is very cold.

(v) What a problem it is !
It is a great problem.

(vi) What a fall it is !
It is a terrible fall.
It is a great/big fall.

(vii) What piece of work is man !
Man is a strange piece of work.
Man is a wonderful piece of work.

(viii) What a creature it is !
It is a peculiar/strange/wonderful creature.

(ix) What a fool you are !
You are a great fool.

(x) What a sight it is !
It is a lovely sight.

Note : यदि Exclamatory Sentences में Subject तथा Verb लुप्त हो तो Assertive में बदलते समय वाक्य के भाव/अर्थ के अनुसार उपयुक्त Subject तथा Verb अपने मन से दे दें। जैसे :—

(i) What a fall !
It was a great fall./It is a great fall.

(ii) What a lame excuse !
It is a very lame excuse.

(iii) How funny !
It is very funny.

(iv) What a fun !
It is a great fun.

(v) What a place !
It is a lovely/beautiful/strange place.

2. यदि Exclamatory Sentence Would that, O that, Oh that, O for, Oh for, If I could only, Oh if I could only इत्यादि में से किसी एक से शुरु हो तो Assertive में बदलते समय Sentence प्रायः I wish या I earnestly desire से शुरु किया जाता है।

(i) Would that he were alive !
I wish he were alive.

(ii) Would that I had not wasted my time, when I was young !
I wish I had not wasted my time when I was young.

(iii) O that the desert were my dwelling-place !
I wish that the desert were my dwelling-place.

(iv) Oh that I had the wings of a dove !
I wish that I had the wings of a dove.

(v) O for a draught of ice-cold water !
I wish I had a draught of ice-cold water.

(vi) Oh for a grand palace to livę in !
I wish I had a grand palace to live in.

(vii) If I could only gain the first prize !
I wish I could gain the first prize.
I earnestly desire to gain the first prize.

3. कुछ Exclamatory Sentences **Infinitive (to + verb)** से शुरू होते हैं। इन्हें It is strange + that clause का रूप देकर Assertive में transform किया जा सकता है।

(i) To think of our meeting here !
It is strange that we should meet here.

(ii) To think of my seeing you here !
It is strange that I should see you here.

4. कुछ Exclamatory Sentences के दो भाग होते हैं और वे **'and'** से जुड़े रहते हैं। ऐसे Sentences का परिवर्तन इस प्रकार होता है—It is + adjective (strange/astonishing/shocking/mean) + that clause containing should. जैसे:—

(i) A fireman and afraid of sparks !
It is strange/astonishing that a fireman should be afraid of sparks.

(ii) Such a man and my husband !
It is shocking that such a man should be my husband.

5. कुछ Exclamatory Sentences **How + adjective + of** से शुरु होते हैं। इन्हें Assertive में बदलने की प्रक्रिया को निम्नलिखित उदाहरणों द्वारा समझें :—

(i) How kind of him to save me !
He was kind enough to save me.

(ii) How foolish of me to marry her !
I was foolish enough to marry her.

6. कुछ Exclamatory Sentences **Alas** से शुरु होते हैं। ऐसे sentences को Assertive में transform करने के लिए अर्थानुसार It is extremely sad/It is sad to think इत्यादि से शुरु करें :—

(i) Alas that he died so young !
It is extremely sad that he died so young.

(ii) Alas that youth should pass away !
It is sad to think that youth should pass away.

7. कुछ Sentences के पहले Bravo !/ Hurrah ! / Fie ! Fie ! Exclamatory Sound का प्रयोग रहता है। ऐसे Exclamatory Sound + Sentence को Single Affirmative Sentence में इस प्रकार transform किया जा सकता है :—

Bravo ! + Sentence = It is a matter of praise + that + clause
Hurrah ! + Sentence = It is a matter of joy + that + clause
Fie ! Fie ! + Sentence = It is a matter of contempt + that + clause

(i) Bravo ! You have done well.
It is a matter of praise that you have done well.

(ii) Hurrah ! We have won the match.
It is a matter of joy that we have won the match.

(iii) Fie ! Fie ! You are a thief.
It is a matter of contempt that you are a thief.

8. Some Peculiar Examples

1. What would I not give to see her happy !
I would give anything to see her happy.!

2. Too late ! Too late ! You cannot enter now !
It is now too late for you to enter.

3. A horse ! A horse ! My kingdom for a horse.
A horse I must have, even at the price of my kingdom.

4. Death before dishonour !
It is better to die than to be dishonoured.

5. O what misery awaits a wasted youth !
Nothing can describe the misery that awaits a wasted youth.

6. How are the mighty fallen !
The mighty are indeed fallen.
The mighty are fallen low.

7. Had I but come one hour sooner !
I wish I had come one hour sooner.

8. A student and afraid of books !
It is a pity that a student should be afraid of books.

9. Well done !
That was well done.
You have done well.

10. What sweet delight a quiet life brings !
A quiet life brings a very sweet delight.

Worked Out Examples

Change the following into Assertive Sentences.

1. What a charming sight it is !
It is a very charming sight.

2. What a beautiful girl she was !
She was a very beautiful girl.

3. How dark the night is !
The night is very dark.

4. What a terrible accident !
It was a terrible accident.

5. How sweetly she sings !
She sings very sweetly.

6. What fools we have been !
We have been big fools.

7. How sad was the sight of the deserted city !
The deserted city presented a very sad sight.

8. What a piece of work is man !
Man is a strange piece of work.

9. What a fool he was !
He was a great fool.

10. What a boy he is !
He is a peculiar boy.

11. What a day it was !
It was a fine day.

12. What a lovely rose !
This is a very lovely rose.

13. What a creature !
This is a peculiar/strange creature.

14. What an excuse !
It is a lame excuse.

15. How wonderful !
It is a very wonderful.

16. Would that I had not spent the money !
I wish I had not spent the money.

17. Would that I had never left my home !
I wish I had never left my home.

18. Would that my son were here today !
I wish my son were here today.

19. Would that she were my beloved !
I wish she were my beloved.

20. O that I were at home again !
I wish I were at home again.

21. O that I were young again !
I wish I were young again.

22. O that I were safe at home !
I wish I were safe at home.

23. Oh that I had not lived to see this day !
I wish I had not lived to see this day.

24. O for a cup of water !
I wish I had a cup of water.

25. O for the wings of a dove!
I wish I had the wings of a dove.

26. Oh for a good house !
I wish I had a good house.

27. If I could only gain the first prize!
I earnestly desire to get the first prize.
I wish that I could gain the first prize.

28. O if only I could raise the cover and look inside !
I wish I could raise the cover and look inside.

29. If only I could see my native land again !
I earnestly desire to see my native land again.
I wish I could see my native land again.
I should very much like to see my native land again.

30. If only I could find my lost love !
I wish I could find my lost love.

31. To think of her living here!
It is strange that she should live here.

32. A saint and afraid of ghosts!
It is strange that a saint should be afraid of ghosts.

33. A child and so brave !
It is astonishing/strange that a child should be so brave.

34. Such a leader and the builder of our nation !
It is shocking that such a leader should be the builder of our nation.

35. A fisherman and afraid of water !
It is strange that a fisherman should be afraid of water.

36. How kind of you to help me !
You were kind enough to help me.

37. How clever of him to cheat her !
He was clever enough to cheat her.

38. Alas ! He is no more.
It is sad that he is no more.

39. Alas, that she should die so young!
It is extremely sad that she should die so young.

40. Alas, that I should suffer for nothing !
It is extremely sad that I should suffer for nothing.

41. Hurrah ! We have defeated the enemies.
It is a matter of great joy that we have defeated the enemies.

42. Fie ! Fie ! You have cheated your friend.
It is a matter of contempt/shame that you have cheated your friend.

43. Bravo ! Well played.
It is a matter of praise that you played well.

44. How sweet are the uses of adversity !
Sweet, indeed, are the uses of adversity.

45. O what a fall was there, my countrymen !
That was a terrible fall, my countrymen.

46. Such a man he is !
He is a strange man.

47. That she should dare to oppose me !
It is strange that she should dare to oppose me.

48. What might be done, if men were wise !
Great things might be done, if men were wise.

49. Woe worth the day when I first met that woman !
It was an evil day when I first met that woman.

50. If only I could see him to reproach him for his ingratitude !
I wish I could see him to reproach him for his ingratitude.

Change the following into Exclamatory Sentences :

1. It is a very interesting story.
What an interesting story it is !

2. He drives the car very carefully.
How carefully he drives the car !

3. It was a terrible story.
What a terrible story it was !

4. The moon-lit night is very cool.
How cool the moon-lit night is !

5. The chair is very strong.
How strong the chair is !

6. He is a great fool.
What a fool he is !

7. Man is a strange piece of work.
What piece of work is man !

8. It is a lovely scene.
What a scene !

9. I wish I could see my beloved.
O that /Would that I could see my beloved !

10. I wish my son were alive.
O that/Would that my son were alive !

11. I wish I were a king.
Would that/O that I were a king !

12. I wish I were young again.
O that/Would that I were young again !

13. I wish I had a cup of wine.
O that /Would that I had a cup of wine !

14. I wish I had known that long ago.
O that/Would that I had known that long ago !

15. I wish I could get one more chance.
O that/Would that I could get one more chance !
If only I could get one more chance !
O for/Oh for one more chance !

16. I earnestly desire to see her.
If I could only see her !

17. It is strange that they should quarrel here.
To think of their quarrelling here !

18. It is shocking that such a woman should be my wife.
Such a woman and my wife !

19. It is astonishing that a soldier should be afraid of fighting.
A soldier and afraid of fighting !

20. It is a pity that a student should be afraid of hard labour.
A student and afraid of hard labour !

21. He was stupid enough to do that work.
How stupid of him to do that !

22. He was selfish enough to cheat his helper.
How selfish of him to cheat his helper !

23. I was foolish enough to give him my book.
How foolish of me to give him my book !

24. It is extremely sad that my best friend is no more.
Alas that my best friend is no more !

25. It is sad that he is ruined.
Alas ! He is ruined.

26. It is extremely sad to think that the poor should die of hunger.
Alas that the poor should die of hunger !

27. It is a matter of joy that we have won.
Hurrah! We have won.

28. It is a matter of contempt that you have cheated your mother.
Fie ! Fie ! You have cheated your mother.

29. It is a matter of praise that he won the medal.
Bravo ! He won the medal.

EXERCISE 41

Transform the following into Assertive Sentences :—

1. What a beautiful scene this is !
2. What a bad boy he is !
3. What a sight it is !
4. What a fool he is !
5. What a fall !
6. What piece of work is man !
7. How lovely were the flowers !
8. How fast she speaks !
9. How sad was the sight of the deserted city !
10. What a lame excuse !
11. What a foolish question to ask !
12. What a noble man !
13. How wonderful !
14. What a charming sight !
15. What a miserable life he leads !
16. What a miserable wretch he is !
17. What a fool he was !
18. What a creature this is !
19. What sweet delight a quiet life brings !
20. How beautiful these flowers are !
21. What a happy ending !
22. How beautifully she dances!
23. How are the mighty fallen !
24. How beautiful is night !
25. How cold you are !
26. What a sight was there!
27. What a wonderful creature a tiger is !
28. How funny !
29. Would that he were alive !
30. Would that I had never seen her !

31. Would that I had not wasted my time when I was young !
32. Would that the desert were my dwelling-place !
33. O that I were safe at home !
34. O that I were young again !
35. O that I could see my beloved !
36. Oh that she were living to this day !
37. Oh that the jungle were my dwelling place !
38. Oh for a glass of water !
39. O that I had the wings of a dove !
40. O for a draught of ice-cold water !
41. O for the might that laid the traitor low !
42. O for a true friend !
43. If only I could see him to reproach him for his ingratitude !
44. If only I could get success !
45. O if I could only raise the cover and look inside !
46. If only I had thought of this before !
47. If I could only gain the first prize !
48. If only I could see my native land again !
49. If only I could see my brother alive !
50. If only I had met her a day ago !

EXERCISE 42

Transform the following into Assertive Sentences :—

1. To think of his forgetting his own name !
2. To think of his becoming so poor !
3. To think of our meeting here !
4. To think of his winning a lottery !
5. A fireman and afraid of sparks !
6. A leader and afraid of crowd !
7. A boy of sixteen and so strong !
8. Such a girl and my beloved !
9. A beggar and so rich !
10. So dishonest and a priest !
11. How wise of you to solve the problem !
12. How wicked of him to throw stones at him !
13. How kind of her to help me !
14. How foolish of you to be unaware of the fact !
15. Alas ! My friend is no more.
16. Alas that he should die so young !
17. Alas that he should spoil his life !
18. Fie ! Fie ! You have deceived your own brother.
19. Fie ! Fie ! You are a liar.

20. Hurrah ! We have won the match.
21. Hurrah ! The shield is ours.
22. Bravo ! You have saved the life of the child.
23. Bravo ! He stood first.
24. What might be done, if men were wise !
25. Death before dishonour !
26. Well done !
27. Water ! Water ! My purse for water !
28. Too late ! Too late ! He is now no more.
29. O what misery awaits a wasted youth !
30. How dangerous a thing is a little knowledge !
31. Alas that youth should pass away !
32. What a merry time we had of it last night !

EXERCISE 43

Transform the following into Exclamatory Sentences :—

1. It is very hot.
2. This is a very beautiful scene.
3. It is a very foolish idea.
4. She is very careless.
5. He writes very beautifully.
6. It was a big fall.
7. He was a great fool.
8. We had a very happy time.
9. Man is a wonderful piece of work.
10. He looks very sad.
11. It is a great problem.
12. It is a peculiar sound.
13. He is a strange man.
14. It is very funny.
15. It was a terrible accident.
16. I wish I had the wings of a dove.
17. I wish that I had not lived to see such a day.
18. I wish I had never left my home.
19. I wish I were young again.
20. I wish I had a draught of ice-cold water.
21. I wish to see him again.
22. I wish I could win the first prize.
23. I earnestly desire to see my beloved.
24. I wish I could raise the cover and look inside.
25. I wish to be at home again.
26. I wish I had a grand palace to live in.

27. He leads a very miserable life.
28. I have a keen desire to get the first prize.
29. I earnestly desire to regain my position.
30. It is strange that we should meet here.
31. It is shocking that such a man should be my friend.
32. It is strange that I should see a woman in this lonely place.
33. It is strange that a fireman should be afraid of sparks.
34. It is strange that a sailor should be afraid of water.
35. It is strange that I should see a ghost here.
36. He was kind enough to give me bread.
37. He was stupid enough to pull the dog by the tail.
38. She was clever enough to cheat me.
39. It is sad that he is no more.
40. It is extremely sad that he died so young.
41. It is a matter of contempt that you are working against the country.
42. It is a matter of joy that we have defeated them.
43. It is a matter of praise that you have won the medal.
44. It is very sad that Mr. Mathur is dead.
45. A horse I must have even at the price of my kingdom.
46. Nothing can describe the misery that awaits a misguided youth.
47. I wish that the forest were my dwelling place.
48. It was an evil day when I first met that girl.
49. It is surprising that a student should be afraid of hard labour.
50. That was a very happy ending.

11. Removal of 'Too'

इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें :—

1. **He is too weak to walk.**
   वह इतना कमजोर है कि वह टहल नहीं सकता है।
2. **The sun is too hot to go out at present.**
   धूप इतनी तेज है कि कोई भी इस वक्त बाहर नहीं निकल सकता है।
3. **He is too dull for a sportsman.**
   वह इतना सुस्त है कि वह एक खिलाड़ी नहीं हो सकता है।
4. **The tea is too hot.**
   चाय उचित से ज्यादा गर्म है।
   चाय को जितनी गर्म रहनी चाहिए उससे यह ज्यादा गर्म है।
5. **It is too much for me.**
   यह इतना बुरा (धक्का पहुँचाने वाला) है कि मैं इसे बर्दाश्त नहीं कर सकता हूँ।
6. **He is too eager for praise.**
   वह प्रशंसा के लिए अत्यधिक (over) अधीर है।

ऐसे वाक्यों में **'too'** का प्रयोग किसी गुण या दोष के अतिशयता (उचित से अधिक, excess) का भाव व्यक्त करने के लिए होता है। ऐसे वाक्यों के अर्थ/भाव में परिवर्तन किएं बिना वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त **too** को हटाया जा सकता है। नीचे different groups में कुछ worked out examples दिए जा रहे हैं जिन्हें गहराई से अध्ययन कर transformation की प्रक्रिया को समझने की कोशिश करें :—

[A]

He is He is	too so	weak weak	to walk. that he cannot walk.

1. **Sita is too slow to win the race.**
   Sita is so slow that she cannot win the race.
   (Sita is so slow that she will not win the race.)
2. **He is too old to learn new tricks.**
   He is so old that he cannot learn new tricks.
   (He is so old that he will not learn new tricks.)
3. **He is too upright to accept a bribe.**
   He is so upright that he cannot accept a bribe.
   (He is so upright that he does not accept a bribe.)
   (He is so upright that he will not accept a bribe.)

4. He was too late to hear the first speech.
He was so late that he could not hear the first speech.
(He was so late that he did not hear the first speech.)

5. I was too weak to play.
I was so weak that I could not play.

6. She is too shy to ask for help.
She is so shy that she cannot ask for help.
(She is so shy that she will not ask for help.)

7. The boys were too tired to get back.
The boys were so tired that they could not get back.
(The boys were so tired that they did not get back.)

8. The news is too good to be true.
The news is so good that it cannot be true.
(The news is so good that it does not seem to be true.)

9. They are too selfish to be true friends.
They are so selfish that they cannot be true friends.

10. She speaks too fast to be understood.
She speaks so fast that she cannot be understood.

11. The sun is too hot for us to go out at present.
The sun is so hot that we cannot go out at present.

12. The tree is too high for me to climb.
The tree is so high that I cannot climb it.

13. Mount Everest is too high for one to climb.
Mount Everest is so high that one cannot climb it.

[B]

The mountain was	too high	to climb.
The mountain was	so high	that one could not climb it.

14. The tree is too high to climb.
The tree is so high that one cannot climb it.
(The tree is so high that no one can climb it.)

15. The sun is too hot to go out.
The sun is so hot that one cannot go out.

16. The sight was too dreadful to be seen.
The sight was so dreadful that one could not see it.
(The sight was so dreadful that it was not fit to be seen.)

17. It is never too late to mend.
It is never so late that one cannot mend oneself.
(It is better to mend even at a late hour than never to mend at all.)

[C]

He is	too	dull	for a sportsman.
He is	so	dull	that he cannot be a spórtsman.

18. He is too slow for a runner.
He is so slow that he cannot be a runner.
19. He is too ignorant for a watchman.
He is so ignorant that he cannot be a watchman.

[D]

20. The fact is too evident to require proof.
The fact is so evident that it does not require proof.
(The fact is self-evident.)
21. She was too much distressed to be able to speak.
She was so much distressed that she was not able to speak.
22. The results were too bad to be published.
The results were so bad that they were not fit to be published.
23. The fruit is too unripe to be eaten.
The fruit is so unripe that it is not worth eating.
24. His conduct is too bad to mend.
His conduct is so bad that it cannot be ment.
25. It is too early to start the work.
It is so early that we need not start the work now.
26. It is too much for me.
It is so bad/shocking that I cannot bear it.
27. The sun is too hot for the baby.
The sun is so hot that the baby cannot bear it.
28. The tea is too hot for me.
The tea is so hot that I cannot take it.
29. He is too old for the job.
He is so old that he is not fit for the job.
30. He is too stupid for such a post.
He is so stupid that he is not fit for such a post.
31. He is too strong for me.
He is so strong that I am no match for him.
32. The amount is too small for me.
The amount is so small that it cannot serve my purpose.
33. My agony is too deep for words.
My agony is so deep that I cannot express it in words.

34. **My heart is too full for words.**
My heart is so full that I cannot express my feelings.

35. **She was too deeply affected to speak.**
She was so deeply affected that she was not able to speak.

36. **She was weeping too bitterly to make any answer.**
She was weeping so bitterly that she could not make any answer.

37. **The box is too heavy for any man to lift it single-handed.**
The box is so heavy that no man can lift it single-handed.

38. **The work is not too difficult for me to complete.**
The work is not so difficult that I cannot complete it.

39. **The pencil is too small to write with.**
The pencil is so small that one cannot write with.

40. **He is too late for the train.**
He is so late that he will not catch the train.

[E]

She is too intelligent	not to understand it.
She is so intelligent	that she will understand it.

41. **He is too kind-hearted not to forgive me.**
He is so kind-hearted that he will forgive me.

42. **He is too merciful not to take pity on the poor and the needy.**
He is so merciful that he takes pity on the poor and the needy.

43. **His speech was too impressive not to impress the audience.**
His speech was so impressive that it impressed the audience.

44. **The house is too large not to accommodate all of us.**
The house is so large that it can/will accommodate all of us.

45. **Jesus Christ was too kind-hearted not to love even his enemies.**
Jesus Christ was so kind-hearted that he loved even his enemies.

46. **She is too clever not to understand the tricks.**
She is so clever that she will understand the tricks.

[F]

The tea is	too hot.	
The tea is	hotter	than it is proper.
The tea is	hotter	than it should be.

47. He is too weak.
He is weaker than it is proper.
He is weaker than he should be.

48. Ram is too negligent.
Ram is more negligent than it is proper.
Ram is more negligent than he should be.

49. Sita is too dull.
Sita is duller than it is proper.
Sita is duller than she should be.

50. He runs too fast.
He runs faster than it is proper.
He runs faster than he should.
(Here don't write 'be' after should.)

51. She was too stupid.
She was more stupid than it was proper.
She was more stupid than she should have been.

52. He came too early.
He came earlier than he should have.

53. He ran too slowly.
He ran more slowly than it was proper.
He ran more slowly than he should have.

[G]

54. He is too eager for praise.
He is over eager for praise.

55. Too many cooks spoil the broth.
Cooks beyond a proper limit will spoil the broth.

56. He is too attentive.
He is over attentive.

57. I ate too much.
I ate more than enough.

58. He is being too kind.
He is being extremely kind.

EXERCISE 44

Remove 'too' from the following sentences without altering their sense.

1. He is too weak to play.
2. Sita is too fat to dance.
3. The boys are too tired to work.
4. She is too proud to beg.

5. She is too shy to ask for help.
6. We are too poor to keep a servant.
7. He was too proud to learn.
8. My son was too weak to play.
9. You are too lazy to work.
10. She was too frightened to speak a word.
11. He was too late to hear the speech.
12. The news is too good to be true.
13. She is too talkative to be silent.
14. He is too selfish to be a true friend.
15. He is too strong to be beaten.
16. She was too weak to be promoted to the next higher class.
17. The wall is too strong to be broken.
18. He speaks too fast to be followed.
19. Human life is too short to be properly enjoyed.
20. He was too clever to be cheated.
21. He is too innocent to be cheated easily.
22. The wall is too high for me to jump.
23. The problem is too difficult for them to solve.
24. The tree is too high for her to climb.
25. This grammar is too difficult for a child to understand.
26. The hat was too small for me to wear.
27. The sun is too hot for us to go out at present.
28. It is too cold to go out.
29. It was too dark to see anything.
30. The pencil is too small to write with.
31. The problem is too difficult to be solved.
32. The sight was too dreadful to be seen.
33. It is never too late to mend.
34. She is too slow for a good runner.
35. He is too dull for a sportsman.
36. He is too innocent for a leader.
37. She is too young for a bride.
38. She is too weak.
39. He runs too fast.
40. The weather is too cold.
41. The tea is too hot.
42. My brother is too busy.
43. He was too negligent.
44. He speaks too fast.
45. The water is too hot.

EXERCISE 45

Remove 'too' from the following sentences without altering their sense :—

1. The fact is too evident to require proof.
2. He was too much distressed to be able to utter a single word.
3. The results were too bad to be published.
4. The sight was too dreadful to be seen.
5. The mango is too unripe to be eaten.
6. The news is too much for me.
7. The tea is too hot for me.
8. The milk is too hot for me.
9. The house is too small for me.
10. The sun is too hot for me.
11. He is too strong for me.
12. The room is too small for us.
13. The work is too difficult for me.
14. The bride is too young for the man.
15. My pain is too deep for words.
16. You are too late for the train.
17. His heart is too full for words.
18. He is too young for the job.
19. He is too stupid for such a difficult post.
20. He is too ignorant for a postman.
21. She was too deeply affected to speak.
22. She was weeping too bitterly to make any answer.
23. The load is too heavy for any man to lift it single-handed.
24. The box was too heavy to be lifted.
25. The problem is not too difficult for him to solve.
26. His conduct is too bad to mend.
27. The room is too small for us to live in.
28. She is too eager for praise.
29. She was too attentive.
30. They are being too kind.
31. Too many cooks spoil the broth.
32. He has helped her too much.
33. We are never too old to learn.
34. He is too honest to accept bribe.
35. His words were too true to be disbelieved.
36. He can run too fast for us to catch him.
37. He is too honest to be a successful businessman.
38. He is too generous not to help everybody.

39. He is too clever not to understand my tricks.
40. Mahatma Gandhi was too kind-hearted not to love the poor.
41. My mother is too kind not to forgive me.
42. He is too intelligent not to understand it.
43. The queen's dress was too striking not to attract the attention of everybody present there.
44. He is not too weak to walk.
45. Don't be too eager for praise.
46. The sad news is too true.
(The sad news is unfortunately true.)

EXERCISE 46

Rewrite the following sentences using the adverb 'too'

Example : He is so lazy that he cannot work.
He is too lazy to work.

1. She is so proud that she cannot beg.
2. I am so tired that I cannot work.
3. He is so upright that he will not accept a bribe.
4. He was so weak that he could not play.
5. The rod is so strong that it cannot be broken.
6. He speaks so fast that he cannot be understood.
7. The scene was so horrible that it could not be seen.
8. He is so old that he cannot be employed.
9. The girl was so shy that she could not ask for help.
10. He was so late that he did not catch the train.
11. I was so tired that I did not do that work.
12. The news is so good that it cannot be true.
13. He is so selfish that he cannot be a saint.
14. The sun is so hot that we cannot go out.
15. The wall is so high that I cannot jump it.
16. The sight was so dreadful that it was not fit to be seen.
17. It is so cold that one cannot go out.
18. He is so stupid that he cannot be a detective.
19. He is so weak that he will not be a wrestler.
20. The tea is hotter than it should be.
21. She is weaker than she should be.
22. He runs more slowly than he should.
23. He came earlier than he should have come.
24. The fact is so evident that it does not require proof.
25. His conduct is so bad that it cannot be ment.
26. It is so bad that I cannot bear it.

27. The tea is so hot that I cannot take it.
28. He is so young that he is not fit for the post.
29. She was weeping so bitterly that she was not able to utter a single word.
30. One should not be over eager for praise.
31. He is so generous that he helps the poor and the needy.
32. She is so intelligent that she will understand it.
33. He is being extremely generous.
34. It is so shocking that I cannot bear it.
35. It is never so late that one cannot mend oneself.
36. She is so clever that she can cheat him.
37. The box was so heavy that it could not be lifted.
38. I shall be so busy tomorrow that I shall be unable to go to school.
39. Some men are so great that they will die for the country.
40. Cooks more than the required number spoil the broth.
41. The coffee is so hot that I cannot drink it.
42. She is so proud that she will not apologize.
43. The work is too heavy to be done by one man.
44. He ate more than enough.
45. Her suffering is so deep that she cannot express it in tears.

12. Degrees of Comparison

There are three degrees of comparison :

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
good	better	best
tall	taller	tallest
beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
fast	faster	fastest
well	better	best
swiftly	more swiftly	most swiftly

Formation of Comparative and Superlative

1. एक syllable के अधिकांश adjectives/adverbs में er/r जोड़कर Comparative तथा est/st जोड़कर Superlative बनाते हैं। यह नियम कुछ दो syllables वाले adjectives में भी लागू होता है।

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
	[adjectives]	
small	smaller	smallest
sweet	sweeter	sweetest
tall	taller	tallest
young	younger	youngest
high	higher	highest
strong	stronger	strongest
bright	brighter	brightest
dark	darker	darkest
kind	kinder	kindest
poor	poorer	poorest
clever	cleverer	cleverest
bold	bolder	boldest
brave	braver	bravest
fine	finer	finest
wise	wiser	wisest
white	whiter	whitest
large	larger	largest

[adverbs]

fast	faster	fastest
hard	harder	hardest
long	longer	longest
soon	sooner	soonest
late	later	latest
loud	louder	loudest
near	nearer	nearest
soon	sooner	soonest

Note : आप जानते हैं कि कुछ words प्रयोग के हिसाब से कभी adjectives हैं तो कभी adverbs। जैसें, "This is a fast train" में fast adjective है तो "This train runs fast" में fast adverb है।

2. अगर Positive degree के adjectives का अंत consonant+y से हो तो y को i में बदलने के बाद er जोड़कर Comparative और est जोड़कर Superlative बनाए जाते हैं। जैसे :—

happy	happier	happiest
silly	sillier	silliest
pretty	prettier	prettiest
easy	easier	easiest
wealthy	wealthier	wealthiest
heavy	heavier	heaviest
holy	holier	holiest
dry	drier	driest
merry	merrier	merriest

ऐसे adverbs जिनके अन्त ly से होते हैं उनके Comparative तथा Superlative क्रमशः more तथा most लगाकर बनाए जाते हैं। जैसे :—

swiftly	more swiftly	most swiftly
beautifully	more beautifully	most beautifully
skilfully	more skilfully	most skilfully
wisely	more wisely	most wisely
carefully	more carefully	most carefully
frequently	more frequently	most frequently

3. जब positive एक syllable का रहे; अंत में एक consonant रहे तथा उसके पहले एक vowel रहे तो er/est लगाने से पहले अंत वाले consonant को double कर दिया जाता है। जैसे :—

red	redder	reddest
big	bigger	biggest
hot	hotter	hottest
fat	fatter	fattest

sad	sadder	saddest
thin	thinner	thinnest
top	topper	toppest

4. तीन या तीन से अधिक syllables वाले Adjectives को प्रायः more तथा most लगाकर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative बनाते हैं। यह नियम कुछ दो syllables वाले adjectives के लिए भी लागू होता है। जैसे :—

beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
dangerous	more dangerous	most dangerous
proper	more proper	most proper
intelligent	more intelligent	most intelligent

इसी प्रकार innocent, laborious, learned, useful, courageous, industrious, difficult, splendid इत्यादि में more तथा most लगाकर क्रमशः Comparative तथा Superlative बनाया जाता है।

5.कुछ adjectives/adverbs ऐसे हैं जिनके Comparative तथा Superlative में नयेwords आते हैं। ऐसे adjectives/adverbs के तीनों forms को अच्छी तरह याद कर लें।

Irregular Comparison

[adjective]

good, well	better	best
bad, evil, ill	worse	worst
much, many	more	most
little	less, lesser	least
late	later, latter	latest, last
old	older, elder	oldest, eldest
far	farther	farthest
fore	former	foremost, first

[adverbs]

ill, badly	worse	worst
well	better	best
much	more	most
little	less	least
late	later	last
far	farther, further	farthest, furthest

पाँच ऐसे words हैं जो positive degree में adverbs हैं, परन्तु Comparative तथा Superlative में adjectives हैं।

far	farther	farthest
fore	further	furthest

in	inner	innermost, inmost
out	outer, utter	uttermost, utmost
up	upper	uppermost, upmost

6. बहुत सारे adverbs तथा कुछ adjectives ऐसे हैं जिनका प्रयोग Comparative तथा Superlative degree में नहीं होता है। जैसे :—now, then, where, once, there, here, circular, round, square, right, wrong, etc.

7. कुछ ऐसे Comparatives हैं जिन्हें Latin से लिया गया है। इनके Positive या Superlative degree नहीं होते। इनकी संख्या 12 है। इन शब्दों का अंत or से होता है। ये हैं :—

interior, exterior, ulterior, major, minor, inferior, superior, prior, anterior, posterior, senior, junior

इनमें से प्रथम पाँच का प्रयोग अब Comparative meaning के लिए नहीं होता है। इनका प्रयोग अब positive adjectives की ही तरह होता है। जैसे—

It is a major operation.
It is a matter of minor importance.
The interior wall of this house is made of wood.
The exterior wall of this house is made of brick.
He had ulterior motives in helping her.

अंतिम सातों का प्रयोग Comparative Adjectives की तरह होता है, परन्तु than के बदले to का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Geeta is inferior to Sita in beauty.
This chair is superior to that.
This event took place prior to that accident.
He is senior to me.
All his colleagues are junior to him.
I am senior to all my colleagues.

8. कुछ English Comparatives हैं जिनका प्रयोग अब Comparative meaning के लिए नहीं होता है। अब ये positive adjectives की तरह प्रयुक्त होते हैं। ये हैं—former, latter, elder, upper, neither, inner, outer, utter, etc.

He is my elder brother.
That woman was an utter fool.
The outer wall of this building is very strong.
He lives in the inner room.
She is my former landlady.

Interchange of Degrees of Comparison

हम यहाँ वाक्य के अर्थ/भाव में कोई परिवर्तन किए बिना वाक्य में प्रयुक्त adjectives के Degrees में परिवर्तन करेंगे।

Interchange of Positive and Comparative

कुछ वाक्यों में Positive degree के Adjectives को as......as या so ...... as के बीच में रखा जाता है। जैसे :—

He is as good as Ram.
He is not as good as Ram.
Sita is not so beautiful as Geeta.

ऐसे वाक्यों के Adjectives को Comparative में बदलने के लिए निम्नलिखित नियमों की सहायता लें।

(i) as .... as या so .... as को हटा दें।

(ii) Adjectives को Comparative degree का रूप दें।

(iii) यदि वाक्य Affirmative हो तो उसे Negative बना दें और यदि वाक्य Negative हो तो उसे Affirmative बना दें।

(iv) वाक्य के दूसरे भाग को नए वाक्य में पहले लिखें तथा पहले भाग को अंत में।

(v) Comparative के बाद than का प्रयोग करें।

Positive	***Comparative***
He is as good as Ram.	Ram is not better than he.
He is not as good as Ram.	Ram is better than he.
I am as tall as you.	You are not taller than I.
I am not as tall as you.	You are taller than I.
Sita is as beautiful as Geeta.	Geeta is not more beautiful than Sita.
She is not so good as Meena.	Meena is better than she.

इसी प्रकार ऐसे वाक्यों के Comparative degree को Positive degree में बदलने के लिए इन नियमों की सहायता लें :—

(i) Comparative degree के Adjective को Positive में बदलें।

(ii) Adjective को दो as (as .... as) के बीच में रखें।

(iii) than हटा दें।

(iv) यदि वाक्य Affirmative हो तो उसे Negative बना दें और यदि वाक्य Negative हो तो उसे Affirmative बना दें।

(v) वाक्य के दूसरे भाग को नये वाक्य में पहले रखें और पहले भाग को अंत में। जैसे :—

Comparative	***Positive***
You are duller than Mohan.	Mohan is not as dull as you.
You are not duller than Mohan.	Mohan is as dull as you.

Sita is more intelligent than I.	I am not as intelligent as Sita.
Sita is not more active than you.	You are as active as Sita.
He is better than you.	You are not as good as he.
You are not taller than Mohan.	Mohan is as tall as you.

इसी प्रकार कुछ Adverbs के degrees में परिवर्तन को देखें :—

A dog runs faster than a cat.	Comparative
A cat does not run as fast as a dog.	Positive
He does not read more carefully than I do.	Comparative
I read as carefully as he does.	Positive
I know him as well as you do.	Positive
You do not know him better than I do.	Comparative

Some Solved Examples

1.	He is as good as Ram.	Positive
	Ram is not better than he.	Comparative
2.	Sita is not as intelligent as Geeta.	Positive
	Geeta is more intelligent than Sita.	Comparative
3.	The pen is mightier than the sword.	Comparative
	The sword is not as mighty as the pen.	Positive
4.	Your brother is not stronger than my brother.	Positive
	My brother is as strong as your brother.	Comparative
5.	The aeroplane flies faster than birds	Comparative
	Birds do not fly so fast as the aeroplane.	Positive
6.	He does not run as fast as I	Positive
	I run faster than he.	Comparative
7.	They have more money than honesty.	Comparative
	They do not have as much honesty as money.	Positive
8.	I know him as well as you do.	Positive
	You do not know him better than I do.	Comparative
9.	She does not know you better than I do.	Comparative
	I know you as well as she does.	Positive
10.	I would as soon die as tell a lie.	Positive
	I would sooner die than tell a lie.	Comparative
	I would rather die than tell a lie.	Comparative
11.	A nobler man than Mahatma Gandhi was never born.	Comparative
	A man so noble as Mahatma Gandhi was never born.	Positive

Note : कुछ वाक्य ऐसे भी होते हैं, जिनका degree of comparison किसी निश्चित फार्मूले पर निर्भर न होकर वाक्य के अर्थ/भाव के अनुसार specific style से बदलता है। अतः वाक्य का अर्थ/भाव समझकर degree का रूपांतर करें।

EXERCISE 47

Change the Degree of Comparison, without changing the meaning.

1. He is as good as Mohan.
2. She is not as good as Geeta.
3. Ram is as tall as his brother.
4. Sita is not as beautiful as her sister.
5. They are as powerful as a king.
6. I am not as dull as you.
7. I am not so rich as he.
8. My brother is as strong as a lion.
9. This book is not so useful as that.
10. She is as intelligent as my sister.
11. Coffee is as tasteful as tea.
12. English is as easy as Hindi.
13. That girl was not as beautiful as Geeta.
14. Birds are not as useful as animals.
15. Mohan is not as tall as I.
16. A foolish friend is not as good as a wise enemy.
17. Jack is fatter than Tom.
18. You are more intelligent than your brother.
19. Milk is better than tea.
20. He is not duller than you.
21. Something is better than nothing.
22. The pen is mightier than the sword.
23. Lead is heavier than water.
24. Copper is not more useful than iron.
25. Bread is more useful than gold.
26. He is not more intelligent than I.
27. My sister is more beautiful than your sister.
28. Sita is as healthy as her mother.
29. The aeroplane flies faster than birds.
30. My dog runs faster than your dog.
31. He runs as fast as I.
32. The cat does not run as fast as the dog.
33. I know him better than you do.
34. They work as much as I do.

35. She knows you as well as I do.
36. She does not like you as much as I do.
37. He has more money than wisdom.
38. She can't help you as much as I can.
39. You can't run faster than a horse.
40. He reads more carefully than I.
41. I would as soon die as kill an infant.
42. He can solve the problem more wisely than I can.
43. This man has more money than brain.
44. A live ass is stronger than a dead lion.
45. A wise enemy is better than a foolish friend.
46. Good health is more important than riches
47. This story is not as interesting as that one.
48. I have more friends than enemies.
49. I know these wicked boys as well as you do.
50. It is easier to preach than to practise.

Interchange of Positive, Comparative and Superlative

एक वाक्य लें : —राम मेरे स्कूल का सबसे अच्छा लड़का है। इस बात को हम दो अन्य तरीकों से भी कह सकते हैं—(i) राम मेरे स्कूल के किसी भी दूसरे लड़के से अच्छा है। (ii) मेरे स्कूल का कोई दूसरा लड़का उतना अच्छा नहीं है जितना राम। अगर आप इन तीनों वाक्यों का अंग्रेजी अनुवाद कर दें तो आप पायेंगे कि प्रथम वाक्य में Superlative degree, दूसरे वाक्य में Comparative degree तथा तीसरे वाक्य में Positive degree का प्रयोग हुआ है।

Ram is the best boy of my school. — **Superlative**
Ram is better than any other boy of my school. — **Comparative**
No other boy of my school is so good as Ram. — **Positive**

यहाँ स्पष्टतः Superlative से Comparative बनाने के लिए **best** के बदले better than any other तथा positive बनाने के लिए no other + noun in singular number + so good as (या as good as) का प्रयोग हुआ है।

कुछ और उदाहरण लें—

1. Lead is the heaviest of all metals. — **Superlative**
   Lead is heavier than any other metal. — **Comparative**
   या Lead is heavier than all other metals. — **Comparative**
   No other metal is as heavy as lead. — **Positive**
   या No other metal is so heavy as lead. — **Positive**
2. Bombay is the best city in India. — **Superlative**
   Bombay is better than any other city in India. — **Comparative**

या Bombay is better than all other cities in India. Comparative
No other city in India is so good as Bombay. Positive
या No other city in India is as good as Bombay. Positive

Note : any other के बदलें में all other दे सकते हैं, परन्तु any other के बाद singular noun तथा all other के बाद plural noun प्रयुक्त होगा।

पुनः एक वाक्य लें—मोहन मेरे स्कूल के अच्छे लड़कों में से एक है। इसे हम दूसरे शब्दों में कह सकते हैं कि मोहन मेरे स्कूल के अधिकांश अन्य लड़कों से अच्छा है। या फिर कह सकते हैं कि मेरे स्कूल के बहुत कम ही लड़के उतने अच्छे हैं जितना कि मोहन। इसी भाव को ध्यान में रखकर नीचे दिए गए उदाहरणों में degree परिवर्तन को समझें :—

1. Mohan is one of the best boys of my school. Superlative
Mohan is better than most other boys of my school. Comparative
Very few boys of my school are as (so) good as Mohan. Positive

2. Akbar was one of the greatest emperors. Superlative
Akbar was greater than most other emperors. Comparative
Very few emperors were as great as Akbar . Positive

Some More Solved Examples

1. London is the greatest sea-port in the world. Superlative
London is greater than any other sea-port in the world. Comparative
London is greater than all other sea-ports in the world. Comparative
No other sea-port in the world is as great as London. Positive

2. Shakespeare is the greatest English poet. Superlative
Shakespeare is greater than any other English poet. Comparative
Shakespeare is greater than all other English poets. Comparative
No other English poet is so great as Shakespeare. Positive

3. Australia is the largest island in the world. Superlative
Australia is larger than all other islands in the world. Comparative
Australia is larger than any other island in the world. Comparative
No other island in the world is as large as Australia. Positive

4. The Times of India is the most powerful newspaper in India. Superlative
The Times of India is more powerful than any other newspaper in India. Comparative
The Times of India is more powerful than all other newspapers in India. Comparative
No other newspaper in India is so powerful as The Times of India. Positive

5. The tiger is the most ferocious of all animals. Superlative
The tiger is more ferocious than any other animal. Comparative
No other animal is so ferocious as the tiger. Positive

6. Ashoka was one of the greatest rulers of India. Superlative
Ashoka was greater than most other rulers of India. Comparative
Very few rulers of India were as great as Ashoka. Positive

7. Gold is one of the costliest metals. Superlative
Gold is costlier than most other metals. Comparative
Very few metals are as costly as gold. Positive

8. England is one of the richest countries in the world. Superlative
England is richer than most other countries in the world. Comparative
Very few countries in the world are as rich as England. Positive

9. The Taj Mahal is one of the most beautiful buildings. Superlative
The Taj Mahal is more beautiful than most other buildings. Comparative
Very few buildings are so beautiful as the Taj Mahal. Positive

10. The Kashmir Valley is one of the most beautiful places on the earth. Superlative
The Kashmir Valley is more beautiful than most other places on the earth. Comparative
Very few places on the earth are as beautiful as the Kashmir Valley. Positive

11. No other boy in my school is so industrious as Raju. Positive
Raju is more industrious than any other boy in my school. Comparative
Raju is the most industrious boy in my school. Superlative

12. No other man was as strong as Bhim. Positive
Bhim was stronger than any other man. Comparative
Bhim was the strongest man. Superlative

13. No other English dramatist is so famous as Shakespeare. Positive
Shakespeare is more famous than any other English dramatist. Comparative
Shakespeare is the most famous English dramatist. Superlative

14. No other peak in the world is as high as Mount Everest. Positive
Mount Everest is higher than any other peak in the world. Comparative
Mount Everest is the highest peak in the world. Superlative

15. He is better than any other student in the class. Comparative
No other student in the class is as good as he. Positive
He is the best student in the class. Superlative

16. Iron is more useful than all other metals. Comparative
No other metal is so useful as iron. Positive
Iron is the most useful of all metals. Superlative

17. Calcutta is busier than any other port in India. Comparative
No other port in India is as busy as Calcutta. Positive
Calcutta is the busiest port in India. Superlative

18. America is richer than any other country in the world. Comparative
No other country in the world is so rich as America. Positive
America is the richest country in the world. Superlative

19. Suresh is more intelligent than most other students in the class. Comparative
Very few students in the class are as intelligent as Suresh. Positive
Suresh is one of the most intelligent students in the class. Superlative

20. Rose is more beautiful than most other flowers. Comparative
Rose is one of the most beautiful flowers. Superlative
Very few flowers are as beautiful as rose. Positive

21. Very few poets of England are as great as Milton. Positive
Milton is greater than most other poets of England. Comparative
Milton is one of the greatest poets of England. Superlative

22. Very few boys are as honest as my brother. Positive
My brother is one of the most honest boys. Superlative
My brother is more honest than most other boys. Comparative

23. The rose is not the most beautiful of all flowers. Superlative
The rose is not more beautiful than some other flowers. Comparative
Some flowers are not less beautiful than the rose. Comparative
Some flowers are at least as beautiful as the rose. Positive

24. Some students in my class are at least as intelligent as Rakesh. Positive
Some students in my class are not less intelligent than Rakesh. Comparative
Rakesh is not more intelligent than some other students in my class. Comparative
Rakesh is not the most intelligent student in my class. Superlative

25. He is not the cleverest of all boys. Superlative
He is not cleverer than some other boys. Comparative
Some boys are not less clever than he. Comparative
Some boys are at least as clever as he. Positive

EXERCISE 48

Change the degree of comparison of the following in as many ways as possible without changing the sense.

1. Ram is the most intelligent boy of my school.
2. Lead is the heaviest of all metals.
3. Shakuntala is the best drama in Sanskrit.
4. Bombay is the best city in India.
5. The Times of India is the most powerful newspaper in India.
6. Iron is the most useful of all metals.
7. He is the strongest man in my family.
8. Australia is the largest island in the world.
9. Mount Everest is the highest peak of the Himalayas.
10. This is the most beautiful picture.
11. Akbar was one of the greatest kings.
12. He is one of the most intelligent boys.
13. Gold is one of the costliest metals.
14. England is one of the richest countries in the world.
15. India is one of the hottest countries.
16. Ashoka was one of the greatest kings of India.
17. Mahatma Gandhi is one of the greatest men in the world.
18. He is one of my best friends.
19. Delhi is one of the biggest towns in India.
20. Pt. Nehru was one of the greatest politicians of his time.
21. This is one of the best schools of this town.
22. Shakespeare is the greatest of all English dramatists.
23. Mohan is one of my strongest enemies.
24. Patna is one of the biggest towns.
25. Milton was one of the greatest poets of England.
26. Tagore was the best poet of modern India.
27. Tennyson is not the greatest of all poets.
28. He is not the most intelligent student of my class.
29. Wheat is not the most nutritious of all grains.
30. He is not the cleverest of all boys.

EXERCISE 49

Change the degrees of comparison in each of these sentences in as many ways as possible without changing the sense :—

1. Ram is better than any other boy.
2. Bombay is better than any other city in India.
3. The Times of India is more powerful than all other newspapers in India.
4. She is more beautiful than any other girl in my family.

5. Lead is heavier than any other metal.
6. No other boy is as good as Shyam.
7. No other English dramatist is as great as Shakespeare.
8. No other sea-port in India is as busy as Bombay.
9. No other ruler in India was as great as Ashoka.
10. No other book in India is so popular as the Ramayana.
11. She is more intelligent than most other girls.
12. Australia is bigger than most other islands in the world.
13. He is stronger than most other boys in the class.
14. Gold is costlier than most other metals.
15. Akbar was greater than most other kings in India.
16. Very few students are as rich as Rajesh.
17. Very few countries are as hot as Arabia.
18. Very few houses in this town are as good as this one.
19. Very few statesmen in India were so great as Pt. Nehru.
20. Very few flowers are as sweet as the rose.
21. This is one of the most interesting books.
22. She is the best singer in my school.
23. Very few Indian towns are so big as Bombay.
24. No other boy in my school is as tall as he.
25. England is richer than most other countries.
26. Tennyson is not the greatest of all English poets.
27. Ram is not more intelligent than some other boys in my class.
28. The rose is not more attractive than some other flowers.
29. Some boys in the class are not less laborious than Ram.
30. Some beans are at least as healthful as meat.
31. Some towns in Bihar are at least as busy as Ranchi.
32. The Geeta is one of the most religious epics in India.
33. Gold is one of the heaviest of metals.

EXERCISE 50

Transform the following sentences as directed :—

1. I am as strong as you. (into comparative)
2. The aeroplane flies faster than birds. (into positive)
3. English is easier than Hindi. (into positive)
4. She is not so beautiful as my sister. (into comparative)
5. You can't run faster than I. (into positive)
6. Honey is sweeter than milk. (into positive)
7. Sohan is not more intelligent than Mohan. (into positive)
8. Platinum is as heavy as gold. (into comparative)
9. Manoj is not so able as Ganesh. (into comparative)
10. He has more money than brain. (into positive)

11. The cat cannot run as fast as the dog can. (into comparative)
12. He does it more carefully than I do. (into positive)
13. I know him better than you do. (into positive)
14. She knows me as well as you do. (into comparative)
15. You do not know him better than I do. (into positive)
16. I would as soon die as tell a lie. (into comparative)
17. The younger brother is cleverer than the elder. (into positive)
18. This church is biggest in London. (into positive)
19. The rose is the most beautiful of all flowers. (into comparative)
20. No other man is as honest as my brother. (into comparative)
21. Calcutta is bigger than any other town in India. (into comparative)
22. Lead is heavier than any other metal. (into positive)
23. No other English poet is as great as Shakespeare. (into superlative)
24. Gold is the heaviest metal. (into positive)
25. The princess is not as tall as the prince. (into comparative)
26. Kalidas was as great as Shakespeare. (into comparative)
27. Kalidas was greater than any other dramatist in India. (into positive)
28. Raja is the best singer in the school. (into comparative)
29. Very few rulers of India were so great as Ashoka. (into comparative)
30. Akbar was one of the greatest kings. (into comparative)
31. Very few poets of England were so great as Milton. (into superlative)
32. Madras is bigger than most other Indian towns. (into positive)
33. Australia is one of the biggest islands in the world. (into comparative)
34. India is better than most other countries in the world. (into superlative)
35. It is easier to preach than to practise. (into positive)
36. She is one of the most intelligent girls of my school. (into positive)
37. No other flower is as sweet as the rose. (into comparative)
38. No other exercise is so healthy as walking. (into superlative)
39. I am not so great as he. (into comparative)
40. A live ass is stronger than a dead lion. (into positive)
41. I am not so learned as my father. (into comparative)
42. Tennyson was not the greatest of all poets. (into comparative)
43. Some boys in my school are at least as strong as Ravi. (into comparative)
44. Some beans are at least as nutritious as meat. (into superlative)
45. The rose is not more attractive than some other flowers. (into positive)
46. She is not the most beautiful of all girls in my school. (into positive)
47. Some grains are not less nutritious than wheat. (into superlative)
48. I would as soon die as cheat my mother. (into comparative)
49. You are much older in mind than in age. (into positive)
50. A nobler man than Mahatma Gandhi was never born. (into positive)

13. The Clause & The Complex Sentence

1. Clause को अच्छी तरह समझने के लिए हम एक वाक्य लें—
I met a man who was blind.

इस वाक्य को हम दो शब्द-समूहों में इस प्रकार बाँट सकते हैं—
(a) I met a man
(b) Who was blind

यहाँ हम देख रहे हैं कि प्रत्येक शब्द-समूह में एक Subject और एक Finite Verb है। परन्तु इसके बावजूद हम अभीष्ट वाक्य को इस प्रकार नहीं लिख सकते हैं—I met a man. Who was blind. स्पष्टतः ये शब्द-समूह अलग-अलग वाक्य नहीं हैं; ये एक ही वाक्य के parts हैं। इनमें से प्रत्येक को Clause कहा जाएगा। अर्थात् हम Clause की परिभाषा इस प्रकार दे सकते हैं—

Clause वैसे शब्द-समूह को कहा जाता है जो किसी वाक्य का अंश हो और जिसमें एक Subject और एक Finite Verb हो। (A clause is a group of words which forms part of a sentence and contains a subject and a finite verb of its own.)

अब इन वाक्यों में निहित clauses को देखें—

(a) You will pass if you work hard.
You will pass
If you work hard

(b) If he comes to me I shall help him.
If he comes to me
I shall help him

(c) He was absent because he was ill.
He was absent
Because he was ill

(d) She wept when she heard the news.
She wept
When she heard the news

(e) The book that is on the table is mine.
The book is mine
That is on the table

(f) Tell me why you did this.
(You) tell me
Why you did this

(g) He is better than Ram.
He is better
Than Ram (is)

(h) He lifted the gun, took aim and fired.
He lifted the gun
He took aim
He fired

(i) He was playing and she was dancing.
He was playing
She was dancing

(j) He writes as fast as possible.
He writes
As fast as (it is) possible

(k) Though badly defeated, he did not leave the field.
Though (he was) badly defeated
He did not leave the field

(l) He as well as I is to blame.
He is to blame
I am to blame

(m) He came and gave me the book.
He came
He gave me the book

Note : ऊपर दिए गए उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है कि किसी-किसी Clause का Subject या Verb या दोनों understood भी रह सकता है।

2. Clauses के दो भेद होते हैं—

(a) Principal Clause
or, Main Clause
or, Independent Clause
(b) Subordinate Clause
or, Dependent Clause

(a) Principal Clause : वह Clause जो किसी अन्य Clause पर निर्भर हुए बिना पूर्ण अर्थ व्यक्त करे Principal Clause कहलाता है। "I saw a man who was blind" में 'I saw a man' एक Principal Clause है।

(b) Subordinate Clause : वह Clause जो अपने अर्थ की पूर्णता के लिए Principal Clause या अन्य clause पर आश्रित रहता है Subordinate Clause कहलाता है। I saw a man who was blind (मैंने एक आदमी को देखा जो अंधा था) में who was blind (जो अंधा था) एक Subordinate clause है।

Note : चूँकि Principal Clause पूर्ण अर्थ व्यक्त करता है इसलिए इसका प्रयोग स्वतंत्र वाक्य के रूप में भी हो सकता है। जैसे—"I saw a man" एक स्वतंत्र वाक्य भी है।

Note : निम्नलिखित Conjunctions से शुरू होने वाले Clauses Subordinate Clauses होते हैं—

as	how	(un) till
as if	if	unless
as though	lest	who
as much as	provided	which
as far as	provided that	whose
after	since	whom
according as	so	whether
as soon as	so that	while
although	that	when
before	than	where
because	though	what

Solved Examples :

Pick out the Principal Clauses and the Subordinate Clauses in the following sentences :

1. I lost all that I had.
2. Wait till I return.
3. If you go there, you will find him.
4. All that glitters is not gold.
5. God helps those who help themselves.
6. The boy who played the best won the prize.
7. There is truth in what you say.
8. He writes as fast as possible.
9. Do you know where she lives and what she does ?
10. The book I bought yesterday is very interesting.
11. He who talks more works little.
12. Come as soon as you can.
13. Your pen is better than mine.
14. He lifted the gun, took aim and fired.
15. The moon was bright and we could see our way.
16. He lost his way while walking at night.
17. He as well as I is to blame.
18. Though badly defeated, he did not leave the field.

Answers :

1.	I lost all	— Principal Clause
	That I had	— Subordinate Clause
2.	(You) wait	— P. C.
	Till I return	— S. C.
3.	You will find him	— P. C.
	If you go there	— S. C.
4.	All is not gold	— P. C.
	That glitters	— S. C
5.	God helps those	— P. C.
	Who help themselves	— S. C.
6.	The boy won the prize	— P. C.
	Who played the best	— S. C.
7.	There is truth in (it)	— P. C.
	What you say	— S. C.
8.	He writes	— P. C.
	As fast as (it is) possible	— S. C.
9.	Do you know	— P. C.
	Where she lives	— S. C.
	What she does	— S. C.
10.	The book is very interesting	— P. C.
	(That) I bought yesterday	— S. C.
11.	He works little	— P. C.
	Who talks more	— S. C.
12.	(You) come	— P. C.
	As soon as you can (come)	— S. C.
13.	Your pen is better	— P. C.
	Than mine (is)	— S. C.
14.	He lifted the gun	— P. C.
	He took aim	— P. C.
	He fired	— P. C.
15.	The moon was bright	— P. C.
	We could see our way	— P. C.
16.	He lost his way	— P. C.
	While (he was) walking at night	— S. C.
17.	He is to blame	— P. C.
	I am to blame	— P. C.
18.	Though (he was) badly defeated	— S. C.
	He did not leave the field	— P. C.

EXERCISE 51

Pick out the Principal Clauses and the Subordinate Clauses in the following sentences :

1. All the blessings that we enjoy come from God.
2. The reason why he beat him is not clear.
3. I shall remain where I am.
4. They also serve who only stand and wait.
5. This is the forest where lions live.
6. The boy who is playing there is my son.
7. He that rises too high is sure to fall.
8. I don't know who he is.
9. He was what he is not today.
10. I know that he will not help me.
11. He did it as I told him.
12. Do what you like.
13. Because you have done this I shall punish you.
14. When I was younger I thought so.
15. Here is the book you want.
16. He died in the village where he was born.
17. Pay careful attention to what I say.
18. Where he went is unknown.
19. As he is ill he is absent.
20. You should do what you should do.
21. Though he is poor he is very happy.
22. Hardly had I started when it began to rain.
23. Give me the book and I will read it.
24. You called me and I am here.
25. He came and gave me a letter.
26. This is the same pen as mine.
27. He was hurt while walking on the road.
28. He is poor but laborious.
29. Do if you can.
30. He as well as his friends is guilty.

3. Subordinate Clause के तीन भेद होते हैं—

(A) Noun Clause
(B) Adjective Clause and
(C) Adverb Clause

अब इन तीनों को अलग-अलग विस्तारपूर्वक समझें।

(A) Noun Clause : जो Clause वाक्य में Noun के जैसा काम करता है वह Noun Clause कहलाता है। Noun Clause को समझने के लिए इन दो वाक्यों पर विचार करें—

I know the man.
I know who he is.

यहाँ दूसरे वाक्य में निहित Clause 'who he is' वही काम कर रहा है जो प्रथम वाक्य में the man (Noun) कर रहा है। अतः यहाँ 'who he is' एक Noun Clause है। स्पष्टतः अगर कोई Clause उस जगह पर प्रयुक्त है जहाँ किसी Noun या Noun Phrase को रहना चाहिए तो वह Clause Noun Clause कहलायेगा। निम्नलिखित वाक्यों को समझें—

1. (a) The amount is not known to me.
Noun

(b) What he paid is not known to me.
Noun Clause

2. (a) There is no meaning in your statement.
Noun Phrase

(b) There is no meaning in what you say.
Noun Clause

चूँकि Noun Clause किसी Complex Sentence में Noun के जैसा काम करता है इसलिए इसका प्रयोग उन सभी प्रकारों से हो सकता है जिस प्रकार से एक Noun का प्रयोग होता है—

(a) Main Verb के Subject के रूप में—

What you say is true.
That he is honest is doubtful.
Whether she will come is not known.
What cannot be cured must be endured.
Whatever could be done is done.
How he could assist his friend was his chief concern.

ऊपर Noun Clauses को मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित किया गया है। ये क्रमशः Main Verbs is, is, is, must be, is तथा was के Subjects के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(b) Transitive Verb के Object के रूप में—

I do not know **who he is.**
Tell me **what you do.**
I hope **that it will rain today.**
Father asked me **why I was late.**
She knows **what you like.**
I hoped **that it was true.**

ऊपर Noun Clauses को मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित किया गया है। ये क्रमशः Transitive Verbs know, tell, hope, ask, know तथा hope के बाद उनके Objects के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(c) Preposition के Object के रूप में—

There is no truth in **what you say.**
Pay attention to **what your teacher says.**
Never rely on **what a liar says.**
She is ashamed of **what she said.**
Success depends on **how you work.**

ऊपर Noun Clauses को मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित किया गया है। ये सभी अपने पहले आने वाले Prepositions के Objects के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(d) Verb के complement के रूप में—

Life is **what we make of it.**
The truth is **that we have been fools.**
Our belief is **that we shall succeed one day.**
Things are not **what they seem.**
This is **where I live.**
His great fear is **that he will die one day.**

यहाँ Noun Clauses को bold letters से दर्शाया गया है। ये सभी complements के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(e) Noun या Pronoun के apposition के रूप में—

Your statement **that you are not guilty** will not be believed.
It was unfortunate **that you were absent.**
It is a miracle **that she was not drowned.**
The news **that he has resigned** is true.
It is bad **that you should say so.**

यहाँ पुनः Noun Clauses को bold type से दर्शाया गया है। ये क्रमशः statement, unfortunate, miracle, news तथा bad के meaning को स्पष्ट करने के लिए appositions के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि Noun Clause Noun/Noun Phrase के बदले में प्रयुक्त होता है।

(B) Adjective Clause : जो Clause वाक्य में Adjective के जैसा काम करता है Adjective Clause कहलाता है। इस प्रकार Adjective Clause Main Clause में प्रयुक्त Noun या Pronoun को qualify करता है। जैसे—

The boy who is playing there is my friend.
Adjective Clause

यहाँ Main Clause "The boy is my friend" है तथा Subordinate Clause "who is playing there" है। स्पष्टतः "who is playing there" Adjective Clause है क्योंकि यह boy को qualify कर रहा है।

कौन लड़का—जो वहाँ खेल रहा है—who is playing there

इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें। इनमें प्रयुक्त Adjective Clauses को bold letters में print किया गया है—

This is the pen **that I bought yesterday.**
This is the man **whom we all love.**
The place **where he lives** is unknown.
The dog **that barks** does not bite.
Uneasy lies the head **that wears a crown.**
They never fail **who die in a great cause.**
He laughs best **who laughs last.**
The reason **why he did it** is obvious.
Is this the watch **which you lost ?**

ऊपर के वाक्यों में Adjective Clauses क्रमश: pen, man, place, dog, head, they, he, reason तथा watch को qualify करते हैं।

Note : चूँकि Adjective Clause Relative Pronouns (who, whom, whose, which and that) या Relative Adverbs (what, when, where and why) से शुरू होते हैं, इसलिए इन्हें Relative Clauses भी कहते हैं। वैसे Relative Clause की परिभाषा इस प्रकार दी जा सकती है—

जो Subordinate Clause अपने पूर्व आने वाले Noun या Pronoun को qualify करता है उसे Relative Clause कहा जाता है।

(C) Adverb Clause : जो Clause वाक्य में Adverb के जैसा काम करता है Adverb Clause कहलाता है। इस प्रकार Adverb Clause Principal Clause में प्रयुक्त Verb, Adjective या Adverb के अर्थ में विशेषता बतलाने का काम करता है। इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें—

I shall stay **here.**
I shall stay **where I am.**

यहाँ दूसरे वाक्य में निहित Clause 'where I am' वही काम कर रहा है जो प्रथम वाक्य में here (adverb) कर रहा है। कहाँ stay करूँगा—here—where I am. इसलिए यहाँ where I am एक Adverb Clause है।

इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें। इनमें प्रयुक्त Adverb Clauses को bold letters में print किया गया है—

I shall wait **till he returns.**
You will pass **if you work hard.**
You may sit **wherever you like.**
He was not so rich **that he could buy a car.**
When he entered the room he saw a snake.
I am kind to you **because you are kind to me.**
He ran so fast **that I could not catch him.**

यहाँ दिए गए वाक्यों में Adverb Clauses क्रमशः wait (v.), pass (v.), sit (v.), rich (adj.), saw (v.), kind (adj.) तथा fast (adv.) के अर्थ में विशेषता बतलाते हैं।

Adverb Clauses के निम्नलिखित प्रमुख भेद हैं—

(a) Adverb Clauses of Time or Time Clauses : Adverb Clauses of Time से समय का बोध होता है। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Time हैं—

I met him **when I was in London.**
He came in **when I was sleeping.**
I went home **after I had finished the work.**
Make hay **while the sun shines.**
Wait here **as long as you can.**
I shall go **when he comes.**
You should wait **till he returns.**
Do it **before you forget.**
As soon as I heard the news, I wrote to him.
When the cat is away, the mice will play.

(b) Adverb Clauses of Place : Adverb Clauses of place से स्थान का बोध होता है। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Place हैं—

You can go **wherever you like.**
We must stay **where we are.**
I will live **where you live.**
He walked **where there was peace.**

(c) Adverb Clauses of Purpose : इससे किसी कार्य-व्यापार के उद्देश्य के भाव का बोध होता है। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Purpose हैं—

We eat **that we may live.**
Walk fast **lest you should miss the train.**
Misers save **in order that they may grow rich.**
He works hard **so that he may pass the examination.**
He drew his sword **that he might defend himself.**

(d) Adverb Clauses of Reason or Cause : इस Clause से यह बोध होता है कि Principal Clause में जिस कार्य-व्यापार का वर्णन है उसका कारण क्या है। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Reason or Cause हैं—

I am glad **that you have come.**
As you are over fourteen, you will have to pay full fare.
I did it **because I wanted to.**

Because I like you, I shall help you.
Since you have no money, you cannot enjoy your life.
Since the man was ill, he could not come.
My father was glad **that I passed the examination.**
Since you say so I believe it.
As he was not there, I spoke to his wife.

(e) Adverb Clauses of Condition (Conditional Clauses) : कुछ वाक्य ऐसे होते हैं जिसके एक भाग से शर्त (condition) तथा दूसरे भाग से परिणाम का बोध होता है। जिस Clause से शर्त का बोध होता है उसे Adverb Clause of Condition कहते हैं। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Condition हैं—

If a student does wrong at Netarhat School, he is punished by senior students.
Unless you work hard, you cannot get good marks.
Write to me **in case you need money.**
A servant has to work **whether he likes it or not.**
Had he gone to Agra, he would have seen the Taj Mahal.
You may stay here **so long as you behave well.**
Should it rain there will be no meeting.
If you have tears, prepare to shed them now.
I will forgive you **on condition that you do not repeat the offence in future.**

(f) Adverb Clauses of Result or Effect : Principal Clause में वर्णित कार्य-व्यापार या स्थिति जो फल या परिणाम देता है उसे व्यक्त करने वाला Subclause Adverb Clause of Result or Effect कहलाता है। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Result or Effect हैं—

He worked so hard **that he won the prize.**
He is so poor **that he cannot buy all the books.**
The box is so heavy **that I cannot lift it.**
The class was so noisy **that nothing could be heard.**
He spoke in such a way **that I understood her.**
He is such a good boy **that all love him.**
So good a teacher is he **that all respect him.**
So cold was it **that many died.**
She is so beautiful **that she attracts everybody.**

(g) Adverb Clauses of Comparison : ऐसे Clauses का प्रयोग comparison के लिए किया जाता है जैसा कि नीचे दिए गए उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है—

Ram is **as rich as Shyam (is).**
She is older **than she looks.**

I love him as much as you do.
It is as long as it is broad.
I eat as much as you (eat).
This is as black as that (is).
You must work harder **than he does.**
He is not **as rich as we think.**

(h) Adverb Clauses of Manner : ये Clauses Principal Clauses में वर्णित कार्य-व्यापार के होने का manner (तरीका, ढंग) का भाव व्यक्त करते हैं। इन्हें यहाँ मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित किया जा रहा है—

He talked **as if he were mad.**
You will reap **as you sow.**
Do **as you please.**
It all ended **as I expected.**
He behaves **as if he were my boss.**
He answered the question **as he was taught.**
You may do **as you like.**
You should do **as I tell you.**
Leave it **as it is.**

(i) Adverb Clauses of Contrast : ये Clauses Principal Clauses के साथ विरोध (contrast) का बोध कराते हैं। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Contrast हैं—

Though he is poor, he is honest.
Though he is a little child, he is very intelligent.
Even if they oppose me, I must try.
Although he started late he caught the train.
However hard he may work, he cannot stand first.
I will buy the book **whatever it costs.**

(j) Adverb Clauses of Proportion :
The higher we go, the cooler it is
The more he has, the more he wants.
The more we eat, the fatter we become.

Simple, Compound and Complex Sentences

1. Simple Sentence : जिस वाक्य में सिर्फ एक Finite Verb हो उसे Simple Sentence कहते हैं। जैसे—

(a) He is a boy.
(b) Ram reads a book.
(c) I went to Patna yesterday.
(d) It is very cold today.
(e) Do it carefully.

2. Compound Sentence : वह वाक्य जो दो या दो से अधिक Independent Clauses से बना होता है, Compound Sentence कहलाता है। जैसे—

(a) Mohan was singing and Radha was dancing.

Mohan was singing
Radha was dancing] both are Independent Clauses

(b) The night was dark and we did not know the way.

The night was dark
We did not know the way] both are Independent Clauses

(c) He lifted the gun, took aim and fired.

He lifted the gun
He took aim
He fired] all the three are Independent Clauses

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि Compound Sentence में दो या दो से अधिक Finite Verbs रहते हैं, परन्तु इसमें कोई Subordinate Clause नहीं रहता।

3. Complex Sentence : जिस वाक्य में एक Principal Clause और एक या एक से अधिक Subordinate Clauses हों उसे Complex Sentence कहते हैं। जैसे—

(a) I know that he is a good man.

I know — P. C.
That he is a good man — S. C.

(b) If he comes to me I shall help him.

If he comes to me — S. C.
I shall help him — P. C.

(c) When I asked him he told me that he would not help me.

He told me — P. C.
When I asked him — S. C.
That he would not help me — S. C.

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि जहाँ Compound Sentence में कोई Subordinate Clause नहीं रहता है वहीं Complex Sentence में Subordinate Clause का रहना आवश्यक हो जाता है।

4. Mixed Sentence or Compound Complex Sentence : जिस वाक्य में दो या दो से अधिक Principal Clauses तथा एक या एक से अधिक Subordinate Clauses हों उसे Mixed Sentence या Compound Complex.Sentence कहते हैं। जैसे—

(a) When the baby was kidnapped her father was sleeping and the mother was cooking.

Her father was sleeping] two Principal Clauses
The mother was cooking]

When the baby was kidnapped — S. C.

Solved Examples

[A]

Each of these sentences has Subordinate Clauses. You have to say whether it is a Noun Clause or an Adjective Clause or an Adverb Clause.

1. No one knows who he is.
2. Where she lives is unknown.
3. He says that he won't help me.
4. There is no meaning in what you say.
5. Do you know what he wants ?
6. I know the place where the money was hidden.
7. He that is down need fear no fall.
8. People who live in glass houses should not throw stones at others.
9. The reason why he has come is clear.
10. This is the house that my father built.
11. You may sit wherever you like.
12. When I was younger, I thought so.
13. They returned when the sun set.
14. He talks as if he were a mad man.
15. He did it as I told him.
16. It is so hot that one can't go out.
17. People who go to bed late night spoil their health.
18. He showed me the place where he was born.
19. The food you eat is not pure.
20. The room he lives in is small.
21. The problem is how it should be done.
22. Why he liked her is a mystery.

Answers :

1. Who he is — Noun Clause
2. Where she lives — Noun Clause
3. That he won't help me — Noun Clause
4. What you say — Noun Clause
5. What he wants — Noun Clause
6. Where the money was hidden — Adjective Clause
7. That is down — Adjective Clause
8. Who live in glass houses — Adjective Clause
9. Why he has come — Adjective Clause

10. That my father built — Adjective Clause
11. Wherever you like — Adverb Clause
12. When I was younger — Adverb Clause
13. When the sun set — Adverb Clause
14. As if he were a mad man — Adverb Clause
15. As I told him — Adverb Clause
16. That one can't go out — Adverb Clause
17. Who go to bed late night — Adjective Clause
18. Where he was born — Adjective Clause
19. You eat — Adjective Clause
20. He lives in — Adjective Clause
21. How it should be done — Noun Clause
22. Why he liked her — Noun Clause

[B]

Pick out Relative Clauses, Time Clauses and Conditional Clauses in the following sentences :

1. This is the book that I bought yesterday.
2. He who loves the poor is loved by God.
3. Is this the watch which you lost ?
4. Unless you work hard you cannot get success.
5. If it rains we shall not go.
6. Write to me in case you need money.
7. You should wait till he returns.
8. When I was young, I could swim.
9. Do it before you forget.
10. Had he gone to Delhi, he would have seen the Red Fort.
11. As soon as he heard the news, he wrote to me.
12. The dog that barks does not bite.

Answers :

1. That I bought yesterday — Relative Clause
2. Who loves the poor — Relative Clause
3. Which you lost — Relative Clause
4. Unless you work hard — Conditional Clause
5. If it rains — Conditional Clause
6. In case you need money — Conditional Clause
7. Till he returns — Time Clause
8. When I was young — Time Clause
9. Before you forget — Time Clause
10. Had he gone to Delhi — Conditional Clause
11. As soon as he heard the news — Time Clause
12. That barks — Relative Clause

[C]

Pick out the Adverb Clauses in the following sentences, stating their kind:—

1. Gandhijee was welcomed wherever he went.
2. He fled where no one could find him.
3. We eat that we may live.
4. I worked hard that I might get good marks.
5. I could not go to school because I was ill.
6. I am glad that you have come.
7. He worked so hard that he fell ill.
8. The wall is so high that a child can't climb it.
9. Gandhijee was as kind as he was wise.
10. She is younger than she looks.
11. However hard he may work, he will not pass.
12. Even if it rains, I shall go.
13. You may do as you please.
14. He ran as if he were frightened.
15. The higher we go, the cooler it is.
16. The harder you work, the greater will be your profit.

Answers :

1. Wherever he went — Adverb Clause of Place
2. Where no one could find him — Adverb Clause of Place
3. That we may live — Adverb Clause of Purpose
4. That I might get good marks — Adverb Clause of Purpose
5. Because I was ill — Adverb Clause of Reason
6. That you have come — Adverb Clause of Reason
7. That he fell ill — Adverb Clause of Result
8. That a child can't climb it — Adverb Clause of Result
9. As he was wise — Adverb Clause of Comparison
10. Than she looks — Adverb Clause of Comparison
11. However hard he may work — Adverb Clause of Contrast
12. Even if it rains — Adverb Clause of Contrast
13. As you please — Adverb Clause of Manner
14. As if he were frightened — Adverb Clause of Manner
15. The higher we go — Adverb Clause of Proportion
16. The harder you work — Adverb Clause of Proportion

EXERCISE 52

Each of the following sentences has a Subordinate Clause. You have to state whether it is a Noun Clause or an Adverb Clause or an Adjective Clause.

1. Here is the book that you want.
2. God helps those who help themselves.
3. I remember the house where I was born.
4. This is the book I am interested in.
5. People who live in glass houses should not throw stones at others.
6. All that glitters is not gold.
7. Those whom God loves die young.
8. We shall wait here untill you come.
9. Go where you can get a job.
10. Read as fast as you can.
11. Strike while iron is hot.
12. He does as he pleases.
13. He who loves the poor is loved by God.
14. We want cold drinks when it is hot.
15. While there is life, there is hope.
16. Servants that are honest are trusted.
17. When the cat is away, the mice will play.
18. We will leave as soon as we are ready.
19. I don't know who has come here.
20. I know that he is a fool.
21. Tell me what you want.
22. I think you are right.
23. The fact is that he is a fool.
24. That he told a lie is quite clear.
25. I don't believe in what you say.
26. He will object to what we do.
27. Do which will please everyone.
28. That the earth is round is known to me.
29. That you should cheat me hurts me.
30. Tell me which book is yours.

EXERCISE 53

Pick out Relative Clauses, Time Clauses and Conditional Clauses in the following sentences :

1. He that is down need fear no fall.
2. This is the boy who has broken the chair.
3. Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.
4. The book which the teacher gave me is very useful.
5. Is this the watch which you lost ?
6. The book that is in her hand is mine.
7. The moment which is lost is lost for ever.

8. When the cat is away, the mice will play.
9. It is an ill-wind that blows nobody any good.
10. You should wait till he returns.
11. This is the boy that won the prize.
12. Don't count your chickens before they are hatched.
13. When I reached the station, the train had left.
14. Look before you leap.
15. As soon as I reached the station, the train started.
16. All that glitters is not gold.
17. He who loves the poor is loved by God.
18. I met her when I was in London.
19. He went to the hospital when he heard the news.
20. As the stream flows past Gangotri, the scenery changes.
21. The dog that barks does not bite.
22. This happens when we act without thinking.
23. Unless you work hard, you cannot get good marks.
24. I shall come provided I am free.
25. If I make a promise, I keep it.
26. You will miss the train unless you start at once.
27. Take an umbrella in case it rains.
28. If it rains, I shall not go.
29. Should you need my help, write to me at once.
30, If you help me I will do this.

EXERCISE 54

Pick out the Adverb Clauses in the following sentences, stating their function :

1. You may sit wherever you like.
2. They went where living was cheaper.
3. Can you live where there is no light ?
4. I shall remain where I am.
5. He drew his sword that he might defend himself.
6. He works hard so that he may become rich.
7. I did it because I wanted to.
8. I am glad that you have done.
9. Because I love you, I shall marry you.
10. Since you have no money, you can't enjoy your life.
11. It was so cold that many died.
12. He worked so hard that he won a prize.
13. He is older than he looks.
14. She works no less than anybody else (works).
15. You must work harder than I do.

16. Do as you please.
17. He talked as if he were mad.
18. Although he is poor, he is honest.
19. Although he is a little child he is very intelligent.
20. The higher we go, the cooler it is.
21. He did it as I told him.
22. A glutton lives that he may eat.
23. We will le: ve as soon as we are ready.
24. You may do it when you are free.
25. If you are honest, you will be rewarded.

14. Voice

Voice किसी वाक्य में प्रयुक्त verb का वह रूप है जो यह दिखलाता है कि या तो कर्त्ता कुछ करता है या स्वयं कर्त्ता पर ही कुछ घटित होता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें :—

1. **Ram is beating.**
2. **Ram is being beaten.**

पहले वाक्य में कर्त्ता Ram है जो क्रिया का सम्पादन कर रहा है—किसी को पीट रहा है। अर्थात् Ram यानी कर्त्ता सक्रिय (active) है। इसलिए इस वाक्य में प्रयुक्त क्रिया **is beating** को Active Voice में होना समझा जायेगा। दूसरे वाक्य में भी कर्त्ता Ram ही है, परन्तु यहाँ Ram पीट नहीं रहा है बल्कि खुद पीटा रहा है। अर्थात् कर्त्ता इस वाक्य में doer नहीं है सिर्फ receiver of the action है। स्पष्टतः यहाँ कर्त्ता निष्क्रिय (passive) है। इसलिए इस वाक्य में प्रयुक्त क्रिया **is being beaten** को Passive Voice में होना समझा जायेगा।

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि Voice दो प्रकार के होते हैं—**Active Voice** तथा **Passive Voice.**

Active Voice : A verb is said to be in the **Active Voice** when its form shows that the person or thing denoted by the subject does something.

Passive Voice : A verb is said to be in the **Passive Voice** when its form shows that something is done to the person or thing denoted by the subject.

Note : वस्तुतः Voice Verb का होता है, परन्तु sentence/clause में प्रयुक्त verb अगर Active Voice में हो तो sentence/clause को भी Active Voice में होना समझा जायेगा। अगर प्रयुक्त Verb Passive Voice में हो तो sentence/clause को भी Passive Voice में होना समझा जायेगा।

Use of Passive Voice

किसी वाक्य का construction Active Voice में हो या Passive Voice में इसका निर्णय इस बात पर निर्भर करता है कि हम किस पर ज्यादा जोर देना चाहते हैं या हम किससे ज्यादा interested हैं या किससे वाक्य को शुरू करना ज्यादा natural/proper/convincing है—doer of the action या receiver of the action। अगर doer of the action वस्तु स्थिति को स्पष्ट करने के लिए ज्यादा महत्त्वपूर्ण है तो Active Voice का प्रयोग होगा और अगर Verb activity/object/receiver of the action ज्यादा महत्त्वपूर्ण है तो Passive Voice का प्रयोग होगा।

अगर हम doer of the action का उल्लेख करना नहीं चाहते हो या doer of the action unknown/vague/common figure हो तो Passive Construction ही ज्यादा उपयुक्त होगा।

इस प्रकार Passive Voice का प्रयोग होने पर doer of the action का importance कम हो जाता है या समाप्त ही हो जाता है। हमारा main interest receiver of the action तथा verb activity पर चला जाता है।

Passive Verb-Form

किसी active verb को Passive में बदलने के लिए उक्त Main Verb को Past Participle Tense में बदलते हैं तथा उसके पहले Verb 'to be' का प्रयोग उपयुक्त Number, Person तथा Tense में करते हैं।

Voice के interchanging करते वक्त active verb के Object को Passive Verb का subject बना दिया जाता है तथा active verb के subject को Passive Verb का **agent** बना दिया जाता है। अगर यह agent वाक्य के अर्थ/भाव को स्पष्ट करने के लिए आवश्यक हुआ तो इसे clause के अंत में by या अन्य उपयुक्त preposition लगाकर रख दिया जाता है, अन्यथा इसे लुप्त कर दिया जाता है।

Note : 1. Active से Passive बनाते समय agent का प्रयोग तभी करें जब agent का प्रयोग वाक्य के अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए अत्यन्त आवश्यक हो। इस संदर्भ में कुछ विद्वानों ने यहाँ तक सलाह दिया है कि ऐसे वाक्यों को सिर्फ Active Voice में ही प्रयोग करें जिसके Passive में agent का प्रयोग करना आवश्यक है, क्योंकि अगर agent को दर्शाना वाक्य के अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए आवश्यक हो तो वैसे वाक्यों को Passive में लिखा ही क्यों जाए ? परन्तु आप इतना ही ध्यान रखें कि जब active verb का subject one, someone, somebody, nobody, people या अन्य vague noun/pronoun में से कोई एक हो तो Passive Verb के साथ इसका लोप हो जाता है। कुछ वाक्यों में I, we, you, they, he, she, a man, a boy ऐसे agents को भी आवश्यकतानुसार passive verb के साथ लुप्त कर दिया जाता है। अतः आप वाक्य के अर्थ को समझते हुए यह निर्णय लें कि अभीष्ट Passive Sentence में agent का प्रयोग आवश्यक है कि नहीं।

2. सिर्फ Transitive Verbs के ही Passive Voice होते हैं। अतः इन वाक्यों की क्रियाएँ Passive Voice में नहीं हैं—

He is gone.
He is come.
They are arrived.
Winter is come.

परन्तु इन वाक्यों की क्रियाएँ Passive Voice में हैं—

The chair is broken.
He is beaten.

इसलिए ऐसे वाक्यों के Verbs को Passive Voice में बदला नहीं जा सकता है जो Intransitive हैं। जैसे—

I am going to school.
I read.
He has gone to Patna.
They are good boys.

अब भिन्न-भिन्न Tenses के Active Verbs को Passive में बदलने की प्रक्रिया पर विचार करें :—

1. Present Indefinite Tense

[Passive form : am/is/are + V^3]

Active	Passive
He helps me.	I am helped by him.
I help you.	You are helped by me.
She teaches you.	You are taught by her.
We respect him.	He is respected by us.
People speak Hindi is Bihar.	Hindi is spoken in Bihar.
We expect good news.	Good news is expected.

2. Present Continuous Tense

[Passive form : am / is / are + being + V^3]

Active	Passive
I am eating a mango.	A mango is being eaten by me.
They are singing songs.	Songs are being sung (by them).
They are repairing the bridge.	The bridge is being repaired.
He is helping his mother.	His mother is being helped by him.
They are discussing the matter.	The matter is being discussed.

3. Present Perfect Tense

[Passive form : have / has + been + V^3]

Active	Passive
I have finished the work.	The work has been finished by me.
He has beaten Ram.	Ram has been beaten by him.
Her sister has cheated her.	She has been cheated by her sister.
Ram has disturbed me.	I have been disturbed by Ram.
Someone has stolen my pen.	My pen has been stolen.
No one has seen him for the last ten years.	He has not been seen for the last ten years.

He has always helped me.	I have always been helped by him.
Somebody has pushed the chair into the corner.	The chair has been pushed into the corner.

4. Present Perfect Continuous Tense

[Passive form : have / has + been + being + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
They have been doing the research for years.	The research has been being done for years.
We have been digging the well for ten years.	The well has been being dug for ten years.

Note : Present Perfect Continuous Tense के passive form का प्रयोग uncommon है, अर्थात् इसका प्रयोग नहीं के बराबर होता है। परन्तु अगर आवश्यकतावश करना पड़े तो ऊपर बतलाए गए तरीके से होगा। ऐसा कहना गलत है कि Present Perfect Continuous Tense का Passive form होता ही नहीं है। For reference see Practical English Usage by Michael Swan, Topic No. 458 : Oxford University Press, Edition 1980.

EXERCISE 55

Rewrite the following sentences so that the verbs will be in the Passive Voice :—

1. I eat a mango.
2. I eat mangoes.
3. I love you.
4. You love me.
5. He teaches her.
6. She helps them.
7. We respect him.
8. Ram teaches the boys.
9. I like it.
10. She sings a song.
11. I write a letter.
12. I am eating a mango.
13. They are helping you.
14. You are doing this.
15. He is driving a car.
16. The boys are playing cricket.
17. She is teaching us.
18. We are doing nothing.
19. They are repairing the road.
20. Mohan is helping her.
21. I am learning it.
22. He has eaten a mango.
23. I have killed two tigers.
24. She has helped me.
25. I have done the work.
26. They have cut the trees.
27. They have seen the ghost.
28. He has sold his car.
29. She has taught us.
30. You have made several mistakes.
31. The police have caught the thief.
32. She has cheated me.
33. We have helped you.
34. Someone has broken the glass.
35. This boy has made it.
36. She is drawing a picture.
37. She always abuses me.
38. He recites the poems.

39. I follow the rules.
40. They help the poor.
41. We keep the butter here.
42. My sons are doing this.
43. The doctor is examining the patient.
44. My father likes this.
45. Ram cleans the car everyday.
46. We eat rice everyday.
47. I have killed the bird.
48. I help those poor boys.
49. He is answering the question.
50. We have bought the books.
51. He helps everybody.
52. She helps her sister.
53. Ram has built the house.
54. The children have painted the wall.
55. Someone has broken my base.
56. Someone has picked my pocket.
57. Sohan loves Meera.
58. Abdul is cleaning the car.
59. The father punishes his son.
60. I like your brother.

Solved Examples :

1. Active : People speak English all over the world.
   Passive : English is spoken all over the world.
2. Active : He has hurt his leg in an accident.
   Passive : His leg has been hurt in an accident.
3. Active : People always admire this kind of activity.
   Passive : This kind of activity is always admired.
4. Active : One uses milk for making curd and sweets.
   Passive : Milk is used for making curd and sweets.
5. Active : We don't respect a dishonest man.
   Passive : A dishonest man is not respected.
6. Active : They make these types of furniture.
   Passive : These types of furniture are made by them.
7. Active : This boy always wins the prize.
   Passive : The prize is always won by this boy.
8. Active : The author has written a special edition for children.
   Passive : A special edition for children has been written.
9. Active : Scientists are making progress everyday in the world of science.
   Passive : Progress in the world of science is being made everyday.
10. Active : They are cutting the old trees.
    Passive : The old trees are being cut.
11. Active : Some people dress their children very badly.
    Passive : Some children are very badly dressed.
12. Active : No one has ever beaten him at tennis.
    Passive : He has never been beaten at tennis.

EXERCISE 56

Put the following into the passive voice. You need not mention the agent except in numbers 21, 22, 23, 24, 25 and 31.

1. People speak Hindi in Bihar.
2. We keep the butter here.
3. We expect good news.
4. Somebody has broken my glass.
5. Someone has stolen my pen.
6. Someone has left the bag in the garden.
7. No one has seen that mad man for ten days.
8. They are watching you.
9. Someone has broken the door of my house.
10. Everywhere people respect a learned man.
11. In our country we exploit the poor.
12. They are repairing the road.
13. Someone has picked my pocket.
14. We use this room only on some special occasions.
15. Everyone knows this very well.
16. No one has said anything about it.
17. We are doing nothing against you.
18. They praise Mohan for his honesty.
19. They have published the result.
20. They have already filled the vacancy.
21. Ram has pushed the table into the corner.
22. They have killed that innocent child.
23. They make these types of furniture.
24. Four men have beaten him.
25. Shakespeare has written this poem.
26. We clean the house everyday.
27. They check every passenger thoroughly.
28. In India people worship the cow.
29. People grow cotton in India.
30. Nobody has answered my question properly.
31. The mob has broken all the shop windows.

5. Past Indefinite Tense

[Passive form : was / were + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
I ate a mango.	A mango was eaten by me.
I ate four mangoes.	Four mangoes were eaten by me.

The police arrested him.	He was arrested.
Someone stole my pen.	My pen was stolen.
The peon opened the gate.	The gate was opened by the peon.
He wrote the letters.	The letters were written by him.
She beat you.	You were beaten by her.
He wrote the letter beautifully.	The letter was beautifully written.

Note : जब Verb Passive Voice में हो तो Adverb of manner को उस verb के पहले रखना चाहिए जिसको वह modify करता हो।

6. Past Continuous Tense

[Passive form : was / were + being + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
He was teaching me.	I was being taught by him.
She was vexing him.	He was being vexed by her.
He was watching them.	They were being watched by him.
The doctor was examining the patients.	The patients were being examined.
They were killing animals for nothing.	Animals were being killed for nothing.

7. Past Perfect Tense

[Passive form : had been + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
I had written the letter.	The letter had been written by me.
I had informed the police.	The police had been informed by me.
Somebody had stolen my umbrella.	My umbrella had been stolen.
They had warned us again and again.	We had been warned again and again.
Ram had completed the work.	The work had been completed by Ram.

8. Past Perfect Continuous Tense

[Passive form : had been being + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
The police had been following him for years.	He had been being followed for years.

Note : Past Perfect Continuous Tense के passive form का प्रयोग प्रायः नहीं होता है। अगर करना आवश्यक हो तो ऊपर बतलाये गये तरीके से करें। See Practical English Usage by Michael Swan, Topic No. 458 : Oxford University Press, Edition 1980.

EXERCISE 57

Turn the following into passive :

1. I helped you.
2. You helped me.
3. She loved me.
4. I loved her.
5. He bought a car.
6. They ate mangoes.
7. Ram killed a tiger.
8. The peon rang the bell.
9. Our team won the match.
10. Mohan broke the glass.
11. He finished the work soon.
12. The police caught the thief.
13. Somebody broke my window.
14. Mohan killed four birds.
15. They looted the house yesterday.
16. She abused me.
17. The doctor examined the patient.
18. We cut the tree.
19. He was helping me.
20. They were cutting trees.
21. She was singing a song.
22. Ram was teaching her.
23. They were watching the match.
24. She was writing a letter.
25. The girl was drawing the picture.
26. My son was cleaning the car.
27. They were cutting trees.
28. We were playing the match.
29. Nobody was answering the question.
30. You were watching the match.
31. They were repairing the bridge.
32. I had warned you.
33. They had done the work.
34. She had taught the student.
35. You had informed the police.
36. He had sold his horses.
37. Somebody had stolen his purse.
38. Nobody had done anything.
39. The children had eaten the cakes.
40. Someone had already told him.
41. The robbers robbed him.
42. You made several mistakes.
43. We were expecting good news.
44. They were doing the work carefully.
45. I had informed him of the accident.
46. The people expected him to arrive at nine.
47. The crowd welcomed the leader with great cheer.
48. The fire damaged the building.
49. Shakespeare wrote "As you like it."
50. They admired him for his courage.

Solved Examples :

1. Active : I saw him opening the box.
   Passive : He was seen opening the box.
2. Active : They found him guilty of murder.
   Passive : He was found guilty of murder.
3. Active : He invited me to his house yesterday.
   Passive : I was invited to his house yesterday.

4. Active : He ordered the police to pursue the thief.
   Passive : The police was ordered to pursue the thief.
5. Active : We drove him out of the house.
   Passive : He was driven out of the house.
6. Active : Gandhiji taught us the lesson of non-violence.
   Passive : We were taught the lesson of non-violence by Gandhiji.
7. Active : I asked him to come in time.
   Passive : He was asked by me to come in time.
8. Active : They elected him their leader.
   Passive : He was elected their leader.
9. Active : We refused them admission.
   Passive : They were refused admission by us.
10. Active : I sent him to the market.
    Passive : He was sent to the market by me.
11. Active : The Indians won the match.
    Passive : The match was won by the Indians.
12. Active : Somebody had slashed the picture with a knife.
    Passive : The picture had been slashed with a knife.
13. Active : Most people opposed this.
    Passive : This was opposed by most people.
14. Active : The lawyer gave her the details of her father's will.
    Passive : She was given the details of her father's will.
15. Active : The farmer saved the snake's life.
    Passive : The snake's life was saved by the farmer
16. Active : He hurt himself.
    Passive : He was hurt by himself.

EXERCISE 58

Turn the following into passive voice. You need not mention the agent except in numbers 4, 14, 16, 17, 18, 22, 27 and 30.

1. The police arrested some thieves last night.
2. They had warned us not to kill wild animals.
3. They held a reception in his honour.
4. Most of our men opposed this. (agent)
5. They posted all the letters yesterday.
6. They asked me to leave the place.
7. He expected me to offer him the chair.
8. He wrote the letter carefully.
9. Someone left this bag in the class.

10. They had arranged everything properly for the meeting.
11. They were cutting the trees for their personal use.
12. The crowd expected him to come in time.
13. We finished the work in about two weeks.
14. Tigers attacked the travellers. (agent)
15. Robbers looted the travellers.
16. The same boy abused me that day. (agent)
17. The fire destroyed many houses. (agent)
18. A boy of ten saved my life. (agent)
19. The fire burnt my house to ashes.
20. Somebody told him the news this morning.
21. I had already told him about the accident.
22. We all love and respect Mahatma Gandhi. (agent = all of us)
23. One does not like a man who tells lies for nothing.
24. The police kept the thieves in custody.
25. We clean the rooms regularly.
26. Anyone has not seen such a scene before.
27. An old man took me to hospital. (agent)
28. They are just spoiling our career.
29. The government is doing nothing for the progress of India.
30. I have beaten the boys. (agent)

9. Simple Future Tense

[Passive form : shall / will + be + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
I shall help you.	You will be helped by me.
She will teach me.	I shall be taught by her.
People will forget it.	It will be forgotten.
We shall discuss the matter tomorrow.	The matter will be discussed tomorrow.
We will execute all the orders promptly.	All the orders will be promptly executed.
No one will solve your problem.	Your problem will not be solved.
They will publish two books in June.	Two books will be published in June.

10. Future Continuous Tense

[Passive form : shall / will + be + being + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
I shall be doing this.	This will be being done (by me).
They will be helping us.	We shall be being helped.

Note : Future Continuous Tense के passive form का प्रयोग uncommon है। फिर भी अगर करना हो तो ऊपर बतलाए गए तरीके से करें।

11. Future Perfect Tense

[Passive form : shall / will + have been + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
I shall have written the book.	The book will have been written by me.
They will have done the work by June'99.	The work will have been done by June'99.
They will have informed us.	We shall have been informed.
The government will have built ten thousand houses for the poor by the end of next year.	Ten thousand houses will have been built for the poor by the end of next year.

12. Future Perfect Continuous Tense

[Passive form : shall / will + have been being + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
We shall have been building the fort for five years.	The fort will have been being built for five years.

Note : Future Perfect Continuous Tense का passive voice में प्रयोग प्रायः नहीं होता है। फिर भी जरूरतवश करना पड़े तो ऊपर बतलाए गए रीति से करें।

13. Modal Verbs : Passive form

shall, will, can, could, may, might, should, would, must, ought इत्यादि modal auxiliaries हैं। जब इनके बाद active verb का प्रयोग हो तो प्रयुक्त verb को passive में बदलने के लिए निम्नलिखित form का प्रयोग करते हैं :—

modal auxiliary + be + V^3

Active	*Passive*
They will kill the tiger.	The tiger will be killed (by them)
I can lift it.	It can be lifted by me.
They could solve the problem.	The problem could be solved.
He may defeat you.	You may be defeated by him.
You must help your brother.	Your brother must be helped.
One should keep one's promises.	Promises should be kept.
He could kill the lion.	The lion could be killed by him.

Anybody can easily break this stick.	This stick can be easily broken.
We should help the poor.	The poor should be helped.
None can challenge him.	He cannot be challenged.
We shall take her to hospital tomorrow.	She will be taken to hospital tomorrow.
You must write the answers in ink.	The answers must be written in ink.
Everyone will blame us.	We shall be blamed by everyone.
One cannot gather grapes from thistles.	Grapes cannot be gathered from thistles.

14. Passive of Modal Auxiliary + have + V^3

अगर verb phrase का रूप Active Voice में modal auxiliary + have + V^3 हो तो इसका Passive Voice में form होगा—

modal auxiliary + have been + V^3

Active	*Passive*
We shall have discussed the matter.	The matter will have been discussed.
You should have helped her.	She should have been helped (by you).
I could have beaten her.	She could have been beaten by me.
You must have done that.	That must have been done by you.
They ought to have respected the priest.	The priest ought to have been respected.
No one could possibly have known the fact.	The fact could not possibly have been known.
Somebody must have taken my watch when the light was off.	My watch must have been taken when the light was off.

EXERCISE 59

Turn the following into passive. 'by + agent' should be mentioned only when it is necessary.

1. I shall help you.
2. You will teach her.
3. They will forget it.
4. The police will arrest the thief.
5. I shall do it.
6. We shall welcome him.
7. People will remember him.
8. We shall hear his voice no more.
9. Nobody will play the match.
10. We shall discuss the matter tomorrow.
11. Somebody will beat you one day.
12. We shall buy the books tomorrow.
13. You can do it.
14. Everyone can break it.
15. One can solve it.

16. A child cannot lift it.
17. He could beat him.
18. I could help you.
19. You may win the race.
20. He might solve it.
21. They may defeat us.
22. Our team may win the match.
23. You must help the poor.
24. You must not pluck flowers.
25. You must send a reply.
26. You should help her.
27. You should take exercise.
28. They should finish the work.
29. I should do it.
30. We should not cheat our friends.
31. We could find it.
32. She could buy a car.
33. He would do it.
34. I would help you.
35. I shall have done the work.
36. They will have bought a car.
37. They will have discussed the matter.
38. They will have built the road by March.
39. The child must have eaten the sweets.
40. They must have killed the tiger.
41. He could have done that.
42. You should have helped her.
43. He ought to have respected his elders.
44. He should not have neglected his wife.
45. The little child could not have done all this damage.
46. He might have seen a tiger.
47. He should have written a letter.
48. One can gain nothing without effort.
49. I shall never forget those happy days.
50. One ought to keep one's promises.
51. Students should follow the rules of grammar.
52. My friends will blame me.
53. The boy will do something remarkable.

Solved Examples :

1. Active : I shall cast my vote in his favour.
   Passive : My vote will be cast in his favour.
2. Active : They will start the show in two months.
   Passive : The show will be started in two months.
3. Active : No one will do anything against you.
   Passive : Nothing will be done against you.
4. Active : We will not admit candidates under twenty.
   Passive : Candidates under twenty will not be admitted.
5. Active : We can buy gold but we cannot buy sympathy.
   Passive : Gold can be bought but sympathy cannot be bought.
6. Active : One may gain success by constant effort.
   Passive : Success may be gained by constant effort.
7. Active : You mustn't miss the first opportunity you meet.
   Passive : The first opportunity you meet mustn't be missed.

8. Active : You can rely on what he says.
   Passive : What he says can be relied on by you.

9. Active : They must endure what they cannot cure.
   Passive : What cannot be cured must be endured.

10. Active : You might have heard the name of Gandhiji.
    Passive : The name of Gandhijee might have been heard by you.

EXERCISE 60

Turn the following sentences into the passive voice. No agent will be required in most of the passive sentences.

1. People will forget this event in a few years' time.
2. We shall discuss the matter tomorrow.
3. Somebody will help you in the hour of need.
4. Someone will lead us properly.
5. They will exhibit the show till the end of this month.
6. We can invest a lot of money in this scheme.
7. In accordance with the rules of the company the organizers should give me two months to defend myself.
8. Even the poor can enrich the country.
9. Students should help one another.
10. They could prove it easily.
11. The teacher might punish him for his absence.
12. One would never suspect it.
13. He will have finished the work by the end of this month.
14. The government will have made schemes for unemployed graduates by the end of this year.
15. They should have endured what they could not cure.
16. Nobody would have known anything if you had not said.
17. The poor fellow could have gathered much wealth if he had been a little dishonest.
18. They may have known the fact.
19. Our enemies must have started this rumour.
20. Somebody must have found the lost baby by now.
21. We should do what we want others to do.
22. Even the most foolish man of the world can understand this.
23. A man who has money should help the man who has no money.
24. Examinees must show their admit cards in the examination hall.
25. The policeman shot the criminal with a revolver.
26. You might have heart his feelings.
27. They were doing everything to make the situation normal.
28. They removed the injured to hospital.

29. They are serving coffee to the guests.
30. Somebody has already switched off the light.
31. The earthquake destroyed the whole town.
32. Nobody has made any mistakes.
33. They are doing nothing against crime.
34. These days we play cricket all over the world.
35. They had cooked the fish before you arrived.
36. You must write your answer on both sides.
37. Nobody will hear his voice after his death.
38. They don't allow smoking here.

15. अगर Verb phrase की बनावट am / is / are / was / were / have / has / had + infinitive (to + verb) हो तो इनका Passive Voice में रूप होगा—

am / is / are / was / were / have / has / had + to be + V^3

Active	*Passive*
I am to do it.	It is to be done by me.
I was to do it.	It was to be done by me.
I had to do it.	It had to be done by me.
My father is to buy a car.	A car is to be bought by my father.
The teacher was to teach us.	We were to be taught by the teacher.
They had to build the bridge.	The bridge had to be built.

16. There + verb + noun (subject) + infinitive

[Passive form : There + verb + noun + to be + V^3]

Active	*Passive*
There is no time to lose.	There is no time to be lost.
There was a lot of work to do.	There was a lot of work to be done.
There is no money to waste.	There is no money to be wasted.
There is nothing to weep for.	There is nothing to be wept for.

17. It + verb + noun + infinitive + object

Active	*Passive*
It is time to take exercise.	It is time for exercise to be taken.
It is now time to start the race.	It is now time for the race to be started.
It is time to say our prayers.	It is time for our prayers to be said.

18.

Active	*Passive*
I want someone to take photographs.	I want photographs to be taken.
I like people to respect me.	I like to be respected.
They have to see it to believe it.	It has to be seen to be believed.

EXERCISE 61

Turn the following into Passive Voice.

1. They are to play the match today.
2. My father is to buy a car.
3. She is to teach me.
4. They are to sell their houses.
5. Someone is to help those orphans.
6. He was to buy my books.
7. I was to help those intelligent boys.
8. They were to paint the house.
9. I have to do this work.
10. They have to confess their guilt.
11. I have to blame no one.
12. She is to guide me.
13. We have to serve our country.
14. The Principal has to distribute prizes among the winners.
15. Our team is sure to win the match.
16. They had to deliver the letters in time.
17. They had to examine the patients.
18. She had to purchase a new house.
19. There is no time to lose.
20. There is a lot of work to do.
21. There is nothing to laugh at.
22. I have no money to spend in this scheme.
23. It is time to accept the challenge.
24. It was time to defeat the enemies.
25. It is time to pay the electric bill.
26. It is time to say our prayers.
27. It is time to close the shop.
28. He likes people to call him 'boss'.
29. I want them to bring flowers.
30. The author has written the book carefully.
31. He should not have slashed the picture with a knife.
32. I have to see the fact to believe it.
33. All should worship God.
34. They send the newspapers to Patna by air.
35. The factory manufactures five thousand cars every month.
36. They built the bridge last year.
37. The government should do something for us.
38. Nobody has answered my questions properly.
39. People always praise a brave man.

40. They were taking the injured to hospital.
41. The audience loudly cheered the leader's speech.
42. We export these raw materials to ten other countries.

19. Imperative Sentences expressing order/command

जब Imperative Sentences से order/command का बोध हो तो प्रयुक्त Active Verb को Passive में बदलने के लिए वाक्य Let से शुरू करते हैं तथा subject के बाद be+V^3 का प्रयोग करते हैं।

Active	*Passive*
Do this work.	Let this work be done.
Bring a glass of water.	Let a glass of water be brought.
Open the door.	Let the door be opened.
Switch on the radio.	Let the radio be switched on.
Don't pluck flowers.	Let flowers not be plucked.
Inform the police of the accident.	Let the police be informed of the accident.
Don't touch this wire.	Let this wire not be touched.
Give the order.	Let the order be given.

20. Imperative Sentences expressing advice

जब Imperative Sentences से advice (सलाह) का भाव व्यक्त हो तो Passive form को Let से शुरू नहीं करते हैं। बल्कि वाक्य को इस रूप में परिवर्तित करते हैं—

Subject + should + be + V^3

Active	*Passive*
Love your country.	Your country should be loved.
Help the poor.	The poor should be helped.
Help your neighbours.	Your neighbours should be helped.
Don't be daunted by danger.	You should not be daunted by danger.
Don't insult the weak.	The weak should not be insulted.

Note : कुछ Sentences ऐसे होते हैं जिनसे यह स्पष्ट नहीं होता है कि ये order हैं या advice. ऐसे sentences को Rule No. 19 या Rule No. 20 से बनावें।

21. यदि वाक्य Let से शुरू हो तो Passive Construction में बदलने की प्रक्रिया को इन उदाहरणों द्वारा समझें :–

Active	*Passive*
Let him complete the work.	Let the work be completed by him.
Let us discuss the matter.	Let the matter be discussed.

Let us work together.	It is suggested that we should work together.
Let us dance.	It is suggested that we should dance.

22. यदि Imperative Sentence के साथ Please/Kindly का प्रयोग हो तो Passive Verb form के लिए वाक्य को **You are requested to** से शुरू करें। Please /Kindly को लुप्त कर शेष भाग को **You are requested to** के बाद जोड़ दें। जैसे :—

Active	*Passive*
Kindly post the letter.	You are requested to post the letter.
Take your chair, please.	You are requested to take your chair.
Please sit down.	You are requested to sit down.

23. जब Imperative Sentence, Intransitive Verb से शुरू हो तो Sentence को Passive Construction देने के लिए You are ordered/You are advised का प्रयोग करते हैं। जैसे :–

Active	*Passive*
Stand up.	You are ordered to stand up.
Go there.	You are ordered to go there.
Work hard.	You are advised to work hard.

24. Passive of indirect command/request/advice

Active	*Passive*
He asked Mohan to help him.	Mohan was asked to help him.
I requested her to sing a song.	She was requested to sing a song.
The doctor advised me to take medicine in time.	I was advised to take medicine in time.
They told me to be quick.	I was told to be quick.
Somebody told me to wait outside.	I was told to wait outside.
He ordered the police to pursue the thief.	The police was ordered to pursue the thief.

EXERCISE 62

Put the following sentences into the passsive voice :

1. Do this at once.
2. Open the door.
3. Inform the police.
4. Switch off the light.
5. Inform him of the accident.
6. Post the letters.
7. Don't close the gate.
8. Never cheat your friends.
9. Don't touch the wire.
10. Read this book.
11. Help your friends.
12. Don't cheat anybody.
13. Take medicine in time.
14. Give him a warning.

15. Give him a chance to mend himself.
16. Help the poor.
17. Send for the doctor.
18. Help the poor students.
19. Bring a glass of water.
20. Feed the poor.
21. Pay that bill today.
22. Honour the brave.
23. Respect your elders.
24. Kindly give me money.
25. Kindly help me.
26. Please take your seat.
27. Please go out.
28. Please do me a favour.
29. Please sit down.
30. Give me your pen, please.
31. Let him do the work.
32. Let us complete our work.
33. Let him write a letter.
34. Let us start the game.
35. Let us work.
36. Let us dance.
37. Let them proceed.
38. Go there.
39. Bring a glass of water.
40. Stand up.
41. Do.
42. Try to have success.
43. Work hard.
44. Look before you leap.
45. Come tomorrow.
46. Do it before 3 p. m.
47. Learn these words by heart.
48. Put out the light.
49. Please enter by this door.
50. Shut all the doors.
51. Advertise the post.

EXERCISE 63

Change the following into Passive Voice :—

1. He ordered Mohan to go out.
2. He asked me to sing a song.
3. He requested me to help him.
4. I advised him to take medicine in time.
5. The doctor suggested me to take exercise everyday.
6. Tell him to leave the place.
7. I want you to buy this book. (I want this book.........)
8. It is time to take tea.
9. I request you to lend me your car.
10. Farmers use oxen to plough the field.
11. I told him to stop behaving like a child.
12. I asked him to come in time.
13. Someone seems to have made a terrible mistake.
14. They shouldn't have beaten the innocent boys.
15. You are to start a school to teach the blind.
16. He wants everyone to respect him.
17. I had to follow him.
18. He wants someone to help him.
19. Deposit the money in the bank.
20. Be hopeful in your life.

21. People mustn't forget him.
22. Someone has spilt ink on the book.
23. They will finish the work in two months.
24. The teacher ordered the student to stand up.
25. It is time to accept the challenge.
26. The teacher always tells us to be punctual.
27. Let him inform the police.
28. Hear him now.
29. Inform the police.
30. We have to say a little in this matter.
31. What is the time to close the shop ?
32. They needn't examine the patients.

25. Subject + Verb + Noun + infinitive (without to)

Active	*Passive*
I saw Ram play.	Ram was seen to play by me.
I found him swim.	He was found to swim by me.
I made him weep.	He was made to weep by me.
They made me laugh.	I was made to laugh.
They made me sing.	I was made to sing.
We saw the plane take off.	The plane was seen to take off.

26. Subject + Verb + Object + Complement

कुछ वाक्यों में Transitive Verb के बाद Object आता है तथा object के बाद एक complement. ऐसे verbs को passive में बदलते समय object को subject बनाया जाता है तथा complement को Verb के बाद रखा जाता है।

Active	*Passive*
We made him chairman.	He was made chairman.
They elected Mukesh captain.	Mukesh was elected captain.
They made him king.	He was made king.
I found him guilty of murder.	He was found guitly of murder.
We did not crown him king.	He was not crowned king.

27. Verbs with two objects

कुछ वाक्यों में active verbs के बाद दो objects आते हैं। जैसे—I gave him a book. यहाँ gave के बाद दो objects आये हैं—him तथा book. इनमें से him personal/indirect object है तथा book direct object है। ऐसे दो Objects वाले verb को passive में बदलते समय हम किसी भी object को subject बना सकते हैं। परन्तु साधारणतः personal object/indirect object को ही subject बनाना अच्छा माना जाता है। परन्तु अगर हमें direct object पर ही विशेष जोड़ देना हो तो

Direct Object को ही subject मानकर active verb को passive में बदलना चाहिए। अन्य परिवर्तन साधारण नियम के ही अनुसार होते हैं ।

Active	*Passive*
I gave him a book.	(a) He was given a book by me. (b) A book was given (to) him by me.
He told me a story.	(a) I was told a story (by him). (b) A story was told me (by him).
I offered him a chair.	(a) He was offered a chair by me. (b) A chair was offered him by me.
The Principal has given me a prize:	(a) I have been given a prize by the Principal. (b) A prize has been given me by the Principal.

EXERCISE 64

Turn the following into passive voice :

1. I saw Ram play.
2. They made us laugh.
3. He made us work.
4. We found the boy guilty.
5. They called him a fool.
6. We elected him our leader.
7. The people will make him chairman.
8. People consider him dry honest.
9. We made Ram our captain.
10. They elected him their leader.
11. They found him guilty of murder.
12. They gave her a cup of sweet wine.
13. Gopal gave me a present.
14. Gandhijee taught us the lesson of non-violence.
15. The manager will give you a ticket.
16. He teaches me English.
17. We offered her a chair.
18. He promised me a prize.
19. Mr. Sinha teaches us English.
20. My brother gave my friend a beautiful pen.
21. He made his wife do the work.

22. The king gave him a reward.

23. The guide showed the visitors many beautiful places.
24. Someone saw him pick up the purse.
25. The teacher explained us the easiest way to solve the problem.
26. The lawyer gave me the details of the case.
27. The judge found the accused guilty of murder.
28. I regard him as my elder brother.
29. We can give you a chance.
30. My brother will give you a book.
31. He handed me a bottle.
32. We chose him our leader.
33. The warning made him alert.
34. His parents named him Gopal.
35. I find no one against me.
36. They asked the child his name.
37. My father bought me a bicycle.
38. He pushed the door open.
39. We cannot pump the ocean dry.
40. We painted the house green.
41. He kept me waiting.
42. I saw him beating his brother. (He was seen beating.........)
43. Regular exercise can make one's muscles strong and healthy.
44. They refused him admittance.
45. The doctor gave him artificial respiration.
46. No government can offer everyone of us employment.
47. He showed me how to jump.
48. One day I will teach you a lesson for all that.
49. You have done against me.
50. They allow me only fifty rupees per month.
51. I told him what to do.
52. They promised me higher wages.
53. Anybody can tell you the fact.
54. They asked me a very difficult question.
55. They gave me watch for my birthday.
56. Someone told me the news this morning.
57. Nobody has beaten my brother in race.
58. We shall have to discuss the matter again.
59. Our teachers expect us not to make noises in the class.
60. We saw a tiger approaching. (.........seen approaching)

28. अगर Active Verb के साथ preposition या adverb का प्रयोग हो तो अभीष्ट verb को Passive बनाते समय प्रयुक्त prepositon/adverb को लुप्त नहीं किया जाता है।

Active	*Passive*
He looks after me.	I am looked after by him.
They will look after you well.	You will be well looked after.
All his friends laugh at him.	He is laughed at by all his friends.
We must listen to our elders.	Our elders must be listened to.
A car ran over my cat.	My cat was run over (by a car).
Mothers bring up children.	Children are brought up by mothers.
They objected to his proposal.	His proposal was objected to.
We must write to him.	He must be written to.
The thief broke into the house.	The house was broken into.
We threw him out.	He was thrown out.
We must look into the matter.	The matter must be looked into.

29. कुछ passive verbs के साथ by का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। agent के पहले by के बदले अन्य उपयुक्त preposition का प्रयोग करना पड़ता है जिसका चयन अभीष्ट verb पर निर्भर करता है।

Active	*Passive*
I know it.	It is known to me.
He satisfied me.	I was satisfied with him.
The result surprised me.	I was surprised at the result.
His behaviour shocked me.	I was shocked at his behaviour.
He pleased me.	I was pleased with him.
The book has interested me very much.	I have been very much interested in this book.

EXERCISE 65

Rewrite the sentences in the passive :—

1. They are laughing at her.
2. He looks after me.
3. The police are searching for him.
4. They will look into the matter.
5. The police enquired into the case.
6. All his friends laugh at him.
7. We must listen to the teacher attentively in the class room.
8. It is time to shut up the shops.
9. They were taking the thief to the police station.
10. Put off the light.
11. They objected to all my proposals.
12. Take these books away.
13. One must work for success. (Success must be.........)
14. I allowed him to come in.
15. He asked me to go away.

16. A car ran over my cat.
17. We insist on punctuality and discipline in this school.
18. The thief broke into our house yesterday.
19. They made fun of him. (He was made fun of.)
20. They have brought up the child very badly.
21. We must not throw away empty bottles.
22. She hates people looking at her. (She hates being looked at.)
23. I hate people laughing at me.
24. You must account for every penny.
25. She turned down my request.
26. They have given up the idea.
27. She likes people looking at her.
28. Send for the doctor.
29. You can play with these cubs.
30. I must write to him.
31. Turn out the mischievous.
32. Ask him to come in.
33. People often take him for his brother. (He is often taken for.........)
34. People threw him out.
35. The police have locked him up.
36. They shouted him down.
37. They will see me off at the airport.
38. I know the fact very well.
39. She knows me.
40. I satisfied everybody.
41. Your story has interested me. (interested in)
42. The jug contains milk. (contained in)
43. His reply surprised all. (surprised at)
44. The news alarmed us. (alarmed at)
45. His behaviour shocked me. (shocked at)
46. Her presence worries me. (worried at)
47. The way he speaks to me annoys me. (annoyed at)
48. Green grass has grown over the fields. (overgrown with)
49. Her behaviour vexes me sometimes. (sometimes vexed at)
50. Seven days make a week. (made of)
51. The news pleased me. (pleased with)

30. Passive transforms of Subject + Verb + 'that' clause

Study these sentences

1. Active : They say that he knows the fact.
   Passive : (a) It is said that he knows the fact.
   (b) He is said to know the fact.

2. Active : They said that he knew.
   Passive : (a) It was said that he knew.
   (b) He was said to know.

3. Active : They believe that he failed.
   Passive : (a) It is believed that he failed.
   (b) He is believed to have failed.

ऊपर बतलाए गए Active Sentences को ध्यान से देखने पर पता चलता है कि इनके दो parts हैं—Principal Clause तथा that clause (Noun clause)। ऐसे वाक्यों को Passive में दो प्रकार से परिवर्तित किया जाता है :–

(a) Principal Clause को It + Verb 'to be' + V^3 के form में बदल दिया जाता है तथा उसके बाद that clause को रख दिया जाता है।

(b) दूसरे तरह के परिवर्तन के लिए Noun clause के subject को पूरे वाक्य का subject बनाया जाता है। Principal clause के Verb को Passive में तथा Noun clause के verb को infinitive form में परिवर्तित कर दिया जाता है। जैसे :—

They believe that he knows the fact.
P. C. — Noun clause

He is believed to know the fact.
S — passive — infinitive

Noun clause के verb को infinitive में परिवर्तित करते वक्त विशेष सावधानी की जरूरत है। इसके लिए सबसे पहले आप विभिन्न infinitive forms को समझें। उदाहरण के लिए verb 'love' का infinitive forms दिया जा रहा है :–

	Active	*Passive*
Present	to love	to be loved.
Present continuous	to be loving	(to be being loved)
Perfect	to have loved	to have been loved.
Perfect continuous	to have been loving	(to have been being loved)

Note : 1. अगर मूल वाक्य के Noun clause में passive verb प्रयुक्त हो तो voice परिवर्तन करते समय passive infinitive का प्रयोग होगा। अगर active verb प्रयुक्त हो तो voice परिवर्तन करते समय active infinitive प्रयुक्त होगा।

2. Present continuous तथा Perfect Continuous के Passive Infinitive का प्रयोग सामान्यतः नहीं होता है।

Noun clause के verb को किस infinitive form में परिवर्तित किया जाए इसका निर्णय दोनों clauses में प्रयुक्त tense पर निर्भर करता है जिसे इस तालिका से समझें :–

Principal Clause में प्रयुक्त Verb का Tense	that clause में प्रयुक्त verb का tense	उपयुक्त infinitive form
Present	Simple Present	Present
Present	Present Continuous	Present Continuous
Present	Simple Past	Perfect
Present	Past Continuous	Perfect Continuous
Past	Simple Past	Present
Past	Past continuous	Present Continuous
Present/Past	Present/Past Perfect	Perfect
Present/Past	Present/Past Perfect Continuous	Perfect Continuous

WORKED OUT EXAMPLES

Using infinitive forms change the following sentences into passive:—

1. They say that he is a spy.
   He is said to be a spy.
2. They said that he was a spy.
   He was said to be a spy.
3. They say that he was a spy.
   He is said to have been a spy.
4. People believe that he has much wealth.
   He is believed to have much wealth.
5. People believed that he had much wealth.
   He was believed to have much wealth.
6. People believe that he had much wealth.
   He is believed to have had much wealth.
7. They know that she works hard.
   She is known to work hard.
8. They believed that she worked hard.
   She was believed to work hard.
9. We know that she worked hard.
   She is known to have worked hard.
10. They claim that the poor are exploited.
    The poor are claimed to be exploited. (passive infinitive)
11. They claimed that the poor were exploited.
    The poor were claimed to be exploited.

12. They say that the poor were exploited.
The poor are said to have been exploited.

13. They feel that we are doing nothing.
We are felt to be doing nothing.

14. They felt that we were doing nothing.
We were felt to be doing nothing.

15. They claim that she was vexing them.
She is claimed to have been vexing them.

16. They know that she has/had done it.
She is known to have done it.

17. They knew that the girl had acted.
The girl is known to have acted.

18. They believe that she has/had been cheated.
She is believed to have been cheated.

19. People believed that the explosion had been caused by a bomb.
The explosion was believed to have been caused by a bomb.

20. They know that we have/had been trying for years.
We are known to have been trying for years.

21. People believed that the leader had been serving the country for years.
The leader was believed to have been serving the country for years.

22. They expect that the work will have been completed by the next year.
The work is expected to have been completed by the next year.

23. They proved that the work they were doing was illegal.
The work they were doing was proved to be illegal.

24. They believe that she was alone there.
She is believed to have been alone there.

25. They claim that the boys who are accused of the crime have not been arrested.
The boys who are accused of the crime are claimed to have not been arrested.

26. We expect that she will buy a car next year.
She is expected to buy a car next year.

27. We think that the boy had the legs broken in the accident.
The boy is thought to have had the legs broken in the accident.

EXERCISE 66

Transform the following sentences into passive voice in two ways:—

1. They say that he is a thief.

2. They said that he was a thief.
3. They say that he was a thief.
4. They believe that he knows the fact.
5. They believed that he knew the fact.
6. They believe that he knew the fact.
7. They know that I have a lot of problems.
8. They knew that I had a lof of problems.
9. They know that I had a lot of problems.
10. People believe that he is living abroad.
11. People believed that he was living abroad.
12. People believe that he was living abroad.
13. They feel that they are doing nothing.
14. They felt that they were doing nothing.
15. They feel that they were doing nothing.
16. They believe that she has honesty.
17. We feel that she had honesty.
18. We felt that she had honesty.
19. They believe that he has killed the tiger.
20. They believed that he had killed the tiger.
21. They believe that he had killed the tiger.
22. They know that he has been trying for years.
23. They say that he had been trying for years.
24. They said that she had been living there.
25. They believe that the fact is well known.
26. They say that the fact was well known.
27. They claimed that the fact was well known.
28. They think that she has/had been misled.
29. They thought that she had been misled.
30. People believed that the earth was flat.
31. Everyone thinks that the government had strength.
32. They say that he knows both English and Latin.
33. People felt that all the officers were corrupt.
34. Everyone feels that the government is doing nothing for the poor.
35. People say that he had been a spy.
36. They believe that the leaders are trying to solve the problem.
37. Everyone thought that it was enough for us.
38. They consider that she is an extremely beautiful girl.
39. They think that some rules have been changed without information.
40. They proved that the statements he had made were true.
41. We expect that he will come soon. (expected to come)
42. The leaders alleged that the Chief Minister had taken bribes.
43. People believe that nothing had been done for them.

44. They believed that the explosion had been caused by a bomb.
45. They claim that the police had insulted them for nothing.
46. Most of the students think that the time they spend in schools and colleges is golden because thereafter they have to suffer only.
47. They know that we had won the match before.
48. Everyone believes that he was killed by some robbers.
49. We know that English is spoken all over the world.
50. They know that four students were sent for the work.
51. We consider that Mahatma Gandhi was really great.
52. They know very well that he has harmed none.
53. I found that it was correct.
54. They understood that I was interested in the job.

31. Passive of Negative & Interrogative Sentences

Negative Sentences

Study these sentences :—

Active	***Passive***
They do not help him.	He is not helped.
I cannot beat him.	He cannot be beaten by me.
Nobody has stolen the pen.	The pen has not been stolen.
Don't insult the poor.	The poor should not be insulted.
She beats no one.	No one is beaten by her.
Don't pluck flowers.	Let flowers not be plucked.
Don't go there.	You are ordered not to go there.

इन वाक्यों से स्पष्ट है कि Negative Sentences के Voice परिवर्तन के बाद भी sentences Negative ही रहते हैं।

Interrogative Sentences

Interrogative Sentences के Voice परिवर्तन के बाद भी sentences interrogative ही रहते हैं। जैसे—

(A)

Active	***Passive***
Does he help you ?	Are you helped by him ?
Do you teach her ?	Is she taught by you ?
Does he write you a letter ?	Are you written a letter by him ?
Do they love you ?	Are you loved ?
Do people believe it ?	Is it believed ?
Does he love me ?	Am I loved by him ?
Did he complete the work ?	Was the work completed ?

Did he inform the police ?	Were the police informed ?
Did I not buy the book ?	Was the book not bought by me ?
Did he not ask this question ?	Was this question not asked by him ?
Does he not know you ?	Are you not known to him ?
Do they laugh at you ?	Are you laughed at ?
Does she not clean the room ?	Is the room not cleaned by her ?

(B)

Is he doing the work ?	Is the work being done by him ?
Is he helping you ?	Are you being helped by him ?
Are they playing the game ?	Is the game being played ?
Am I making noises ?	Are noises being made by me ?
Has he broken the glass ?	Has the glass been broken by him ?
Has he always helped you ?	Have you always been helped by him ?
Has anyone stolen his pen ?	Has his pen been stolen ?
Have they defeated you ?	Have you been defeated ?
Were you doing the work ?	Was the work being done by you ?
Was he examining the patients ?	Were the patients being examined by him ?
Were you watching the match ?	Was the match being watched by you ?
Were they not cutting trees ?	Were trees not being cut ?
Has he not cheated us ?	Have we not been cheated ?
Had he not warned you ?	Had you not been warned by him ?
Had somebody stolen his pen ?	Had his pen been stolen ?
Shall we buy a car ?	Will a car be bought by us ?
Will you help me ?	Shall I be helped by you ?
Will she not do it ?	Will it not be done by her ?
Will nobody help you ?	Will you not be helped ?
Shall we have done this ?	Will this have been done by us ?
Should we help her ?	Should she be helped by us ?
Can you lift it ?	Can it be lifted by you ?
Will everyone blame us ?	Shall we be blamed by everyone ?
Could he kill the lion ?	Could the lion be killed by him ?
Would he do it ?	Would it be done by him ?
Have you to buy a car ?	Has a car to be bought by you ?
Has she to paint the house ?	Has the house to be painted by her ?
Had I to teach her ?	Had she to be taught by me ?
Is he to write a letter ?	Is a letter to be written by him ?
Was she to post the letter ?	Was the letter to be posted by him ?
Are they to play the match ?	Is the match to be played ?
Were they to invite you ?	Were you to be invited ?

(C)

Why do they beat you ?	Why are you beaten by them ?
How did the boys solve the problem ?	How was the problem solved by the boys ?
When did he beat you ?	When were you beaten by him ?
Why are you doing this ?	Why is this being done by you ?
Why has he stolen the pen ?	Why has the pen been stolen by him ?
Why do they cut trees ?	Why are trees cut ?
Why was he looking at you ?	Why were you being looked at by him?
How had they finished the work before?	How had the work been finished before ?
How shall I solve it ?	How will it be solved by me ?
Why can you not do this ?	Why can this not be done by you ?
How have you to teach the students ?	How have the students to be taught by you ?
When are you to write me a letter ?	When am I to be written a letter by you ?
Why had they to kill the tiger ?	Why had the tiger to be killed ?

(D)

What does he eat ?	What is eaten by him ?
What are you looking for ?	What is being looked for by you ?
What were you reading ?	What was being read by you ?
What will they do ?	What will be done ?
What can people do for her ?	What can be done for her ?
What should anybody do for her ?	What should be done for her ?
What have you to do ?	What has to be done by you ?
What can they throw away ?	What can be thrown away ?
What are you to give up ?	What is to be given up by you ?
What has he done ?	What has been done by him ?
What work will you do ?	What work will be done by you ?
How many eggs do you eat everyday ?	How many eggs are eaten everyday by you ?
How much rice do we export every year ?	How much rice is exported every year ?
How many students will they award?	How many students will be awarded ?

(E)

Who did this ?	By whom was this done ?
Who wrote the Ramayana ?	By whom was the Ramayana written ?
	Who was the Ramayana written by ?
Who will not do this ?	By whom will this not be done ?
	Who will this not be done by ?

Who has stolen his pen ?	By whom has his pen been stolen ?
	Who has his pen been stolen by ?
Who can defeat him ?	By whom can he be defeated ?
	Who can he be defeated by ?
Who has to buy a car ?	By whom has a car to be bought ?
	Who has a car to be bought by ?
Which boy did it ?	By which boy was it done ?
	Which boy was it done by ?
Which boy beat you ?	By which boy were you beaten ?
	Which boy were you beaten by ?
Who helps you ?	By whom are you helped ?
	Who are you helped by ?
Whom do you like most ?	Who is liked most by you ?
Whom will you beat ?	Who will be beaten by you ?

EXERCISE 67

Transform the following sentences into passive voice :

1. Do Ram and Shaym do this work ?
2. Does she laugh at you ?
3. Do people grow rice in Bihar ?
4. Do I not help you ?
5. Does she not often cheat you ?
6. Did he buy a car ?
7. Did he beat the boys ?
8. Did you not solve the problem ?
9. Did he not paint the box ?
10. Are you cleaning the room ?
11. Am I not helping them ?
12. Was he writing a letter ?
13. Was nobody listening to you ?
14. Has he finished the work ?
15. Had they won the match ?
16. Has the servant not cleaned the room ?
17. Will they repay the money ?
18. Shall I buy a car ?
19. Can he solve it ?
20. Will they not do this ?
21. Should he look into the matter ?
22. Has he to draw the picture ?
23. Had they to punish the thief ?
24. Are you to deposit the money ?
25. Were they to shoot the tiger ?

26. Was he to blame you ?
27. Could he open the box ?
28. Would you do that ?
29. Did he write you a letter ?
30. Did it surprise all ?
31. Were they to sell their houses ?
32. Did they make fun of him ?
33. Should they not write to me ?
34. Why do you beat her ?
35. When do you help him ?
36. Why are you repairing the bicycle ?
37. Where do paople speak English ?
38. Why has he broken the chair ?
39. When did they start the project ?
40. Why will she buy a car ?
41. Why can nobody solve it ?
42. When have they to play the match ?
43. Why are you not to post the letter ?
44. When will they examine us ?
45. When will they distribute money among us ?
46. How have we to defeat them ?
47. When had they to record the song ?
48. How did you satisfy everybody ?
49. Why should I promise her a present ?
50. Why did the king not punish the thief ?
51. Should you beat the little child ?
52. When did you recite the lessons ?

EXERCISE 68

Transform these sentences into passive voice :–

1. What do you eat ?
2. What are you reading ?
3. What have they done ?
4. What did he break ?
5. What was he eating ?
6. What will they bring ?
7. What can people do ?
8. What have you to find out ?
9. What are you to teach ?
10. What work can you do ?
11. How many students do you teach ?
12. How many cups have they broken ?

13. How much milk can you drink ?
14. How many books have you to write ?
15. How many times have they insulted you ?
16. Who wrote this poem ?
17. Who has done this ?
18. Who beats you ?
19. Who can tell me a story ?
20. Who will win the prize ?
21. Who is solving this ?
22. Who had insulted you ?
23. Who has to bring the newspaper ?
24. Who is to sing a song ?
25. Who killed the cobra ?
26. Whom do you love ?
27. Which boy broke the glass ?
28. Which girl cheated you ?
29. Does the jug contain milk ?
30. Do you laugh at her ?
31. Why do my habits worry you ?
32. Did they call him a fool ?
33. Should one keep one's promise ?
34. How many days make a week ?
35. Do you want to buy this book ?
36. Did they object to your proposal ?
37. Who is looking into the case ?
38. Why did they give up the search ?
39. How can one bring about the desired result ?
40. Did someone not speak to you ?
41. What did they point out ?
42. What should we insist on ?
43. What are you looking for ?
44. Did anyone ask any questions about me ?
45. Who looks after her ?
46. What must we work for ?
47. What ought we to do ?
48. What did he bring in ?
49. What did he tell me to do ?
50. How much do they expect of us ?

32. From Passive to Active

जिस प्रक्रिया से Active Voice को Passive Voice में परिवर्तित किया जाता है उसी प्रक्रिया के ठीक विपरीत प्रक्रिया से Passive Voice को Active Voice में

परिवर्तित किया जाता है। अगर Passive Voice में agent प्रयुक्त न हो तो अपनी ओर से कोई उपयुक्त agent मानकर उसे Active Voice के Subject के रूप में प्रयोग करें। जैसे :–

Passive	*Active*
I am helped by Ram.	Ram helps me.
A letter is being written by him.	He is writing a letter.
It has been done.	They have done it.
The thief was arrested.	The police arrested the thief.
Milk is used for making butter.	People use milk for making butter.
The matter has been discussed.	We have discussed the matter.
The box was being painted by him.	He was painting the box.
My pocket has been picked.	Someone/A pick-pocket has picked my pocket.
He was being examined.	The doctor was examining him .
She will be helped by me.	I shall help her.
She will be selected.	They will select her.
The fort can be conquered.	The army can conquer the fort.
She can be beaten by us.	We can beat her.
The poor should be helped.	We should help the poor.
One's promise should be kept.	One should keep one's promise.
The speaker was heard patiently.	The audience heard the speaker patiently.
He was appointed monitor.	The teacher appointed him monitor.
Let the post be advertised.	Advertise the post.
He is known to me.	I know him.
What is being looked for by you ?	What are you looking for ?
Who was this poem written by ?	Who wrote this poem ?
This has to be done.	They have to do this.
He is to be helped.	We are to help him.
Is he taught by you ?	Do you teach him ?
Was he helped ?	Did they help him ?
Were they abused by her ?	Did she abuse them ?
Can it be done ?	Can one do it ?
Why are you always beaten by your father ?	Why does your father always beat you ?
Why has she been killed ?	Why have they killed her ?
What is to be done ?	What are people to do ?

EXERCISE 69

Change the following into Active Voice :

1. My mother is helped by me.

2. Rice is grown in Bihar.
3. He is always beaten in the class.
4. Nothing is being done.
5. No work has been done.
6. The thief has been arrested.
7. My pen has been stolen.
8. Something is being looked for.
9. He was arrested yesterday.
10. The tiger was killed.
11. The cat may be played with.
12. She will be awarded.
13. This can be done.
14. Let this work be done.
15. Let the tiger be shot dead.
16. Poor boys should be helped.
17. The country should be loved ?
18. Is it said so ?
19. Are you taught everyday ?
20. Were you beaten by him ?
21. Was she arrested ?
22. Were you being taught by him ?
23. Can it be done ?
24. Should they be helped ?
25. Why are they beaten ?
26. When is it used ?
27. How have you been cheated ?
28. Where were the thieves arrested ?
29. When will he be examined ?
30. Why have they to be taught by you ?
31. What is to be done by you ?
32. What is being looked for by you ?
33. Who was this work done by ?
34. Is good news expected ?
35. Our elders must be listened to.
36. He must be written to.
37. She will be looked after by me.
38. I was shocked at his behaviour.
39. I have been very much interested in this work.
40. She can be given a chance.
41. The case was enquired into.
42. Our house was broken into.
43. Let him be asked to come in.

44. A week is made of seven days.
45. She was felt to have had honesty.
46. Were you to be invited ?
47. What can be done for us ?
48. By which boy were you beaten ?
49. How many students will be awarded ?
50. Who had a car to be bought by ?
51. By whom was the poem written ?
52. He was elected chairman.

EXERCISE 70

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb given in the bracket :

Examples : 1. This work can......in two days (do)
This work can be done in two days.

2. Rice is ......in India. (grow)
Rice is grown in India.

3. One can......success by constant labour. (get)
One can get success by contant labour.

1. You can......this book. (buy)
2. This is to......by him. (do)
3. The boys were......the prize (award)
4. Hindi is......in Bihar. (speak)
5. He is......him. (beat)
6. It is......to me. (know)
7. Something must......for us. (do)
8. The sugar might have......by the boys. (eat)
9. They have......by the chairman. (select)
10. What can......? (do)
11. Why are you......by the teachers ? (love)
12. They have......her. (teach)
13. They have......by her. (teach)
14. He must be......to (listen)
15. She will be ......by us. (praise)
16. She has to......by them. (invite)
17. What is......now by you ? (read)
18. My purse has...... (steal)
19. She can......us. (help)
20. What is she......in ? (interest)
21. I am sometimes......at his behaviour. (vex)
22. It is time for tea...... (take)

23. Promises should...... (keep)
24. Why are you......at him ? (laugh)
25. The thief was...... (catch)
26. He......the letter last night. (post)
27. The letter......just...... (post)
28. My bicycle has...... (sell)
29. It can never......by us. (forget)
30. I was......to do this. (ask)
31. You might......the name of Gandhijee. (hear)
32. It might have...... (do)
33. Smoking is......here (prohibit)
34. He will have to......by us. (help)
35. An honset man......everywhere. (respect)
36. Bread......at night. (eat)
37. Now the work...... (do)
38. Four persons were......in the accident. (kill)
39. Several birds were......by us. (catch)
40. Was the action......? (justify)

EXERCISE 71

On the basis of the sense or hidden meaning transform these sentences into passive voice :—

1. It is impossible to do that.
2. It is your duty to know how to do it.
3. I hope to get the prize.
4. Thirty days make a month.
5. May the king live long !
6. The stone feels rough.
7. Honey tastes sweet.
8. The milk smells sour.
9. Your blame counts for nothing.
10. The drums are beating.
11. The book is printing.
12. The cows are milking.
13. The cannons are firing.
14. The room needs sweeping.
15. Alas ! We shall see her no more.
16. May I come in ?
17. Someone reads to the old man everyday.
18. Nobody has slept in this room since 1980.
19. I'd like somebody to read to me.
20. I hate people laughing at me.

21. Don't let people cheat you.
22. He decided to do the work.
23. They let me go.
24. You should have gone.
25. She should have been dancing.
26. The cups got broken.
27. What makes curd ?
28. One should do one's duty.
29. Clouds covered the sky.
30. You have to see it to believe it..
31. Thank you.

Answer

1. That cannot be done. 2. You are supposed to know how it should be done. 3. It is hoped that I shall get the prize. 4. A month is made of thirty days. 5. It is prayed that the king might live long. 6. The stone is rough when it is felt. 7. Honey is sweet when it is tasted. 8. The milk is sour when it is smelt. 9. Your blame is worth nothing when it is counted. 10. The drums are being beaten. 11. The book is being printed. 12. The cows are being milked. 13. The cannons are being fired. 14. The room needs to be swept. 15. It is sad that she will be seen no more. 16. Am I allowed to come in ? 16.The old man is read to everyday. 18. This room has not been slept in since 1980. 19. I'd like to be read to. 20. I hate being laughed at. 21. Don't let yourself be cheated. 22. He decided that the work should be done. 23. I was let go 24. You are supposed to have gone. 25. She is supposed to have been dancing. 26. The cups were broken. 27. What is curd made of ? 28. Duty should be done. 29. The sky was covered with clouds. 30. It has to be seen to be believed. 31. You are thanked.

33. नीचे कुछ वाक्य दिए जा रहे हैं। इनमें से प्रत्येक वाक्य में दो या दो से अधिक clauses हैं जिन्हें Passive में परिवर्तित किया गया है।

1. The thief broke into the house and took away the things .
   The house was broken into and the things were taken away.
2. You should boil water before you use it.
   Water should be boiled before it is used.
3. The police arrested the thieves and sent them to jail.
   The thieves were arrested and sent to jail.
4. They informed him that he could not buy the car because somebody had already bought it.
   He was informed that the car could not be bought because it had already been bought.
5. People say that if you have to gain something you must lose something.
   It is said that if something has to be gained something must be lost.
6. He caught the bird and killed it.
   The bird was caught and killed.

7. We counted the money and found that it was correct.
The money was counted and found to be correct.

EXERCISE 72

Change the following sentences so that all the transitive verbs or the clauses indicated will be in the passive voice :–

1. Nobody can defeat you if you are alert.
2. This is the place where we shall play the match.
3. She wrote the letter and posted it.
4. He saw the money and took it away.
5. People always laugh at him because of his own follies.
6. He cannot play because he has broken his leg.
7. The teacher will not beat you if you come in time.
8. I have sharpened the knives because I have to cut a number of sticks.
9. Someone has broken my pen so I cannot write with it.
10. He is going to school on foot because somebody has stolen his bicycle.
11. Rajesh knows it very well that nobody will help him.
12. No one can eat fish unless someone cooks it.
13. As soon as the police saw the criminal they chased him.
14. At first they abused him then beat him.
15. If we need a lot of money we must do something extraordinary (second clause)
16. They asked him what he would do with the money. (......what would be done......)
17. They had beaten him up before they knew the truth.
18. We shall deposit the money in the bank so that no thief will steal it.
19. Somebody has broken the glass and I cannot use it.
20. How can I assure you that I shall help you in time of need.
21. Inform the police in case you feel any danger.
22. They say that he will complete the work even we oppose him.
23. When I looked at her I found that she, too, was looking at me.
24. Nobody knows what he is doing.
25. Tell me how much you love me. (second clause)
26. I cannot say who has written this poem.
27. You must not ignore what they have suggested you.
28. They informed me that somebody had taken my watch away from the box in which I had put it.
29. Nobody would have harmed him if they had warned him of the danger.
30. They will award the boys who have saved the life of that little child. (The boys by whom the life......will be......)
31. The teacher punished Ram because all the boys said that he had made noises in the class.

15. Direct and Indirect Speech

Direct Speech : जब किसी वक्ता के कथन को हू-ब-हू उसी के शब्दों में व्यक्त किया जाए तब वह Direct Speech कहलाता है। Direct Speech में किसी का कथन प्रायः inverted commas के बीच में रहता है ।

Indirect Speech : जब किसी वक्ता के कथन को हू-ब-हू उसी के शब्दों में न कहकर उसके आशय या सारांश को अपने शब्दों में व्यक्त किया जाए तब वह Indirect Speech कहलाता है। Indirect Speech को inverted commas के भीतर नहीं रखा जाता है।

Direct Speech	**Indirect Speech**
He said, "I am ready."	He said that he was ready.
Ram said, "I saw him."	Ram said that he had seen him.
He said to me, "What is your name ?"	He asked me what my name was.

कुछ पारिभाषिक शब्दों की व्याख्या

Direct Speech को Indirect Speech में परिवर्तित किया जा सकता है। इसके कुछ नियम हैं जिन्हें समझने के पहले कुछ पारिभाषिक शब्दों को समझ लें।

(a) **Reporting Verb :** Inverted Commas के बाहर एक वाक्य रहता है जिसके Verb को Reporting Verb कहते हैं । He said, "I am ready." यहाँ **'said'** Reporting Verb है।

(b) **Reported Speech :** Inverted Commas के भीतर जो वाक्य रहता है उसे Reported Speech कहते हैं। He said, "I am ready." यहाँ **'I am ready'** Reported Speech है।

(c) **Verb of the Reported Speech :** Inverted Commas के भीतर जो वाक्य रहता है उसे Reported Speech कहते हैं और उसमें प्रयुक्त Verb को Verb of the Reported Speech कहते हैं। He said, "I am ready." यहाँ 'am' Verb of the Reported Speech है।

Changing into Indirect Speech

Direct Speech को Indirect Speech में बदलने के लिए कुछ General Rules हैं और कुछ Special Rules. General Rules उन नियमों को कहते हैं जो प्रत्येक प्रकार के वाक्य के साथ लागू होते हैं, वहीं Special Rules विभिन्न प्रकार के वाक्यों के लिए भिन्न-भिन्न हैं। General Rules को हम तीन भागों में इस प्रकार बाँट सकते हैं :-

(i) **Change of Person**
(ii) **Change of Tense**
(iii) **Change of other Parts of Speech**

1. Change of Person

Direct Speech को Indirect Speech में बदलने पर Inverted Commas के भीतर जितने Persons (first, second और third) रहते हैं, वे इस नियम के अनुसार बदल जाते हैं।

1. First Person Reporting Verb के Subject के अनुसार
2. Second Person Reporting Verb के Object के अनुसार
3. Third Person No change

इसके लिए इस सूत्र को ध्यान में रखें :—

1	2	3
S	O	N.

1 का अर्थ है First Person
2 का अर्थ है Second Person
3 का अर्थ है Third Person
S का अर्थ है Subject
O का अर्थ है Object
N का अर्थ है No change

अर्थात् First Person Subject के अनुसार
Second Person Object के अनुसार
Third Person No change

Note : (1) जब Reporting Verb Present या Future Tense में रहता है तब Indirect Speech में कहीं भी Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। हम यहाँ Reporting Verb को Present/Future Tense में रखेंगे ताकि Tense परिवर्तन की समस्या उत्पन्न न हो और Change of Person की प्रक्रिया सही ढंग से स्पष्ट हो सके।

(2) जब Inverted Commas के भीतर Assertive Sentence रहता है तब Indirect Speech में Inverted Commas के बदले that का प्रयोग होता है।

(3) जब Reporting Verb say/says/said रहे और उसके बाद object रहे तो आप यहाँ इसे Indirect Speech में tell/tells/told में बदल दें। अगर Object न रहे तो Reporting Verb में परिवर्तन नहीं करें।

(4) Person बदलते समय Number तथा Case पर विशेष ध्यान दें, क्योंकि ये नहीं बदलते हैं। आपकी सुविधा के लिए Personal Pronouns के सभी forms को इस तालिका में दिया जा रहा है जिसे हमेशा ध्यान में रखें।

Person	Nominative Case	Possessive Case		Objective Case
		possessive adjective	possessive pronoun	
Ist Person	I we	my our	mine ours	me us
2nd Person	you	your	yours	you
3rd Person	he she it they	his her its their	his hers X theirs	him her it them

Solved Examples :

1. He says to me, "I am your friend."
↑ ↑ ↑ ↑
Subject Object First Person Second Person
He tells me that he is my friend.

2. He says to me, "You are my friend."
↑ ↑ ↑ ↑
Subject Object Second Person First Person
He tells me that I am his friend.

3. She says to me, "I am his sister."
↑ ↑ ↑ ↑
Subject Object First Person Third Person
She tells me that she is his sister.
Note : Third Person (his) ⇒ no change

4. Ram says to me, "I am your friend."
Ram tells me that he is my friend.

5. Sita says to me, "I am your friend."
Sita tells me that she is my friend.

6. Ram says to Sita, "I am your friend."
Ram tells Sita that he is her friend.

7. Sita says to Ram, "I am your friend."
Sita tells Ram that she is his friend.

8. They say to me, "We help you."
They tell me that they help me.

9. I say to them, "I help you."
I tell them that I help them.

10. She says to me, "I love you."
She tells me that she loves me.

11. He says to her, "I love you."
He tells her that he loves her.

12. My mother says to me, "I love you."
My mother tells me that she loves me.

13. My friends say to me, "We love you."
My friends tell me that they love me.

14. I say to my friends, "I love you."
I tell my friends that I love them.

15. They say to me, "We have always helped you."
They tell me that they have always helped me.

16. He says to me, "I shall help you."
He tells me that he will help me.

17. She says to her, "I can teach you."
She tells her that she can teach her.

18. He says to Sita, "I love you and your dog."
He tells Sita that he loves her and her dog.

19. Ram says to Sheela, "I am your friend and you are my friend."
Ram tells Sheela that he is her friend and she is his friend.

20. Vinay says to Ganesh, "If you help me I shall help you."
Vinay tells Ganesh that if he helps him he will help him.

21. She says to me, "You know him but he does not know you".
She tells me that I know him but he does not know me.

22. Manoj says to Geeta, "You were teaching my sister."
Manoj tells Geeta that she was teaching his sister.

23. They say to me, "We help you because you help us."
They tell me that they help me because I help them.

24. The boys say to the teacher, "We can't do without your help."
The boys tell the teacher that they can't do without his help.

25. He says to her, "Yours is black but mine is white."
He tells her that hers is black but his is white.

26. She says to Ram, "If you give me a book I shall give you a pen."
She tells Ram that if he gives her a book she will give him a pen.

27. The boys say to me, "You were our friend and we were your friends."
The boys tell me that I was their friend and they were my friends.

28. The teacher has said to me, "I am always ready to help you because you are a good boy."

The teacher has told me that he is always ready to help me because I am a good boy.

29. Sita will tell me, "I need your help."
Sita will tell me that she needs my help.

30. He says to my mother, "You should help me because I am very poor."
He tells my mother that she should help him because he is very poor.

31. The student says, "I could pass the examination."
The student says that he could pass the examination.

32. Poonam says to me, "I have come to you because I am in need of your help."
Poonam tells me that she has come to me because she is in need of my help.

33. She has said to us, "I shall help you if you help me."
She has told us that she will help us if we help her.

34. Gopal says to Radha; "I like you because your behaviour is good."
Gopal tells Radha that he likes her because her behaviour is good.

35. She says to them, "I know you and your names because your names were written on the poster."
She tells them that she knows them and their names because their names were written on the poster.

36. He says to us, "I wanted to help you but I am not going to help you because you have insulted me several times."
He tells us that he wanted to help us but he is not going to help us because we have insulted him several times.

37. Rakesh will say to her, "I am your brother and so I shall save you from any danger even at the cost of my life."
Rakesh will tell her that he is her brother and so he will save her from any danger even at the cost of his life.

38. She says to me, "I have given you my life, but you have given me only tears, and so I am not going to believe you."
She tells me that she has given me her life but I have given her only tears, and so she is not going to believe me.

EXERCISE 73

Change the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. He says, "I am reading my book."
2. She says, "I am reading my book."
3. You say, "I am reading my book."
4. They say, "We are reading our books."
5. Ram says to me, "I help you."

6. I say to Ram, "I help you."
7. Ram says to Lata, "I help you."
8. Lata says to Ram, "I help you."
9. They say to us, "We help you."
10. He says to me, "I am your friend."
11. She says to them, "I am your friend."
12. I say to her, "I am your friend."
13. Mohan says to Geeta, "I am your friend and you are my friend."
14. The boys say to me, "We have no time for you."
15. I say to them, "I have love for you."
16. Ram says to Meena, "I help you because you help me."
17. They say to her, "We wanted to help you."
18. She says to the boys, "You can't defeat me."
19. She will tell me, "I am ready to help you."
20. She will tell the girls, "I have always supported you."
21. He has said to them, "I don't care for you."
22. They say to me, "You must obey us."
23. I say to them, "You must obey me."
24. Ganesh says to Reena, "I need your pen."
25. Reena says to Ganesh, "I need your pen."

EXERCISE 74

Change the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. He says to me, "I shall help you if you help me."
2. She says to us, "I shall help you if you help me."
3. Ram says to Sita, "I shall help you if you help me."
4. Radha says to Ganesh, "I like you because you have always helped me."
5. Imran says to Razia, "I want to help you because you have always helped me."
6. I have told them, "You should help me."
7. He says to me, "I am your servant and you are my master."
8. She says to him, "I am your servant and you are my master."
9. He says to me, "This is mine and that is yours."
10. She says to them, "This is mine and that is yours."
11. She says to me, "I wanted to help you but I couldn't."
12. The workers say to the owner, "You can't do without us."
13. He will say to me, "I am your neighbour and so you should help me."
14. We will say to him, "We are your friends and so you should help us."
15. He says to me, "I know you and your family very well but you don't know me at all."
16. She says to me, "I have been waiting for you since morning."
17. He says to me, "I was reading while you were playing."

18. She says to him, "I shall be your true friend."
19. He says to me, "She helps you."
20. The farmers say to me, "We never quarrel with them."

2. Change of Tense

(i) जब Reporting Verb Present/Future Tense में रहता है तब Indirect Speech में कहीं भी Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। अभी तक दिए गए उदाहरणों से यह पूर्णतः स्पष्ट है।

(ii) जब Reporting Verb Past Tense में रहता है तब Inverted Commas के भीतर प्रयुक्त Tense में परिवर्तन होता है। यह परिवर्तन इस प्रकार होता है।

Direct		**Indirect**
Simple Present	⇒	Simple Past
Present Continuous	⇒	Past Continuous
Present Perfect	⇒	Past Perfect
Present Perfect Continuous	⇒	Past Perfect Continuous

Simple Past	⇒	Past Perfect
Past Continuous	⇒	Past Perfect Continuous
Past Perfect	⇒	no change of tense
Past Perfect Continuous	⇒	no change of tense

shall/will	⇒	should/would
can	⇒	could
may	⇒	might
am/is/are	⇒	was/were
have/has	⇒	had
was/were	⇒	had been
had to + V^1	⇒	had had to + V^1
could/should/would/might	⇒	generally no change

Solved Examples :

1. He said to me, "I am your friend."
   He told me that he was my friend.
2. She said to me, "I am to help you."
   She told me that she was to help me.
3. They said to us, "We are giving you a nice present."
   They told us that they were giving us a nice present.

4. Mohan said to her, "I love you."
Mohan told her that he loved her.

5. I said to my friends, "I have sympathy for you."
I told my friends that I had sympathy for them.

6. She said to me, "I want to give you my pen."
She told me that she wanted to give me her pen.

7. He said to n.e, "They have never helped me."
He told me that they had never helped him.

8. Madan said to her, "I have been teaching your sister for years."
Madan told her that he had been teaching her sister for years.

9. The child said to mother, "I shall obey you."
The child told mother that he would obey her.

10. He said to me, "I can defeat you."
He told me that he could defeat me.

11. Sita said to Ram, "You should/could/would help me."
Sita told Ram that he should/could/would help her.

12. He said to me, "I help you because you are a good man."
He told me that he helped me because I was a good man.

13. He said, "I shall be playing with him."
He said that he would be playing with him.

14. He said to me, "I shall be able to help you."
He told me that he would be able to help me.

EXERCISE 75

Change into Indirect Speech :—

1. The boys said to the teacher, "We need your help."
2. He said to me, "I am your neighbour."
3. She said to me, "I am ready to help you."
4. He said to her, "I help you because you are a good girl."
5. Ram said to Geeta, "I am not going to help you."
6. He said to me, "I have no time for you."
7. They said to me, "We have done everything for you."
8. You said to her, "I have not beaten your cat."
9. He said to me, "I have been waiting for you for two hours."
10. Meena said to Ravi, "You are my best friend."
11. He said to them, "I can help you if you don't harm me."
12. The farmer said to the little boy, "You can live with me."
13. He said to you, "I shall help you."
14. Ravi said to Leela, "I shall be helping you."
15. She said, "I shall be a nurse."

16. He said to me, "You will get success if you work hard."
17. I said to her, "If you help me I shall help you."
18. She said to him, "I shall be your guide."
19. He said, "I could pass the examination."
20. The poor men said to me, "You should help us because we depend on you."
21. He said to her, "You will not be able to do my work."
22. She said to them, "I am your neighbour, so I shall help you."
23. Mohan said to me, "Since I don't know you I can't help you."
24. The villagers said to the saint, "We shall be very happy if you live in our village."
25. He said, "I have everything that I need."
26. She said to me, "I don't like you because you are not rich."

Solved Examples :

1. He said to me, "I wanted to help you."
   He told me that he had wanted to help me.
2. They said to me, "We were your friends."
   They told me that they had been my friends.
3. She said to me, "I was in need of your help."
   She told me that she had been in need of my help.
4. Gopal said to her, "I was going to you."
   Gopal told her that he had been going to her.
5. The child said to his mother, "I was playing with my friends."
   The child told his mother that he had been playing with his friends.
6. He said to me, "I had already finished the work."
   He told me that he had already finished the work.
7. He said, "I had been waiting for two days."
   He said that he had been waiting for two days.
8. He said, "I was absent."
   He said that he had been absent.
9. He said to her, "I was busy, so I didn't help you."
   He told her that he had been busy, so he hadn't helped her.
10. He said to me, "I had no time for you."
    He told me that he had had no time for me.
11. He said, "I had to do the work."
    He said that he had had to do the work.

Note : (i) was/were Simple Past Tense में है। इसका form Past Perfect Tense में had been होगा।

(ii) इसी प्रकार I had का Past Perfect I had had होगा।

Exception

यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर कोई ऐसा कथन हो जिससे चिरंतन सत्य या सिद्धांत (Universal Truth) का बोध हो, तो Reporting Verb के Past Tense में रहने पर भी Reported Speech के Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा। जैसे :—

1. He said, "The earth is round."
   He said that the earth is round.
2. My father said to me, "Honesty is the best policy."
   My father told me that honesty is the best policy.
3. He said, "Work is worship."
   He said that work is worship.
4. The teacher said, "The sun rises in the east and sets in the west."
   The teacher said that the sun rises in the east and sets in the west.
5. He remarked, "A bad carpenter quarrels with his tools."
   He remarked that a bad carpenter quarrels with his tools.
6. He said, "Two and two is four."
   He said that two and two is four.

EXERCISE 76

Change into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said to me, "I helped you."
2. She said to him, "I gave you my pen."
3. They said to the girls, "You danced well."
4. I said to him, "I was your neighbour."
5. The farmers said to him, "We were always ready to help you."
6. My mother said to my brothers, "I was making tea for you."
7. He said to them, "I was waiting for you."
8. They said, "We were struggling hard."
9. He said, "I had to wait."
10. She said, "I had no money at all."
11. They said, "We were present."
12. He said, "I had won the prize."
13. They said to me, "We had not done that."
14. She said to her, "I had nothing to do with you."
15. I said to her, "I had been playing with you."
16. She said to me, "We had been waiting for you."
17. He said to me, "The earth moves round the sun."
18. He said, "When the cat is away the mice play."
19. The teacher said, "Labour never goes in vain."
20. He said, "I get up in the morning."

21. Ram said to me, "I love my country very much."
22. My father said, "Time and tide wait for no man."
23. He said, "We are mortal."
24. She said, "We can't escape death."
25. I said, "Iron is more useful than gold."
26. He said to me, "I know what you did."
27. He said, "He was very polite and promised to do what he could for us."
28. She said to me, "I don't know what your mother will say when she finds me with you."

Change of other Parts of Speech

जब Reporting Verb Past Tense में रहता है तब Reported Speech में जितने भी निकटता-सूचक शब्द रहते हैं वे सब-के-सब Indirect Speech में दूरी-सूचक शब्दों में बदल जाते हैं।

Direct	*Indirect*
this	that
these	those
here	there
hence	thence
now	then
thus	so
today	that day
yesterday	the day before/the previous day
the day before yesterday	two days before
tomorrow	the next day/the following day
the day after tomorrow	in two days' time
next week/year etc	the following week/ year etc
last week/year etc	the previous week/year etc
a year ago	a year before/the previous year

Solved Examples :—

1. She said, "I am glad to be here this evening."
   She said that she was glad to be there that evening.
2. He said, "I am now speaking to this boy."
   He said that he was then speaking to that boy.
3. He said, "I will do it tomorrow."
   He said that he would do it the next day.
4. She said, "I am starting the day after tomorrow."
   She said that she was starting in two days' time.

5. He said, "It is not so foggy today as it was yesterday."
He said that it was not so foggy that day as it had been the day before.

6. "I saw him the day before yesterday," she said.
She said that she had seen him two days before.

7. The girl said to me, "I shall meet you next month."
The girl told me that she would meet me the following month.

8. He said, "She died a year ago."
He said that she had died a year before.

Note : चूँकि घटना Past time से संबंधित रहती है, निकटता-सूचक शब्दों को दूरी-सूचक शब्दों में बदलना पड़ता है। यदि Reported Speech में प्रयुक्त वस्तु/परिस्थिति वक्ता के साथ अभी भी मौजूद हो तो उस हालत में निकटता-सूचक शब्दों को दूरी-सूचक शब्दों में नहीं बदला जायेगा। जैसे—

1. He said, "This is my table."
अगर यहाँ टेबुल Reporter के सामने बोलने के वक्त भी मौजूद हो तो Indirect Speech में this को that में बदला नहीं जायेगा। अर्थात्
He said that this was his table.

2. This morning Ram said to me, "I shall give you money today."
This morning Ram told me that he would give me money today.
यहाँ **this morning** से यह स्पष्ट है कि दिन नहीं बदला है। अतः today का that day नहीं होगा।

EXERCISE 77

Change into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said, "I want to stay here this morning."
2. She said, "These flowers are very beautiful."
3. They said to her, "We shall see you tomorrow."
4. He said, "I am going away tomorrow."
5. She said to me, "I can't give you money today."
6. The boy said to his mother, "I shall not go to school today."
7. He said, "My mother will come the day after tomorrow."
8. I said, "I did it yesterday."
9. She said, "I wrote to him the day before yesterday."
10. The hunter said, "I killed the tiger yesterday and I am going to sell it tomorrow."
11. She said to me, "I couldn't meet you last night, because I was so busy."
12. She said, "My husband died a year ago."
13. Sita said to me, "I tried to do it yesterday but it couldn't be done because you were absent."
14. She said, "I shall join the office next week."

15. "I saw a wild animal in the garden yesterday," said she.
16. "I was trying to do it yesterday," he said.
17. "I am intending to do it tomorrow," said the man.
18. "Yesterday Ram and I went to the river," said he.
19. He said, "She arrived yesterday and will go tomorrow."
20. "I can't go there today because I am busy but I shall go tomorrow," said she.

ध्यान देने योग्य कुछ आवश्यक बातें

A. कभी-कभी Reporting Verb के बाद कोई Object नहीं रहता है और Reported Speech में प्रयुक्त Second Person के pronoun/adjective को बदलने की आवश्यकता पड़ती है। वैसी परिस्थिति में आप अपने मन से कोई उपयुक्त object को चुन लें और उसे Reporting Verb के बाद दे दें। जैसे :—

1. He said, "I am waiting for you."
   He told me that he was waiting for me.
   or, He told her that he was waiting for her.
2. He said, "I do not wish to see any of you."
   He told us that he did not wish to see any of us.
   or, He told them that he did not wish to see any of them.
3. My father said, "You should take care of your health."
   My father told me that I should take care of my health.
4. The teacher said, "You should not make a noise in the class."
   The teacher told the students/me/him that they/I/he should not make a noise in the class.

इस प्रकार Object का चयन आपकी इच्छा पर निर्भर करता है। अतः आप जो उपयुक्त समझें उसका चयन करें। अगर किसी Passage को Indirect Speech में बदलना हो तो पूरे Passage के भाव को समझते हुए उपयुक्त Object का चयन करें।

B. यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर संबोधन के शब्द के रूप में नाम आये तो इस नाम को Reporting Verb का Object बना दें। जैसे :—

1. He said, "Ram, I want to help you."
   He told Ram that he wanted to help him."
2. Sita said, "I love you very much, Mohan."
   Sita told Mohan that she loved him very much.

C. यदि Terms of address के रूप में Ladies and gentlemen, My dear friends, Future of the country इत्यादि आवें तो आप Addressing + object + as + term of address देकर वाक्य शुरू करें। जैसे :—

1. The leader said, "Ladies and gentlemen, if you give me a chance to serve you I shall do my best to please you."

Addressing the people as ladies and genltemen the leader said that if they gave him a chance to serve them, he would do his best to please them.

2. The Prime Minister said to the students, "Future of the country, you are my hope, and so you will be given perfect care and guidance."
Addressing the students as future of the country the Prime Minister said that they were his hope, and so they would be given perfect care and guidance.

D. यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर O, Well, Okay इत्यादि हो तो इसे Indirect Speech में लुप्त कर दें। जैसे :—

He said, "Well, Ram, you can take it."
He told Ram that he could take it.

E. Reported Speech वाक्य के शुरू में भी रह सकता है या Reporting Verb के बाद में या Reporting Verb के दोनों तरफ, परन्तु Indirect Speech में वही पद पहले आयेगा जो Inverted Commas के बाहर है जैसा कि आप करते आ रहे हैं।

1. "I shall go with you as soon as I am ready", replied she.
She replied that she would go with me as soon as she was ready.

2. "I have completed my job", he said.
He said that he had completed his job.

3. "I am always ready to help you", she said to me, "because you are my neighbour."
She told me that she was always ready to help me because I was her neighbour.

EXERCISE 78

Change into Indirect Speech :—

1. He says, "I am your friend and you are my friend."
2. Sita will say, "Everything I have is yours."
3. She said, "I wanted to give you my handkerchief."
4. "We shall help you", they said to Sita, "in case nobody comes to help you."
5. "I can never forget you", said she.
6. "Okay, I will come again tomorrow", he said.
7. The teacher said, "Mohan, what you do is not good."
8. He said, "Well, I shall punish you today."
9. She said, "Radha, you will be awarded for the bravery you have shown today."
10. He said, "Radha, you are my life."
11. "Many people," he said, "are not happy over the progress of India."
12. The leader said, "Dear friends, I can't do without your help."

13. He said, "Brothers and sisters, I know very well that you did everything for me that you could."
14. He said to the king, "My lord, I am a very poor man and need your mercy."
15. "My sons", said he, "you should never forget that unity is strength."

SPECIAL RULES

General Rules जहाँ सभी प्रकार के वाक्यों के साथ लागू होते हैं वहीं Special Rules विभिन्न प्रकार के वाक्यों के लिए भिन्न-भिन्न होते हैं।

SPECIAL RULES : ASSERTIVE SENTENCES/STATEMENTS

Inverted Commas के अन्दर प्रयुक्त Assertive Sentences को Indirect Speech में परिवर्तित करने के लिए जो भी नियम हैं उनसे आप परिचित हो चुके हैं क्योंकि अभी तक आपने जिन वाक्यों को Indirect Speech में परिवर्तित किया है वे सभी के सभी Assertive Sentences हैं।

आपने देखा है कि Inverted Commas को that में बदल दिया जाता है। Reporting Verb 'say' को tell + object में बदल दिया जाता है अगर say के बाद to + object हो। यदि to + object का प्रयोग न हो तो say को ज्यों-का-त्यों छोड़ दिया जाता है। आप चाहें तो say + to + object को tell + object में नहीं भी बदल सकते हैं पर बदल देना ज्यादा अच्छा होगा।

SPECIAL RULES : INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

जब Inverted Commas के भीतर Interrogative Sentence हो तो इसे Indirect Speech में बदलने के लिए निम्नलिखित नियमों की सहायता लें।

(i) Reporting Verb को ask में बदल दें।

(ii) Inverted Commas के बदले that का प्रयोग नहीं करें। अगर Sentence **Question Word** (when, what, why, where, who, how, which, how many, how much, etc) से शुरू हो तो that के जगह पर प्रयुक्त **Question Word** ही दें।

(iii) यदि Interrogative Sentence किसी **Anomalous Finite** से शुरू हो तो Inverted Commas के बदले if/whether का प्रयोग करें।

(iv) प्रयुक्त Interrogative Verb Form को Assertive Verb Form में बदल दें और Indirect Speech के लिए जो सामान्य नियम हैं उन्हें apply कर पूरे वाक्य को Indirect Speech में बदल दें।

Note : Interrogative Verb Form को Assertive Verb Form में इस प्रकार बदलें—

1. Do you eat ?	You eat.
2. Do you not eat ?	You do not eat.
3. Does he read ?	He reads.
4. Doesn't she help you ?	She does not help you.
5. Did you know ?	You knew.
6. Did they not come ?	They did not come.
7. Are you poor ?	You are poor.
8. Have you eaten ?	You have eaten.
9. Was she dancing ?	She was dancing.
10. Will you do ?	You will do.
11. Shan't I get ?	I shan't get.
12. Can she do ?	She can do.
13. Should you go there ?	You should go there.
14. Have you no time ?	You have no time.
15. Had you a book ?	You had a book.
16. Where do you live ?	Where you live.
17. Why don't you play ?	Why you don't play.
18. When did he come ?	When he came.
19. Why didn't she dance ?	Why she didn't dance.
20. How shall I go ?	How I shall go.
21. How much do you eat ?	How much you eat.
22. What is your name ?	What your name is.
23. Who are you ?	Who you are.
24. What was the name of your friend ?	What the name of your friend was.
25. Who killed the tiger ?	Who killed the tiger.
26. Who can do this ?	Who can do this.
27. How many boys will come ?	How many boys will come.
28. Who helps her ?	Who helps her.
29. Who will go ?	Who will go.
30. Who has beaten you ?	Who has beaten you.

Solved Examples :

1. He said to me, "Are you ill ?"
   He asked me if I was ill.
2. She said to Mohan, "Have you a red pen ?"
   She asked Mohan if he had a red pen.
3. She said to me, "Can you kill a tiger ?"
   She asked me if I could kill a tiger.
4. They said to me, "Will you help me ?"
   They asked me if I would help them.
5. He said to me, "Are you joining tomorrow ?"
   He asked me if I was joining the next day.

6. They said, "Were you present there ?"
They asked me if I had been present there.

7. She said to me, "Were you not living there ?"
She asked me if I had not been living there.

8. She said to me, "Do you love me ?"
She asked me if I loved her.

9. She said to me, "Do you not love me ?"
She asked me if I did not love her.

10. Ram said to me, "Does he know you ?"
Ram asked me if he knew me.

11. They said to me, "Do we not help you ?"
They asked me if they did not help me.

12. Ram said to Sita, "Did you teach my sister ?"
Ram asked Sita if she had taught his sister.

13. Mohan said to his sister, "Did you not take my watch ?"
Mohan asked his sister if she had not taken his watch.

14. He said to me, "Should you beat him ?"
He asked me if I should beat him.

EXERCISE 79

Change into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said to me, "Are you poor ?"
2. She said to me, "Am I not helpful to you ?"
3. She said to me, "Were you busy ?"
4. He said to her, "Was I not helping you ?"
5. Ram said to me, "Are you going today ?"
6. The boy said to his mother, "Have you sweets for me ?"
7. He said to his friend, "Have I vexed you ?"
8. He said to the farmers, "Have you enough money to buy sweets ?"
9. He said to me, "Had you not gone there ?"
10. "Can you break this lock ?" the girl said to him.
11. He said to me, "Should you do this ?"
12. "Have you written the letter ?" he asked me.
13. He said to his mother, "Will you give me money ?"
14. He said to me, "Will you not go to Patna ?"
15. "Will you have time to play ?" he asked her.
16. He said to her, "Do you know my father ?"
17. He said, "Don't you play football ?"
18. She said, "Does he help you ?"
19. They asked me, "Doesn't Ram read in your school ?"

20. He said, "Did he come ?"
21. She said to me, "Did you not like my sister ?"
22. He said to the boys, "Didn't you make a noise in the class ?"
23. He said to me, "Do you know that the shoes you are wearing aren't a pair ?"
24. He said to her, "Do you think it may rain today ?"
25. She asked me, "Are you sorry for what you did ?"
26. He said to me, "Do you know the person you are living with was a thief?"
27. "Can you tell me why he gave up his study ?" he said to me.

Solved Examples :

1. He said to me, "Where do you live ?"
   He asked me where I lived.
2. She said to me, "What do you want ?"
   She asked me what I wanted.
3. The girl said to him, "Why don't you believe me ?"
   The girl asked him why he did not believe her.
4. He said to me, "Why did you give up your study ?"
   He asked me why I had given up my study.
5. I said to the little boy, "Why are you sad ?".
   I asked the little boy why he was sad.
6. She said, "What were you doing ?"
   She asked me what I had been doing.
7. He said to me, "When will you give me your books ?"
   He asked me when I would give him my books.
8. She asked me, "What can you do for me ?"
   She asked me what I could do for her.
9. He said to me, "What is your name ?"
   He asked me what my name was.
10. She said to me, "Who are you ?"
    She asked me who I was.
11. He said, "Who went there ?"
    He asked who had gone there.
12. He asked, "What happened ?"
    He asked what had happened.
13. He said to me, "Who has beaten you ?"
    He asked me who had beaten me.
14. She said to him, "How many books have you ?"
    She asked him how many books he had.

15. He asked, "How many teachers are there in your school ?"
He asked me how many teachers there were in my school.

16. He said, "Which class do you read in ?"
He asked me which class I read in.

17. He said, "What is this strange outcry ?"
He asked what that strange outcry was.

18. He said, "What is falling ?"
He asked what was falling.

EXERCISE 80

Put the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said to me, "Why do you vex me ?"
2. He said to me, "Why don't you do as I command ?"
3. She said, "What does Ram do ?"
4. He said, "Why does he not respect you ?"
5. He said to his brothers, "Why did you go there ?"
6. I said to my friends, "Why didn't you appear at the examination ?"
7. The boys said to the old woman, "Why are you sad ?"
8. The teacher said to us, "Why were you absent ?"
9. He said to Mohan, "What are you interested in ?"
10. She said, "When is your mother coming ?"
11. Mohan said to me, "How were you preparing for the examination ?"
12. She said to me, "Why have you no time for me ?"
13. She said to me, "Why have you wanted to meet my father ?"
14. She said to her, "When had he done the job ?"
15. He said to her, "When will you give me your note book ?"
16. He said to the travellers, "What can I do for you ?"
17. He asked, "Why should I help you ?"
18. He said to me, "What is your father's name ?"
19. She asked, "What is your mother ?"
20. They asked me, "Who are you and what do you want ?"
21. He said, "Who disturbs you ?"
22. She said, "Who can cheat me ?"
23. They said to me, "Who is helping you ?"
24. He asked, "Who killed your dog ?"
25. She asked, "How many girls are dancing tonight ?"
26. He said, "How much money can you give me for the service I have done to you ?"
27. He said to me, "How many cows have you ?"
28. They said, "Who will save us ?"
29. "Whose car did you borrow last night ?" she said to me.

30. "Why do you think it may be dangerous ?" I asked her.
31. "How many sleeping pills have you taken ?" said the doctor.
32. "Why should I help you when you don't care for me ?" asked he.
33. He asked, "Which team won the match ?"
34. He asked the stranger, "What are you and where are you coming from ?"
35. He said, "Which country do you live in ?"
36. He said to me, "What will you do ?"
37. He said, "What will save us ?"
38. He said to me, "What is wrong with it ?"
39. He said, "What is the main problem here ?"
40. He said, "What is this ?"
41. He said, "What happened ?"

Special Notes on Interrogative Sentences

A. अभी तक आपने Reporting Verb को ask में बदला है। आप ask के बदले inquire या inquire of का भी प्रयोग कर सकते हैं। **Inquir** का प्रयोग तब होगा जब उसके बाद object का प्रयोग न करना हो और **inquire of** का प्रयोग तब होगा जब उसके बाद object का प्रयोग करना हो। जैसे :—

1. He said to me, "Are you busy ?"
   He asked me if I was busy.
   or, He inquired of me if I was busy.
2. He said, "Is the train late ?"
   He asked if the train was late.
   or, He inquired if the train was late.

B. जब Reporting Verb Past Tense में रहता है तब shall/will को should/would में बदला जाता है। परन्तु I/we should के बदले I/we would देना ज्यादा अच्छा होगा जैसे :—

He said to me, "Will you help me ?"
He asked me if I would help him.

C. जब shall I/We से request का बोध हो तब shall को should में बदलें। जैसे:—

The boy said to his mother, "Shall I go to the picture ?"
The boy asked his mother if he should go to the picture.

D. जब किसी प्रश्न का उत्तर yes/no में दिया गया हो तो Indirect Speech में subject + उपयुक्त auxiliary Verb प्रयुक्त होगा या yes रहने पर reply in the affirmative तथा no रहने पर reply in the negative देना होगा। जैसे :—

1. He said to me, "Can you swim ?" 'No', I said.
   He asked me if I could swim. I said I couldn't/I replied in the negative.

2. He said to me, "Did you see her ?" I said, "Yes."
He asked me if I had seen her.
I replied in the affirmative/I said that I had.
3. She said to me, "Do you take coffee ?"
I said, "Yes, I do."
She asked me if I took coffee.
I replied in the affirmative/I said that I did.

Note : यहाँ Indirect Speech में subject + auxiliary Verb से काम चल जायेगा। पूरे वाक्य को repeat करना आवश्यक नहीं है।

EXERCISE 81

Put the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said to me, "The time has come when you have to show your strength."
2. He said to her, "I want to know why you didn't go there."
3. The teacher asked, "What made you do this ?"
4. "What will happen if the strike continues ?" asked the man.
5. He said to me, "You can keep that one if you like."
6. The teacher said, "I shall prove now that the earth moves round the sun."
7. The child said, "What does it matter if I don't go to school today ?"
8. He said, "It may rain tomorrow."
9. She said, "Where did you go yesterday ?"
10. He said, "Did you not meet her two days ago ?"
11. He said to me, "I know he was a robber."
12. The teacher said, "Labour never goes in vain."
13. He said, "A drowning man will catch at a straw."
14. "This is my horse", said he, "and if I don't prove it in a few hours I will give up my claim."
15. Finding no remedy, he said to himself, "It is better to die than to live in such misery as I am compelled to suffer from a master who treats me and has always treated me so unkindly."
16. The teacher said, "I have told you before, that when I am speaking, you should be silent."
17. He said, "Shall I go to the theatre ?"
18. She said, "Shall I open the gate ?"
19. She said to me, "Will you help me ?" I said, "Yes."
20. He said to me, "Are you ill ?"
I said, "No."
21. He said, "Have you read the book ?"
I said, "Yes, I have."
22. "Did you sleep well last night ?" he said to her. "No," she said.
23. "Do you go there everyday ?" he asked. "Yes, I do", replied I.

SPECIAL RULES : IMPERATIVE SENTENCES

Imperative Sentence से प्राय: order, command, advice या request का बोध होता है। इसे Indirect Speech में बदलने के लिए निम्नलिखित उपाय करें—

(i) Reporting Verb को अर्थ के अनुसार tell/ask/order/command/warn/request/suggest/advise आदि में बदल दें।

(ii) Direct Speech में Reporting Verb के बाद Object रहे या न रहे, Indirect Speech में Reporting Verb के बाद Object अवश्य दें।

(iii) Please, Kindly आदि शब्दों का लोप कर दें।

(iv) Inverted Commas को to/not to में बदल दें।

Solved Examples :

1. He said, "Bring a glass of water."
   He told /asked /ordered me to bring a glass of water.
2. He said to Sita, "Lend me your pen for a moment."
   He asked Sita to lend him her pen for a moment.
3. He said, "Do as I say."
   He told me to do as he said.
4. He said, "Go away."
   He told me to go away.
5. He said, "Ram, switch off the T. V."
   He asked/told/ordered Ram to switch off the T. V.
6. The doctor said to me, "Take medicine in time."
   The doctor advised me to take medicine in time.
7. My son said to me, "Please buy me a coat."
   My son requested me to buy him a coat.
8. She said to me, "Have a cup of tea."
   She told me to have a cup of tea.
9. The captain said to the soldiers, "Fire at once."
   The captain commanded the soldiers to fire at once.
10. "Read it before you sign it", he said to me.
    He advised me to read it before I signed it.

Emphatic Imperatives

कुछ Imperative Sentences के पहले 'Do' का प्रयोग वाक्य को जोरदार (emphatic) बनाने के लिए किया जाता है। ऐसे वाक्यों को Indirect Speech में बदलने के लिए वाक्य में प्रयुक्त 'Do' का लोप कर दें और उसके बाद ऊपर बतलाए गए नियमों को apply करें। जैसे :—

1. He said to me, "Do come tomorrow."
   He asked/requested me to come next day.
2. He said to me, "Do sing it again."
   He requested me to sing it again.
3. I said to him, "Do have a cup of tea."
   I requested him to have a cup of tea.
4. I said to her, "Do have patience."
   I asked her to have patience.

जब 'Do' का प्रयोग emphasis के लिए न होकर अन्य verbs के समान हो तब do का लोप नहीं होगा। जैसे :—

1. He said to me, "Do this at once."
   He asked me to do that at once.
2. She said to us, "Do whatever you like."
   She told us to do whatever we liked.

Negative Imperatives

यदि Imperative Sentence Don't से शुरू हो तो Indirect Speech में to के बदले 'not to' दें या Reporting Verb को **forbid** में बदलें जैसा कि इन उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है—

1. He told me, "Don't shout in the class."
   He asked me not to shout in the class.
   or, He forbade me to shout in the class.
2. He said, "Don't make too much noise, children."
   He asked the children not to make too much noise.
   or, He forbade the children to make too much noise.
3. "Don't drive too fast", she said.
   She told me not to drive too fast.
   She forbade me to drive too fast.

Note : (i) ध्यान दें कि forbade के बाद **not to** का प्रयोग नहीं होकर सिर्फ **'to'** का प्रयोग हुआ है।

(ii) ऊपर अनेक स्थानों पर told तथा asked में से किसी भी एक का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

EXERCISE 82

Put the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said to me, "Go there."
2. The commander said to his men, "Fight well."
3. The old man said to his servant, "Close the door."

4. He said to her, "Please help me."
5. He said, "Please give me your bicycle."
6. She said to me, "Kindly give me some money."
7. The doctor said to me, "Take care of your health."
8. Ram said to me, "Do this at once."
9. I said to my servant, "Go to market."
10. The saint said to me, "Believe in God."
11. The teacher said, "Stand up on the bench."
12. The teacher said, "Be quiet and listen to me."
13. He said to her, "Wait for me till I return."
14. She said to me, "Have a cup of tea."
15. My father said to me, "Don't walk in the sun."
16. Ram said to his servant, "Don't do this."
17. He said, "My son, don't kill birds."
18. He said, "Don't sleep late."
19. The teacher told us, "Don't talk in the class."
20. The doctor said to me, "Don't smoke."
21. He said to me, "Do tell me a new story."
22. He said, "Do come here tomorrow."
23. She told me, "Do have a cup of tea."
24. I told her, "Do have patience."
25. She said to me, "Do this work."
26. They said to me, "Please do help us."
27. The nurse said, "Open your mouth."

EXERCISE 83

Put the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. The teacher said, "Work hard if you want to succeed."
2. The teacher told us, "Show me the work that you have done."
3. "Don't ask so many curious questions", said the farmer to his wife.
4. The captain of the team said to the players, "Try to win."
5. The teacher said to the boys, "Read your lesson well."
6. Titania said to Bottom, "Come and sit with me on the bed of flowers."
7. Hari said to the boys, "Depend on what I say."
8. The teacher said, "Don't make noise when I am in the class."
9. Ranjan said to his friend, "Please lend me your pencil."
10. "Calm yourself, please", said the princess.
11. He said, "Don't ask so many questions."
12. "Stop that horrible noise", he said.
13. She said to me, "Try your luck elsewhere."
14. He said, "Daughter, take my golden jug, and fetch me some water from the well."

15. He said to me, "Please remember what I told you."
16. "Call the first witness", said the judge.
17. "Bring them here quickly, Anil", Said Rajendra.
18. "Go and send off this letter", she said to the maid.
19. The teacher said, "Don't sleep late and miss the train."
20. The teacher said to the students, "Keep the books in your bags."
21. He said to the servants, "Take your things and be gone."
22. "Hurry up, please", the driver said to the passengers.
23. The teacher said to them, "Do not waste your time."
24. "Look before you leap", he advised her.
25. "Don't believe everything you hear", he warned me.
26. "Don't touch this switch, John", I said.
27. "Do whatever you like", she said to us.
28. "Read it for yourself if you don't believe what I say is correct", she told me.
29. "Remember to switch off when you have finished", she said to me.
30. He said to me, "Help her the time you feel she is in need."
31. I said, "Don't drive so fast when the road is busy."

Some More Hints on Imperative Sentences

(A) Imperative + Question-tag

कुछ Imperative Sentences के बाद Question-tag आता है। ऐसे वाक्यों को Indirect Speech में इस प्रकार बदलें :—

(i) Question-tag को बिलकुल छोड़ दें।

(ii) Reporting Verb को tell/ask/ request में अर्थ के अनुसार बदल दें और उसके बाद ऊपर बतलाए गए नियमों को apply करें। जैसे :—

1. He said to me, "Give me some money, will you ?"
   He requested me to give him some money.
2. She said to me, "Help the poor orphan, will you ?"
   She asked me to help the poor orphan.

(B) Sentences beginning with 'Let'

कुछ Imperative Sentences 'Let' से शुरू होते हैं। ऐसे वाक्यों सें विभिन्न तरह के भाव व्यक्त होते हैं। अगर इनसे प्रस्ताव/सुझाव का बोध हो तो इन्हें Indirect Speech में इस प्रकार बदलें :—

(i) Reporting Verb को propose/suggest में बदल दें। यदि object का प्रयोग करना हो तो propose + to + object या suggest + to + object का प्रयोग करें न कि propose + object या suggest + object का।

(ii) Inverted Commas के बदले that का प्रयोग करें।

(iii) Let को लुप्त कर दें। इसके बाद प्रयुक्त us को वाक्य के अर्थ के अनुसार we/they में बदल दें। अगर अन्य personal pronoun/noun रहे तो उसे Nominative Case में बदल दें। इसके बाद should + V का प्रयोग करें। जैसेः—

1. He said, "Let us dance together."
   He suggested that we/they should dance together.
   He proposed that we/they should dance together.
2. He said to me, "Let us dance together."
   He suggested/proposed to me that we should dance together.
3. He said to the students, "Let us work for the country day and night."
   He suggested to the students that they should work for the country day and night.

Note : यहाँ जब Reporter को स्वयं को भी include करना हो तो us को we में बदलें और जब स्वयं को include नहीं करना हो तो us को they में बदलें।

4. Ram said to his friend, "Let us go home."
   Ram suggested to his friend that they should go home.
5. She said, "Let him/them consult a doctor."
   She suggested that he/they should consult a doctor.

कुछ 'Let' वाले वाक्यों से वक्ता की इच्छा (wish) का बोध होता है। ऐसे वाक्यों में Let के बाद प्रायः me, him, her, them या there be रहता है। अतः इस भाव के लिंए आप Reporting Verb को wish में बदल दें। अन्य प्रक्रिया ऊपर बतलाए गए नियमानुसार।

1. God said, "Let there be light", and there was light.
   God wished that there should be light and there was light.
2. The boy said, "Let me go out."
   The boy wished that he should go out.
   or, The boy said that he should be allowed to go out.
3. He said, "Let him do what he likes."
   He wished that he should do what he liked.
   or, He said that he should be allowed to do what he liked.
4. She said, "Let him be my husband."
   She wished that he should be her husband.

जब 'Let' का प्रयोग Ordinary Verb की तरह हो तब इसका अर्थ होता है— allow/permit. वैसी स्थिति में सामान्य नियम से काम चलायें।

1. He said to his father, "Let me go to the picture today."
   He requested his father to let him go to the picture that day..
   or, He requested his father that he might be allowed/permitted to go to the picture that day.

EXERCISE 84

Change into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said, "Lend me your pen, will you ?"
2. He told me, "Shut the door, will you ?"
3. He said to her, "Make tea for me, will you ?"
4. He said, "Let us start the work."
5. Mrs. Gandhi always said, "Let us work for the country day and night."
6. Jack said to Jill, "Let us go to play."
7. He said to me, "Let us sing together."
8. I said to him, "Let us go for a picnic."
9. He said to me, "Let's stop now and finish it later."
10. He said, "Let him catch the train."
11. He said, "Let him stay here."
12. He said, "Let him rest in peace."
13. She said, "Let me go out."
14. He said to his father, "Let me watch the T. V."
15. He said to his mother, "Let me play here."
16. God said, "Let there be light", and there was light.
17. The hare said to the tortoise, "Let us run a race."
18. "Let us stay here till the storm has passed", he said.
19. He said to them, "Let us have rest for a while."
20. He suggested to me, "Let us leave the matter till tomorrow."

SPECIAL RULES : OPTATIVE SENTENCES

Optative Sentence से अभिशाप, आशीर्वाद, प्रार्थना या इच्छा का बोध होता है। ऐसे वाक्यों को Indirect Speech में इस प्रकार बदलें।

(i) Reporting Verb को वाक्य के अर्थानुसार curse/bless/pray/wish में बदल दें।

(ii) Inverted Commas के बदले that दें।

(iii) Optative Sentence को Assertive में बदल दें। अर्थात् subject के बाद verb दें।

(iv) Note of exclamation को full stop में बदल दें।

Solved Examples :

1. He said to me, "May you live long !"
   He blessed me that I might live-long.
2. My father said to me, "May you get success !"
   My father wished that I might get success.

3. They said, "May God save the king !"
They wished/prayed that God might save the king.

4. He said to her, "May you die !"
He cursed her that she might die.

Note : (i) ऐसे वाक्यों में wish/pray के बाद object न दें।

(ii) यदि Optative Sentence में May का प्रयोग नहीं हो तो उसे वाक्य के आरंभ में जोड़ दें और तब वाक्य को Indirect Speech में बदलें।

5. They said, "Long live our friendship !"
They wished that their friendship might live long.

6. The saint said, "God bless you !"
The saint prayed that God might bless me.

EXERCISE 85

Turn the following into the Indirect form of Speech :—

1. He said to me, "May you get success !"
2. The mother said to her son, "May God bless you !"
3. He said to her, "May you succeed !"
4. He said, "God save the king !"
5. They said, "Long live our friendship !"
6. The people said, "Long live the king !"
7. The woman said, "May you die of cholera !"
8. The priest said to me, "May you be happy !"
9. The labourers said, "Long live our unity !"
10. He said, "May God pardon this sinner !"
11. My father said to me, "May God help you !"
12. He said, "May you die !"
13. The hermit said, "May you be blessed with a son !"
14. We said, "May the soul of Gandhijee get peace in the Heaven !"
15. He said, "May Heaven have pity on me !"
16. He said, "May God bless all who love their fellowmen !"
17. He said, "May the Chief Minister live long !"
18. He said to me, "May you live long !"

SPECIAL RULES : EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES

Exclamatory Sentences से प्राय: हर्ष, विषाद, क्रोध, घृणा, आश्चर्य या प्रशंसा के भाव व्यक्त होते हैं। इन्हें Indirect Speech में बदलने के लिए निम्नलिखित उपाय करें।

(i) Reporting Verbs को अर्थानुसार exclaim with joy/sorrow/surprise/anger/contempt/regret/applause आदि प्रकार के शब्दों में बदल दें।

हर्ष / खुशी / उल्लास के लिए	exclaim with joy
दुःख / शोक के लिए	exclaim with sorrow
आश्चर्य / विस्मय के लिए	exclaim with surprise
क्रोध के लिए	exclaim with anger
तिरस्कार / घृणा के लिए	exclaim with contempt
प्रशंसा के लिए	exclaim with applause
पश्चाताप / अफसोस के लिए	exclaim with regret

(ii) Inverted Commas के बदले that दें।

(iii) Ah ! oh ! Alas ! इत्यादि शब्दों का लोप कर दें।

(iv) Exclamatory Sentences को Assertive में बदल दें। अगर Inverted Commas के भीतर अधूरे वाक्य हो तो उनमें verb तथा अन्य शब्द अपनी ओर से जोड़ दें ताकि उनमें निहित भाव सरल ढंग से स्पष्ट हो सके।

Note : पहले आप Exclamatory Sentences को Assertive Sentences में बदलना सीखें। इसके लिए कुछ common examples दिए जा रहे हैं। इन्हें समझें—

1. What a beautiful girl she is !
   She is a very beautiful girl.
2. What a place it is !
   It is a very fine place.
3. What a fool I was !
   I was a big fool.
4. How fast the baby runs !
   The baby runs very fast.
5. What a place ! / What a place it is !
   It is a very fine/strange/lonely place.
6. What a fool ! / What a fool he is !
   He is a great fool.
7. What a fall !
   It is a big fall.
8. How dark the night is !
   The night is very dark.
9. Nonsense !
   It is nonsense.
10. Oh ! Enough !
    It is enough.

Some Solved Examples :

1. He said, "Alas ! I am ruined."
He exclaimed with sorrow that he was ruined.
2. The boy said, "Alas ! My cat is dead."
The boy exclaimed with sorrow that his cat was dead.
3. They said, "Hurrah ! We have won the match."
They exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.
4. The Headmaster said, "Alas ! Mrs. Indira Gandhi is no more !"
The Headmaster exclaimed with sorrow that Mrs. Indira Gandhi was no more.
5. He said, "What a beautiful girl she is !"
He exclaimed with joy that she was a very beautiful girl.
6. She said, "How fast my baby runs !"
She exclaimed with joy that her baby ran very fast.
7. He said, "What a fool I am !"
He exclaimed with sorrow/regret that he was a big fool.
8. He said, "What a place !"
He exclaimed with joy that it was a very fine place.
or, He exclaimed with surprise that it was a very strange place.
9. He said, "What a fall !"
He exclaimed with sorrow that it was a big fall.
10. Ram said, "What an idea !"
Ram exclaimed with joy that it was an extraordinary idea.
11. I said, "Oh ! Enough !"
I exclaimed with disgust that it was enough.

Exclamations संबंधी कुछ अधूरे वाक्यों का Speech परिवर्तन इस प्रकार होता है।

1. He said to me, "fool !"
He called me a fool.
2. He told me, "Fool ! Liar !"
He called me a fool and liar.
3. He said, "Thank you !"
He thanked me.
4. She said to us, "Welcome !"
She welcomed us.
5. Ram said, "Curse this thing !"
Ram cursed that thing.
6. He said, "Happy Diwali !"
He wished me a happy Diwali.

7. He said, "Congratulations !"
He congratulated me.
8. He said to me, "Good night / Good morning !"
He wished me good night / good morning.
9. He said, "Good bye !"
He bade me good bye.
10. She said, "Hello ! Where are you going ?"
She greeted me and asked where I was going.
11. He said to me, "Fie ! Fie ! You mean fellow, you have cheated me."
He called me a mean fellow and exclaimed with contempt that I had cheated him.

EXERCISE 86

Put the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said, "Alas ! I am undone."
2. She said, "Alas ! I am ruined."
3. She said, "Oh ! I have cut my finger."
4. They said, "Ah ! My friend has come from America."
5. They said, "Hurrah ! We have won the match."
6. They said, "Bravo ! You have done well."
7. He said, "What a sweet song !"
8. Sonu said, "What a beautiful sight it is !"
9. He said, "How sweetly she sings !"
10. He said, "How dark the night is !"
11. She said, "What a place !"
12. Ram said, "What a place !"
13. "What a piece of work is man !" he said.
14. She said, "What a horrible place it is !"
15. He said to me, "How wicked of you to throw stones !"
16. They said, "How kind the king is !"
17. He said, "Hurrah ! I have got a prize."
18. He said, "How foolish I am !"
19. He said, "Ah ! What a fool I was !"
20. She said to her friends, "What a beautiful flower !"
21. He said, "Ah ! I am happy now."

EXERCISE 87

Put the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said, "Thank you !"
2. He said, "Good-bye, my friends."
3. She told me, "Welcome !"

4. She said to me, "Good morning !"
5. He said to me, "All the best !"
6. He told me, "Congratulations !"
7. She told me, "You foolish boy !"
8. He said, "What a folly !"
9. They said, "What a fall !"
10. He said, "Oh ! Enough."
11. He said, "What a great mistake I have made !"
12. The teacher said, "You idiot ! Stand up on the bench."
13. He said, "What an idea !"
14. He said, "Fool ! Liar !"
15. She said, "Happy Diwali !"

Miscellaneous Examples

EXERCISE 88

Change into Indirect Speech :—

1. He said to me, "May you live long !"
2. The student said to the teacher, "Please help me."
3. The man said, "Have you written the letter ?"
4. They said, "Where is the teacher ?"
5. The teacher said to the students, "Please open your books."
6. I replied, "You will be punished."
7. The teacher said to the boys, "Do you hope to get success ?"
8. "Don't ask so many curious questions", said the farmer to his wife.
9. The servant said, "The lawyer has come to see you."
10. He said, "The horse died in the night."
11. The captain of the team said to the players, "Try to win."
12. The Headmaster said to the students, "Are you studying hard ?"
13. The teacher said to the students, "Read your lessons well."
14. He said to me, "Where is your bicycle ?"
15. He said, "The sun rises in the east."
16. Helena said, "The more I like Demetrius, the more he dislikes me."
17. "What are you doing here, Helena ?" asked Hermia.
18. John asked, "Where is Catherine ?"
19. The father said to his sons, "Don't smoke."
20. Hari said, "Charity begins at home."
21. The teacher said, "Why do you not read ?"
22. Mohan said to Sita, "Have you solved the sum ?"
23. He said, "What a sweet song !"
24. He said to me, "Are you a doctor ?"
25. Hari said to the boy, "Depend on what I say."

26. He said, "God is everywhere."
27. I said to him, "Do you follow me ?"
28. She said to the students, "Don't make a noise."
29. He said, "When the cat is away, the mice play."
30. Ranjan said to his friend, "Please lend me your pencil."
31. He said to his friend, "Where else can we go ?"
32. Sonu said, "What a beautiful sight it is !"
33. "Honesty pays in the long run", he said.
34. "Come and sit with me on the bed of flowers", said Titania to Bottom.
35. A blind man said to Nunez, "Do you know how to sleep ?"
36. "Who owns this beautiful park ?" asked the princess.
37. "Calm yourself, please", said the princess.
38. He said, "What a fool I am !"
39. The teacher said, "Man is mortal."
40. He asked, "Where is the doctor ?"
41. The girl said, "I never saw such a lovely bird in my life."
42. "Whom does the forest belong to ?" asked the princess.
43. "Stop that horrible noise," he said.
44. He said, "Alas ! I am deceived."
45. Miranda said to Ferdinand, "It's very strange that my father is unkind to you."
46. "I loved my father well", said the son.
47. She said to me, "Try your luck elsewhere."
48. He said to his brother, "I am going to Bombay tomorrow."
49. The teacher said to the boy, "What is your name ?"
50. He said to me, "Please remember what I told you."
51. "I wrote him a letter yesterday", said the girl.
52. "Do you want to go ?" the father asked his son.
53. He said, "We are mortal."
54. The teacher said to the student, "When do you get up in the morning ?"
55. The prince said, "It gives me great pleasure to be here this evening."
56. He said, "I shall go as soon as it is possible."
57. He said, "I don't wish to see any of you. Go away."
58. "Can you help me ?" he said to me.
59. "What is the matter ?" my aunt asked.
60. He said, "The rainy season lasts for four months."
61. I said to Mohan, "Bravo ! You have done well."
62. "Bring them here quickly, Anil", said Ram.
63. He said, "Where shall I be in 1999 ?"
64. He said, "How forgetful I am ! I forgot to give her your message."
65. "Take your things and be gone !" he ordered.
66. Nunez said, "There is no life without eye sight."

ANSWERS

1. He blessed me that I might live long.
2. The student requested the teacher to help him.
3. The man asked if I had written the letter.
4. They asked where the teacher was.
5. The teacher asked the students to open their books.
6. I replied that he would be punished.
7. The teacher asked the boys if they hoped to get success.
8. The farmer forbade his wife to ask so many curious questions.
9. The servant told me that the lawyer had come to see me.
10. He said that the horse had died in the night.
11. The captain of the team encouraged the players to try to win.
12. The Headmaster asked the students if they were studying hard.
13. The teacher asked the students to read their lessons well.
14. He asked me where my bicycle was.
15. He said that the sun rises in the east.
16. Helena said that the more she liked Demetrius, the more he disliked her.
17. Hermia asked Helena what she was doing there.
18. John asked where Catherine was.
19. The father forbade his sons to smoke.
20. Hari said that charity begins at home.
21. The teacher asked why I did not read.
22. Mohan asked Sita if she had solved the sum.
23. He exclaimed with joy that it was a very sweet song.
24. He asked me if I was a doctor.
25. Hari advised the boy to depend on what he said.
26. He said that God is everywhere.
27. I asked him if he followed me.
28. She forbade the students to make a noise.
29. He said when the cat is away the mice play.
30. Ranjan requested his friend to lend him his pencil.
31. He asked his friend where else they could go.
32. Sonu exclaimed with joy that it was a very beautiful sight.
33. He said that honesty pays in the long run.
34. Titania requested Bottom to come and sit with her on the bed of flowers.
35. A blind man asked Nunez if he knew how to sleep.
36. The princess asked who owned that beautiful park.
37. The princess requested him to calm himself.
38. He exclaimed with sorrow that he was a big fool.
39. The teacher said that man is mortal.
40. He asked where the doctor was.
41. The girl said that she had never seen such a lovely bird in her life.

42. The princess asked whom the forest belonged to.
43. He ordered to stop that horrible noise.
44. He exclaimed with sorrow that he was deceived.
45. Miranda told Ferdinand that it was very strange that her father was unkind to him.
46. The son said that he had loved his father well.
47. She advised me to try my luck elsewhere.
48. He told his brother that he was going to Bombay next day.
49. The teacher asked the boy what his name was.
50. He advised me to remember what he had told me.
51. The girl said that she had written him a letter the day before.
52. The father asked his son if he wanted to go.
53. He said that we are mortal.
54. The teacher asked the student when he got up in the morning.
55. The prince said that it gave him much pleasure to be there that evening.
56. He said that he would go as soon as it was possible.
57. He told us that he did not wish to see any of us and asked us to go away.
58. He asked me if I could help him.
59. My aunt asked what the matter was.
60. He said that the rainy season lasts for four months.
61. I praised Mohan and said that he had done well.
62. Ram asked Anil to bring them there quickly.
63. He asked where he would be in 1999.
64. He exclaimed with regret that he was very forgetful. He further added that he had forgotten to give her my message.
65. He ordered me to take my things and be gone.
66. Nunez said that there is no life without eye sight.

EXERCISE 89

Put the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. The teacher said, "Have you looked up the word environment in a dictionary ?"
2. We say to the children, "Don't go near a dog lest it should bite you."
3. "I am free to do what I like with my walking stick", argued the gentleman.
4. The Emperor took a look at the youngman and said, "Do you know what will happen to you if you fail ?"
5. "If you succeed, you will certainly get the reward", said the Emperor.
6. "I am ready to try my luck, your Majesty", replied Jaisingh.
7. "I want to marry Lysander", said Hermia.
8. "I'll not give you the boy as his mother is dead", said Titania.
9. "What is this ?" said Oberon to Puck.
10. "Get away", she said to Bottom, "I can't bear the sight of a donkey."

11. "Tomorrow I shall see no more", he said.
12. He at once went to the fisherman's chief and said, "O fisherman, I am ready to fulfil the condition for your daugther's marriage with my father."
13. "Don't be afraid, my children", said the monkey chief.
14. "I don't agree with you", said the host.
15. He said to me, "May God help you !"
16. She said to me, "May you die !"
17. They said, "Long live our king !"
18. He said, "Alas ! I am ruined."
19. He said, "Hurrah ! We won the match."
20. She said to her friend, "Ah ! What a beautiful flower !"
21. My mother said, "Don't move in the sun."
22. Arun said to Ravi, "Please lend me your dictionary."
23. The doctor said to me, "Take medicine in time."
24. She said to her husband, "What is it that makes you so sad ?"
25. He said, "Ravi, when is the next train ?"
26. "Who are you, Sir, and why have you come here ?" they said to the stranger.
27. He said, "Good-bye, my friends."
28. "Go and send off this letter", she said to the maid.
29. "Let us go out for a walk", the doctor said to the patient.
30. Ram said to Mohan, "You are going to the cinema, aren't you ?"
31. The father said, "Mohan, what were you doing ?"
32. Alok said, "I didn't know it was your table."
33. The teacher said, "What have you been doing ?"
34. The woman said, "May you die of cholera !"
35. "What makes you cry ?" asked her sister.
36. "The sun never rises in the west, does it ?" she asked.
37. Govind asked me, "Where are my books ?"
38. She said to her servant, "Do as I tell you."
39. The teacher said, "How far is Patna from this place ?"
40. He said to me, "You have taken the book I bought yesterday."
41. Indu said to the teacher, "Madam, I have done my homework."
42. Ram said to his friend, "Let us go home."
43. He said to him, "What is the shortest way back ?"
44. Amit said to me, "Where did you go yesterday ?"
45. Ramesh said to me, "You were not present in your house in the morning."
46. The teacher said, "Two and two makes four."
47. The teacher said to the boys, "Well done !"
48. She said, "Do you know who is coming ?"
49. The teacher said to Kiran, "If you don't keep quiet, I will turn you out of the class."

50. Imran said to Kapil, "Why did you come late ?"
51. "What is the old disease of India ?" Nehru asked.
52. God said, "Let there be light", and there was light.
53. I said to Ram, "Do have a cup of tea."
54. Seema said, "Why did you call me ?"
55. Tom said, "Thank you !"
56. He said, "I am intending to do it tomorrow."
57. He said, "It is not so foggy today as it was yesterday."
58. He asked his friend, "Can you tell me why Rajesh left the hostel ?"
59. He said to me, "I can't tell you how grateful I am."
60. He said, "I had to help you."
61. "Who put salt in my coffee ?" she asked.
62. He said to me, "How many boys were against you ?"
63. He said to me, "What is the name of the boy playing with your sister ?"
64. He said, "Let us sing together."
65. He said, "If she leaves the house, follow her."

ANSWERS

1. The teacher asked the students if they had looked up the word environment in a dictionary.
2. We forbid children to go near a dog lest it should bite them.
3. The gentleman said that he was free to do what he liked with his walking-stick.
4. The Emperor took a look at the youngman and asked if he knew what would happen to him if he failed.
5. The Emperor told him that if he succeeded he would certainly get the reward.
6. Jaisingh politely replied that he was ready to try his luck.
7. Hermia said that he wanted to marry Lysander.
8. Titania told him that she would not give him the boy as his mother was dead.
9. Oberon asked Puck what that was.
10. She told Bottom that she could not bear the sight of a donkey and asked him to get away.
11. He said that the next day he would see no more.
12. He at once went to the fisherman's chief and told him that he was ready to fulfil the condition for his daughter's marriage with his father.
13. The monkey chief encouraged the children not to be afraid.
14. The host told him that he did not agree with him.
15. He prayed that God might help me.
16. She cursed me that I might die.
17. They wished/prayed that their king might live long.
18. He exclaimed with sorrow that he was ruined.
19. He exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.

20. She exclaimed with joy that it was a very beautiful flower.
21. My mother forbade me to move in the sun.
22. Arun requested Ravi to lend him his dictionary.
23. The doctor advised me to take medicine in time.
24. She asked her husband what it was that made him so sad.
25. He asked Ravi when the next train was.
26. They asked the stranger politely who he was and why he had gone there.
27. He bade good bye to his friends.
28. She asked the maid to go and send off that letter.
29. The doctor proposed to the patient that they should go out for a walk.
30. Ram asked Mohan if he was going to the cinema.
31. The father asked Mohan what he had been doing.
32. Alok told him that he hadn't known it was/had been his table.
33. The teacher asked me what I had been doing.
34. The woman cursed him that he might die of cholera.
35. Her sister asked her what made her cry.
36. She asked if the sun never rises in the west.
37. Govind asked me where his books were.
38. She asked her servant to do as she told him.
39. The teacher asked how far Patna was from that place.
40. He told me that I had taken the book he had bought the day before.
41. Indu told the teacher politely that she had done her homework.
42. Ram suggested to his friend that they should go home.
43. He asked him what the shortest way back was.
44. Amit asked me where I had gone the day before.
45. Ramesh told me that I had not been present in my house in the morning.
46. The teacher said that two and two makes four.
47. The teacher told the boys that they had done well.
48. She asked if I knew who was coming.
49. The teacher told Kiran that if she did not keep quiet, he would turn her out of the class.
50. Imran asked Kapil why he had come late.
51. Nehru asked what the old disease of India was.
52. God wished that there should be light and there was light.
53. I requested Ram to have a cup of tea.
54. Seema asked him why he had called her.
55. Tom thanked me.
56. He said that he was intending to do it the following day.
57. He said that it was not so foggy that day as it had been the day before.
58. He asked his friend if he could tell him why Rajesh had left the hostel.
59. He told me that he couldn't tell me how grateful he was.
60. He told her that he had had to help her.
61. She asked who had put salt in her coffee.
62. He asked me how many boys had been against me.

63. He asked me what the name of the boy playing with my sister was.
64. He suggested/proposed that we should sing together.
65. He asked me to follow her if she left the house.

Indirect Narration of Mixed Speech

कभी-कभी Inverted Commas के अंदर भिन्न-भिन्न प्रकार के दो या दो से अधिक वाक्य रहते हैं। ऐसी स्थिति में इन्हें Indirect Speech में बदलते समय भिन्न-भिन्न वाक्यों को उनके भिन्न-भिन्न नियमों के अनुसार ही बदलें। Indirect Speech में पूरे passage का भाव सरल एवं स्वाभाविक ढंग से व्यक्त हो इसके लिए आवश्यकता पड़ने पर आप further said/told/asked इत्यादि का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं।

Solved Examples :

1. The teacher said to him, "Why are you disturbing the whole class ? I can't tolerate it. Get off at once."

   Indirect : —The teacher asked him why he was disturbing the whole class. He told him that he could not tolerate it and so ordered him to get off at once.

2. Mrs. Hardcastle : Tony, where are you going, my dear ? Won't you give Papa and me a little of your company ?
   Tony : I'm in haste, mother. I can't stay.

   Indirect : —Mrs. Hardcastle asked her dear son Tony where he was going. She again asked him if he would not give his Papa and her a little of his company. Tony told her that he could not stay as he was in haste.

3. He said to the king, "Your Majesty, do not put me to death. I will never repeat in future such a crime as this. You should show mercy to me."

   Indirect :—He begged the king not to put him to death. He promised he would never repeat in future such a crime as that and entreated the king to show mercy to him.

4. "My sons", said he, "a great treasure lies hidden in the estate I am about to leave you." "Where is it hid ?" said the sons. "I am about to tell you", said the old man, "but you must dig for it."

   Indirect :—He told his sons that a great treasure lay hidden in the estate he was about to leave them. The sons wanted to know where it was hid. The old man said that he was about to tell them, but they must dig for it.

5. The traveller said, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest inn ?" "Yes", said the farmer, "do you want one in which you can spend the night ?" "No", replied the traveller, "I only want a meal."

   Indirect :—The traveller asked the farmer if he could tell him the way to the nearest inn. The farmer replied that he could, and asked if the traveller wanted one in which he could spend the night. The traveller replied that he did not wish to stay there but only wanted a meal.

6. The violent man said, "What violence have I done ? What anger have I been guilty of ?" Then the others laughed and said to him, "Why should we speak ? You have given ocular proof of your violent temper."

Indirect :—The violent man asked what violence he had done, and what anger he had been guilty of. Then the others laughed and asked why they should speak. They further said that he had given them ocular proof of his violent temper.

7. "Where are you going, Raju ? Come and play with me", Manu said to him. "No, No, I can't play with you", replied Raju, "My father has forbidden me to play with you." "But why has your father forbidden you ?" asked Manu.

Indirect :—Manu asked Raju where he was going and then told him to come and play with him. Raju replied that he could not play with him because his father had forbidden him to play with him (Manu). Then Manu asked why his father had forbidden him (Raju).

8. "What is this strange out cry ?" said Socrates, "I sent the women away mainly in order that they might not offend in this way; for I have heard that a man should die in peace. Be quiet and have patience."

Indirect :—Socrates asked them what that strange out cry was. He reminded them that he had sent the women away mainly in order that they might not offend in that way, for he had heard that a man should die in peace. He advised them to be quiet and have patience.

9. Joseph said to James, "I can tell you what strikes me as the most useful machine in the world." James replied, "Can you Joseph ? I should like to hear of it. What is it used for ?"

Indirect :—Joseph said to James that he could tell him what struck him as the most useful machine in the world. James asked Joseph if he could, and said that he would like to hear of it. He further inquired of him (Joseph) what it was used for.

10. Antony said, "Friends, Romans, Countrymen, lend me your ears. I come to bury Caesar, not to praise him. The evil that men do lives after them."

Indirect :—Addressing the people as friends, Romans and Countrymen, Antony requested them to lend him their ears. He said that he came to bury Caesar, not to praise him. He further said that the evil that men do lives after them.

11. "What do you mean ?" asked the man, "how can a rope be used for binding flour ?" "A rope may be used for anything", replied the man, "when I do not wish to lend it."

Indirect :—The first man asked the second man what he meant, and how a rope could be used for binding flour. The second man replied that a rope might be used for anything when he did not wish to lend it.

EXERCISE 90

Change the following into Indirect Speech :—

1. The teacher said, "What are you doing, Mohan ? If you do not attend to the lesson, I shall send you to the Principal. Look at the blackboard or get out of the class."
2. He said to me, "I need some money. Have you five rupees ?" "Yes, I have. But I shall give you nothing", said I.
3. I said to him, "Can you tell us the way to the station ?" He replied, "It is some kilometres to the nearest station. A bus will soon be passing which will take you there."
4. The Principal said to me, "Why are you late ? You are a troublesome student. Have you no clock or watch in your house ? Be punctual or you will be punished."
5. "Why are you crying ?", I said to the little girl. "My mother gave me a rupee to buy bread," she said, "and I have lost it. If I don't find it, my mother will be angry and will punish me. "Don't worry. I shall give you a rupee.", I said to her.
6. "Do you really want work ?" said the merchant. "Yes, if you have any", said the boy. "Then follow me and carry this box to my house," said the merchant.
7. "What is your wish ?" said the goddess. "I wish that everything I touch should turn into gold", said the youngman. "That is indeed a wonderful thought," said the goddess, "but are you sure that it will satisfy you ?"
8. The teacher said to me very angrily, "Why have you come ? Have I never told you never to see my face again ? Leave the room at once or stand up on the bench."
9. The teacher said to the student, "Why are you late ?" The student replied, "My mother is ill and there is none to look after her." The teacher said, "Where is your father ? Has he gone out ?" The student replied, "He has gone to Patna and will return in a week."
10. God : "What is the matter ? Why are you crying ?"

    Wood cutter : "I have let my axe fall into the river. How shall I earn my living if I don't find it ?"
11. "It is very unfortunate," he said, "Can nothing be done to cure her of this terrible shyness ?"
12. They said to Mohan, "I know you are a good boy. But I want to know why you did so." "I think I should not tell you the fact", said Mohan, "for I know you will never believe me."

16. Subject–Verb Agreement

Subject और **Verb** के बीच तालमेल (**agreement**) आवश्यक है। अर्थात् **Verb** का वही **Number** और **Person** होता है जो उसके **Subject** का। इसलिए किसी वाक्य में **Verb** प्रयुक्त करने से पहले यह जानना आवश्यक हो जाता है कि उसके **Subject** का **Number** और **Person** क्या है। कभी-कभी वाक्य का **Subject** दो या दो से अधिक **words** से बना होता है। तब वैसी स्थिति में यह जानना आवश्यक हो जाता है कि **Verb** का **Number** और **Person** किस **word** से निर्धारित होगा या किस प्रकार निर्धारित होगा। इन्हीं सब बातों को ध्यान में रखते हुए यहाँ कुछ नियम बतलाए जा रहे हैं जिनके अध्ययन से आप **Subject-Verb Agreement** संबंधी तथ्य को सुगमतापूर्वक समझ पायेंगे।

Rule 1: **Noun** के अंत में जब **s/es** लगता है तब वह **Plural** हो जाता है, परन्तु जब **Verb** के अंत में **s/es** लगता है तब वह **Singular** हो जाता है, अर्थात्

Noun + s/es = Plural

Verb + s/es = Singular

इस तालिका को समझें—

Noun		Verb	
Singular	**Plural**	**Plural**	**Singular**
cow	cows	go	goes
boy	boys	do	does
bench	benches	eat	eats
girl	girls	try	tries
box	boxes	laugh	laughs

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि **Verb** का मूल रूप हमेशा **Plural Number** में रहता है; जब उसमें **s/es** जुटता है तब वह **Singular** बनता है।

Rule 2 : **Singular Subject** के साथ **Singular Verb** का प्रयोग होता है तथा **Plural Subject** के साथ **Plural Verb** का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :—

Ram reads.

Ram and Mohan read.

The boy runs.

The boys run.

This book is useful.

These books are useful.

Exception : इस नियम के कुछ अपवाद हैं जो इस प्रकार हैं—

(a) Optative Sentences में Singular Subject के साथ भी Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

God save the king !
God bless you !
Long live our friendship !

(b) कुछ वाक्यों में I wish/as if / as though / if इत्यादि के बाद कोरी कल्पना या अभिलाषा जिसकी पूर्ति संभव नहीं है का बोध कराने के लिए भी Singular Subject के साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :—

I wish I were a king.

If I were a bird I would fly to you.

He commanded me as if he were my boss.

Were she a bird she would fly to me.

Rule 3 : कुछ वाक्यों में Subject की बनावट इस प्रकार रहती है :—

Noun + Preposition + Noun + ...
the cow of Ram
the boys of this school
the water of these rivers
the colour of the flowers of my garden

ऐसे वाक्यों में Verb का प्रयोग प्रथम Noun के अनुसार होता है। जैसे :—

The water of these rivers is dirty.
The boys of this school are hard-working.
The legs of the dog of my friend are broken.
The condition of the farmers in our country is not good.
The colour of the flowers of my garden is very charming.
The flowers of my garden are charming.

Rule 4 : कुछ वाक्यों में Subject की बनावट इस प्रकार रहती है :—

Indefinite Number / Quantity + of + Noun

plenty of eggs
plenty of sugar
a lot of books
a lot of milk
half of the mangoes
most of the students

यहाँ plenty of / a lot of / half of / most of Indefinite Number / Quantity (अनिश्चित संख्या या मात्रा) का बोध कराते हैं। वाक्य में Verb का प्रयोग इनके बाद आने वाले Noun के अनुसार होगा। जैसे :—

Plenty of eggs have been brought.
Plenty of water has been brought.
Half of the boys are absent.
Half of the mango is rotten.
Half of the mangoes are rotten.
A lot of books are to be purchased.
A lot of sugar is to be purchased.
A number of boys have come.
Most of the students have come.
Most of the dirt has been removed.

निम्नलिखित का प्रयोग Indefinite Number / Quantity (अनिश्चित संख्या या मात्रा) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। इन्हें हमेशा ध्यान में रखें।

a number of (बहुत)	a good deal of (बहुत)
a lot of (बहुत)	a great deal of (बहुत)
lots of (बहुत)	a large number of (बहुत)
plenty of (बहुत)	majority of (अधिकांश)
most of (बहुत/अधिकांश)	handful of (मुट्ठी भर)
some of (कुछ)	remainder of (शेष)
half of (आधा)	none of (कोई भी नहीं)
two-thirds of (दो-तिहाई)	a total of (कुल)
three-fourths of (तीन-चौथाई)	percent of (प्रतिशत)
all of (सब)	rest of (बाकी, शेष)
part of (एक भाग, हिस्सा)	heaps of (ढेर)

Note : (1) a number of तथा the number of में बहुत अन्तर है। a number of का अर्थ है बहुत तथा the number का अर्थ है एक निश्चित संख्या। इसलिए the number of के बाद Verb Singular Number में रहता है तथा a number of के बाद Verb Plural Number में रहता है। जैसे :—

A number of students have failed in the examination.
The number of students is increasing.

(2) यदि of के पहले the percentage रहे तो Verb सदा Singular रहेगा। यदि of के पहले percent रहे तो Verb of के बाद आने वाले Noun के अनुसार Singular/Plural होगा। जैसे :—

The percentage of good persons is small.
Forty percent of the mangoes are rotten.
Sixty percent of the sugar has been stolen.

Rule 5 : कुछ वाक्यों में Subject की बनावट इस प्रकार रहती है :—
Singular Collective Noun + of + Plural Noun

a team of players
a set of books
a band of musicians
a bunch of keys

यहाँ team, set, band तथा bunch Singular Collective Nouns हैं। ऐसे Subjects रहने पर Verbs सदा Singular Number में रहेंगे। जैसे :—

A team of players **has** come here.
A set of books **has** been bought.
A **band** of musicians **has** been called in.
A **bunch** of keys **is** lying on the table.
A **flock** of sheep **is** grazing in the field.
A **group** of people **was** against him.
A **crowd** of students **is** waiting outside.

Rule 6 : government, board, staff, committee, company, public, jury इत्यादि कुछ ऐसे शब्द हैं जिनका प्रयोग Singular और Plural दोनों में होता है। अगर आप कहीं पर इसे Singular मानकर प्रयोग करना चाहते हैं तो शुरू से अंत तक इसे Singular ही मानें। इसके लिए Verb तथा Pronoun दोनों Singular ही प्रयुक्त करें। अगर आप इसे Plural मानकर प्रयोग करना चाहते हैं तो शुरू से अंत तक इसे Plural ही मानें। और तब इसके लिए Verb तथा Pronoun दोनों Plural ही प्रयुक्त करें। एक ही जगह इसे कभी Singular तथा कभी Plural मानकर प्रयोग नहीं किया जा सकता। जैसे :—

Incorrect : The jury was divided in their opinions.
Incorrect : The jury were divided in its opinion.

Correct : The jury was divided in its opinion.
Correct : The jury were divided in their opinions.

स्पष्टतः जब Singular मानकर was का प्रयोग करते हैं तो Pronoun भी Singular Number (its) का प्रयोग करें। जब Plural मानकर were का प्रयोग करते हैं तो Pronoun भी Plural Number (their) का प्रयोग करें। कुछ और उदाहरण लें :—

The government have done so in their interest.
The government has done so in its interest.

Rule 7 : यदि वाक्य का Subject कोई ऐसा Noun हो जिससे निश्चित दूरी, समय, मात्रा, रकम या वजन का बोध हो तो Plural रहने पर भी ऐसे Subjects के साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है, क्योंकि उनसे संख्या का बोध नहीं होकर निश्चित मात्रा या परिमाण का बोध होता है। जैसे :—

Forty miles is a long distance to walk.
Ten rupees was given to me.
Ten hours is enough for the work.

Two years is sufficient to complete the project.
Sixty pounds is a handsome amount.
Five tons of coal is needed for the work.

Rule 8 : यदि वाक्य का Subject किसी व्यक्ति, देश या पुस्तक का नाम हो तो उसके लिए Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है, क्योंकि उस name या title से एक ही वस्तु का बोध होता है। जैसे :—

The United States of America is a rich country.
Arabian Nights is a popular book.
Lamb's Tales from Shakespeare is an interesting book.

Rule 9 : यदि किसी Noun को Preposition के बाद दुहराया जाए तो वह Noun Singular Number में रहता है तथा वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Verb भी Singular Number में रहता है। जैसे :—

Ship after ship is sailing by.
City after city was destroyed.
One hour after another hour is passing by.
One man after another (man) was shot dead.
Letter after letter describes her tender feelings.

Rule 10 : कुछ Nouns ऐसे होते हैं जिनके दो भाग होते हैं। इनके एक भाग दूसरे भाग से अलग नहीं रहते हैं। glasses, shoes, pants, scissors, trousers, spectacles, tongs, pyjamas आदि ऐसे ही Nouns हैं। यदि वाक्य में इनका प्रयोग Subject की तरह की जाए तो इनके साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होगा, पर यदि इनके पहले **a pair of** आए तो Singular Verb का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे :—

My scissors are sharp.
Your trousers are very loose.
My spectacles are faulty.
The shoes are too old to use.
A pair of shoes was presented to him.
A pair of scissors has been bought.

Rule 11 : (a) अँग्रेजी में कुछ शब्द हैं जो सदा Singular होते हैं और इनके साथ Singular Verbs ही प्रयुक्त होते हैं। इनमें s/es लगाकर न तो इन्हें Plural बनावें न ही इनके साथ Plural Verbs प्रयुक्त करें। ये शब्द हैं :—

furniture, scenery, luggage, information, advice, news, percentage, poetry, knowledge, dirt, dust, traffic, electricity, money, music, coffee, etc

All his furniture is good.
All the luggage is lost.
The scenery of Kashmir is worth-seeing.
The news is good.

Milton's poetry is immortal.
There was heavy traffic on the road.

(b) people, folk, gentry, cattle, police, children इत्यादि Plural हैं। इनके साथ Plural Verbs प्रयुक्त करें। जैसे :—

Some people dislike travelling.
The cattle are grazing in the field.
The police have arrested the thief.

(c) कुछ ऐसे विषय, बीमारी, खेल तथा देश के नाम हैं जिनके अंत में s लगे रहते हैं फिर भी इनके साथ Singular Verbs ही प्रयुक्त होते हैं। ये हैं :—

बीमारियों के नाम—measles, mumps, etc

खेल के नाम—billiards, darts, etc

विषयों के नाम—mathematics, physics, phonetics, statistics, linguistics, ethics, etc

देश के नाम—Wales, Athens, The United States, etc

Measles is a dangerous disease.
Mathematics is not an easy subject.
The United States is a great country.

(d) Modern English में wages को Plural माना जाता है। जैसे :—
His wages are Rs. 5000/- a month.

परन्तु Bible की इस पंक्ति में इसका प्रयोग Singular Noun की तरह हुआ है। जैसे—

The wages of sin is death.

Rule 12 : यदि वाक्य का Subject 'The + Adjective' हो तो Verb Plural होगा। जैसे :—

The poor are honest.
The rich are happy.
The old are helpless.
The blind have no future.
The virtuous are blessed.

Rule 13 : (a) Many a/an + Noun + Singular Verb
(b) More than one + Noun + Singular Verb

Many a/an के बाद Noun तथा Verb दोनों Singular Number में रहते हैं। इसी प्रकार More than one के वाद भी Noun तथा Verb दोनों Singular Number में रहते हैं। जैसे :—

Many a man was killed.
More than one book was stolen.

यहाँ man तथा book के बदले men तथा books देना गलत होगा तथा Verb was के बदले were देना गलत होगा।

(c) More + Plural Noun + than one + Plural Verb

अगर More के बाद तथा than one के पहले Noun प्रयुक्त है तो वह Noun Plural Number में रहेगा तथा Verb भी Plural Number में प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे :—

More students than one were absent.
More workmen than one have been killed.

Rule 14 : कुछ वाक्यों के Subjects इन शब्दों द्वारा जोड़े जाते हैं—

as well as, along with, together with, with, in addition to, and not, like, unlike, including, excluding, but, except, besides, etc

ऐसे वाक्यों के Verbs इन शब्दों के पहले प्रयुक्त होने वाले words के अनुसार Singular या Plural होते हैं। जैसे :—

He as well as his children is honest.
You as well as she sing well.
A taxi along with five passengers is traceless.
The teacher, together with his students, is present.
The robber with all his followers was arrested.
Ram, like his parents, never tells a lie.
The thief, and not his sons, was found guilty.
The students as well as their teacher are present.

Rule 15 : यदि दो Subjects को not only ... but also के द्वारा जोड़ा जाए, तो Verb के Number और Person अंतिम Subject के अनुसार होते हैं। जैसे :—

Not only Ram but all his brothers are dishonest.
Not only students but the teacher is also not punctual.

Rule 16 : Nothing but के बाद Noun Singular रहे या Plural, Verb सदा Singular ही रहेगा। जैसे :—

Nothing but water is seen.
Nothing but trees is seen.

Rule 17 : यदि वाक्य का Subject each, every, either, neither, one, everyone, anyone, no one, someone, nobody, somebody, etc हो तो Verb Singular Number में प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे :—

Each boy has a pen.
Each of them has a pen.
Everyone was present.
No one is ready to do this.
Somebody has stolen my pen.

Either of them has stolen your pen.
Neither of these two boys is to be selected.
Either of your sisters is mad.
One of them knows this.

Rule 18 : both, many, some और few Plural हैं। जब इनका प्रयोग Subject के रूप में हो तब Verb Plural Number में प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे :—

Both of them are ready to go.
Many of them have come back.
Some have been arrested.
Few persons are honest.

Note : none तथा any दो ऐसे Pronouns हैं जिनका प्रयोग Singular तथा Plural दोनों ही तरह से होता है। जैसे :—

None of them has/have come back.
Any of those cars is/are to be sold.

Rule 19 : जब दो या दो से अधिक Nouns/Pronouns को or, nor, either...or, neither......nor से अलग किया जाए तो Verb अपने से सबसे नजदीक में आने वाले Noun/Pronoun के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे :—

Either you or **he is** guilty.
Neither he nor **I am** guilty.
Either the farmer or his **sons are** inactive.
Neither Ram nor **Sita has** stolen the watch.
Are you or he to blame ?
You or **he is** to blame.
Is the child or the parents to be blamed ?

Rule 20 : यदि Clause का Subject कोई Relative Pronoun (who, which, that) हो तो Verb उसके Antecedent के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। यहाँ आप यह जान लें कि Antecedent उस Noun / Pronoun को कहते हैं, जो Relative Pronoun के पहले आता है, अर्थात् जिसके लिए Relative Pronoun का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे :—

The boy who is playing is my son.
The boys who are playing are my sons.

यहाँ प्रथम वाक्य में Relative Pronoun 'who' है तथा Antecedent 'boy' है। who के बाद प्रयुक्त Verb 'boy' के अनुसार Singular Number में हुआ है। इसी प्रकार दूसरे वाक्य में Antecedent 'boys' के अनुसार Verb Plural Number में प्रयुक्त हुआ है। कुछ और वाक्य लें—

It is I who have done this.
It is he who has done this.
I know the boys who have broken the glass.

I know the boy who has broken the glass.
The pen that is there is mine.
The pens that are there are mine.

Note : जब Relative Pronoun के पहले one of + Plural Noun / Pronoun प्रयुक्त हो तो of के बाद आने वाले Noun/Pronoun को ही Antecedent मानें और उसके अनुसार Verb का प्रयोग करें, of के पहले आने वाले one के अनुसार नहीं, जैसे :—

He is one of those persons who do not accept bribes.

Rule 21 : जब वाक्य के Subject में प्रयुक्त words को and से जोड़ा जाए तब Verb का Number इस प्रकार निर्धारित होगा—

(a) साधारणतः जब दो या दो से अधिक Nouns या Pronouns को and से जोड़ा जाता है, तब Verb Plural Number में प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे :—

Ram and Shyam are going.
You and he are friends.
He and I have done this.

(b) जब and से जुड़े Singular Nouns एक ही वस्तु या व्यक्ति का बोध कराते हैं तो Verb Singular Number में रहता है। जैसे :—

A red and black cow is grazing in the field.
(एक ही गाय जो लाल और काले रंग की है)
The poet and philosopher has come.
(एक ही व्यक्ति जो poet भी है और philosopher भी)

Note : जब एक ही Noun के पहले Article आवे तो समझें कि एक ही व्यक्ति/वस्तु की चर्चा है। यदि दोनों ही Nouns के पहले Articles आवे तो समझें कि दो व्यक्ति / वस्तु की चर्चा है। जैसे :—

The poet and the philosopher have come.
(दो व्यक्ति—एक poet तथा एक philosopher)

The poet and philosopher has come.
(एक ही व्यक्ति जो poet और philosopher है)

(c) जब दो अंक and से संयुक्त रहते हैं और उनके बाद Verb आता है तो वह Verb Singular तथा Plural दोनों में से किसी एक में रह सकता है। जैसे :—

Two and two is four.
Two and two are four.

Note : साधारणतः लोग ऐसे वाक्यों में Singular Verbs ही प्रयुक्त करते हैं। Mathematics की किताबों में भी Singular Verbs का ही प्रयोग मिलता है। अतः आप भी ऐसे वाक्यों में Singular Verbs का प्रयोग करें तो अच्छा रहेगा, परन्तु Plural Verbs का प्रयोग गलत नहीं माना जायेगा।

(d) कुछ ऐसे Singular Nouns हैं जो and से जुड़े रहते हैं और प्रयोग में बराबर एक साथ आते हैं मानों एक Noun दूसरे का जोड़ा हो। ऐसे वाक्यों का Verb सदा Singular रहता है क्योंकि उनसे एक ही वस्तु, भाव, विशेष का बोध होता है अलग-अलग दो वस्तुओं का नहीं। जैसे :—

Rice and curry is my favourite dish.
(rice and curry— दाल-भात = एक ही वस्तु)
Bread and butter is a rich food.
The crown and glory of life is character.
Slow and steady wins the race.
A horse and carriage is waiting at the gate.
Truth and honesty is the best policy.
Whisky and soda was served in the party.

परन्तु इस वाक्य में Verb Plural Number में प्रयुक्त हुआ है—

Time and tide wait for none.

Note : इन वाक्यों में Verbs Plural Number में हैं क्योंकि and से जुड़े दो Nouns से अलग-अलग दो things/persons का बोध हो रहा है। जैसे :—

Eggs and milk are sold here.
Water and oil do not mix.
My uncle and my guardian have come here.
Punctuality and honesty are essential to raise a business.

(e) यदि Singular Nouns को and से जोड़ा जाए और उनमें से एक के पहले भी each, every या no का प्रयोग हो तो Verb Singular Number में प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे :—

Each man and each woman has equal right.
Every day and every night brings its own pleasure.
No boy and no girl was present there.
Each and every boy knows the fact.

Rule 22 : यदि Subject के बाद apposition का प्रयोग हो, तो Verb सदा apposition पद के पहले आने वाले Noun / Pronoun (कर्त्ता) के अनुसार होता है, apposition पद के अनुसार नहीं। जैसे :—

I, Ram Singh, am an honest man.
You, Ram, are a wicked boy.
She, your wife, knows the fact.
You, boy, are not to go there.

इन वाक्यों में Ram Singh / Ram / your wife / boy Apposition है जिनका प्रयोग दो commas के बीच में हुआ है। वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Verb apposition के अनुसार न होकर उनके पहले आनेवाले Noun/Pronoun के अनुसार हुआ है।

Rule 23 : dare/need का प्रयोग दो प्रकार से होता है—

(a) Principal Verbs की तरह जैसा कि go, eat, laugh, etc, जैसे :—

He needs a pen.
I do not need your help.
She dares to go there.
You do not dare to face your father.

(b) Modal Auxiliary Verbs की तरह जैसा कि can, could, may, might, must, etc. इस स्थिति में dare/need का Negative dare not / need not होता है। यहाँ Third Person Singular Number के Subject के साथ भी dare not/ need not प्रयुक्त होगा dares not / needs not नहीं। जैसा कि cans not / coulds not नहीं होता है वैसे ही dares not / needs not नहीं होगा।

He dare not go there.
I dare not oppose him.
She need not say anything.

इस प्रकार आप लिख सकते हैं—

He dare not go there.
Or, He does not dare to go there.
But not : He dares not go there.

Rule 24 : there से आरम्भ होने वाले वाक्यों के Verbs उनके असली Subjects के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होते हैं जो वाक्यों में there के वाद प्रयुक्त रहते हैं। जैसे :—

There is **a boy.**
There are **boys.**
There is **no book** in the box.
There are **no books** in the box.
Is there **a car** there ?
Are there **cars** there ?

Rule 25 : former / latter / following / undersigned का प्रयोग Pronoun की भांति Noun के बदले में होता है। जव ये Singular Nouns के वदले प्रयुक्त होते हैं तब इनके साथ Singular Verbs लगते हैं और जव ये Plural Nouns के बदले प्रयुक्त होते हैं तव इनके साथ Plural Verbs लगते हैं। जैसे :—

(a) Both the teacher and the students have not come today. The former is ill and the latter are absent for nothing.
(b) The following are the names of new students.
(c) The folowing is the weather-report.
(d) The undersigned requests the pleasure of your company today at 4 p.m. (Signed by Rakesh)
(e) The undersigned request the pleasure of your company today at 4 p.m. (Signed by Rakesh & Reena)

Note—former / latter / following / undersigned में s/es लगाकर plural न बनावें।

Rule 26 : as follows, as regards तथा as concerns के बदले क्रमश: as follow, as regard तथा as concern नहीं दिया जा सकता है चाहे इनके साथ Singular Noun रहे या Plural Noun, जैसे :—

The chief points are as follows. (not as follow)
The description is as follows. (not as follow)

Solved Examples

Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs choosing from the brackets.

[A]

1. You, he and I ...... friends. (am, are)
2. The water of these rivers ...... dirty. (is, are)
3. The mangoes in the tree ...... not ripe. (is, are)
4. The people of this village ...... honest. (is, are)
5. The colour of these flowers ...... charming. (is, are)
6. The voice of the singers ...... sweet. (is, are)
7. Half of the mango ...... rotten. (is, are)
8. Half of the mangoes ...... rotten. (is, are)
9. Most of the students ...... passed. (have, has)
10. A lot of sugar ...... been stolen. (has, have)
11. A number of boys ...... come. (have, has)
12. The number of the boys ...... forty. (is, are)
13. Forty percent of the students ...... failed in the examination. (have, has)
14. The percentage of the failures ...... high. (is, are)
15. A band of musicians ...... arriving soon. (is, are)
16. A team of doctors ...... been called in. (have, has)
17. The jury ...... divided in their opinions. (was, were)
18. Fifty miles ...... a long distance. (is, are)
19. Ten kilos of sugar ...... needed. (is, are)
20. Ship after ship ...... sailing by. (was, were)
21. A pair of scissors ...... to be bought. (is, are)
22. Your trousers ...... very loose. (is, are)
23. All the furniture ...... costly. (is, are)
24. The news ...... true. (is, are)
25. The police ...... caught the thief. (have, has)
26. Measles ...... a dangerous disease. (is, are)
27. Physics ...... not easy to understand. (is, are)
28. The wages of sin ...... death. (is, are)

29. The rich ...... not always happy. (are, is)
30. Many a person ...... killed. (was, were)
31. More than one thief ...... arrested. (was, were)
32. More boys than one ...... absent. (was, were)
33. The jury ...... divided in its opinion. (was, were)
34. A flock of ship ...... grazing in the field. (is, are)
35. He as well as his children ...... hungry. (is, are)
36. A taxi along with five passengers ...... traceless. (is, are)
37. A robber with all his followers ...... arrested. (was, were)
38. The thief, and not his sons, ... guilty. (was, were)
39. Not only Mohan but his friends ...... dishonest. (is, are)
40. Not only students but the teacher ...... responsible. (is, are)
41. Nothing but trees ...... seen. (was, were)
42. Everyone of them ...... innocent. (was, were)
43. Each boy ...... a pen. (has, have)
44. Either of the students ...... to be selected. (is, are)
45. Neither of them ...... courage to go. (have, has)
46. Each and every boy ...... ready. (is, are)
47. Every man and every woman ...... some problems. (has, have)
48. One of them ...... been arrested. (have, has)
49. A few persons ...... honest. (is, are)
50. None of the boys ...... come. (have, has)

ANSWERS

1. are, **2.** is, **3.** are, **4.** are, **5.** is, **6.** is, **7.** is, **8.** are, **9.** have, **10.** has, **11.** have, **12.** is, **13.** have, **14.** is, **15.** is, **16.** has, **17.** were, **18.** is, **19.** is, **20.** was, **21.** is, **22.** are, **23.** is, **24.** is, **25.** have, **26.** is, **27.** is, **28.** is, **29.** are, **30.** was, **31.** was, **32.** were, **33.** was, **34.** is, **35.** is, **36.** is, **37.** was, **38.** was, **39.** are, **40.** is, **41.** was, **42.** was, **43.** has, **44.** is, **45.** has, **46.** is, **47.** has, **48.** has, **49.** are, **50.** has/have

[B]

1. Either he or I ...... guilty. (am, is)
2. Neither you nor he ...... guilty. (is, are)
3. Neither she nor they ...... to blame. (is, are)
4. Either the father or the sons ...... to blame. (is, are)
5. ...... he or they to blame ? (is, are)
6. Bread and butter ...... a rich food. (is, are)
7. A horse and carriage ...... waiting at the gate. (is, are)
8. Rice and curry ...... my favourite dish. (is,are)
9. No boy and no girl ...... present there. (was, were)
10. Milk and honey ...... costly things. (is, are)
11. The poet and philosopher ...... said so. (have, has)

12. The poet and the philosopher ...... said so. (have, has)
13. A black and red cow ...... grazing. (is, are)
14. Two and two ...... four. (is, are)
15. The boy who is reading there ...... my son. (is, are)
16. The boys who are playing there ...... my friends. (is, are)
17. It is I who ...... done this. (have, has)
18. It is they who ......to blame. (is, are)
19. I am one of those persons who ...... not accept bribes. (do, does)
20. You, Ram, ... a wicked boy. (is, are)
21. There ...... a boy and a girl there. (is, are)
22. He ...... not go there. (dare, dares)
23. He ...... to go there. (dare, dares)
24. She ...... not do this. (need, needs)
25. She does not ...... to do this. (need, needs)
26. I wish I ...... a rich man. (was, were)
27. ...... she a bird, she would fly to me. was, were)
28. Time and tide ...... for no man. (wait, waits)
29. The cattle ...... grazing in the field. (is, are)
30. Either of the roads ...... to the railway station. (go, goes)
31. The poet and singer ...... dead. (is, are)
32. I wish he ...... the Prime Minister of India. (was, were)
33. Slow and steady ...... the race. (win, wins)
34. Truth and honesty ...... the best policy. (is, are)
35. The number of the guests ...... very large. (was, were)
36. The cost of these chairs ...... high. (is, are)
37. He and not I ...... done it. (has, have)
38. The sons as well as their father ...... arrested. (was, were)
39. All ...... well that ends well. (is, are)
40. Two years ...... a small period. (is, are)
41. You should not ...... beaten your brother. (have, has)
42. No news ...... good news. (is, are)
43. The audience ...... requested to maintain law and order. (was, were)
44. There ...... eggs and milk for breakfast. (are, is)
45. A lot of work ...... to be done. (was, were)
46. All that glitters ...... not gold. (is, are)
47. The Ganges ...... a holy river. (is, are)
48. The books that you gave me ...... very old. (is, are)
49. Lots of people ...... still coming. (is, are)
50. Six times five ...... thirty. (is, are)

29. The rich ...... not always happy. (are, is)
30. Many a person ...... killed. (was, were)
31. More than one thief ...... arrested. (was, were)
32. More boys than one ...... absent. (was, were)
33. The jury ...... divided in its opinion. (was, were)
34. A flock of ship ...... grazing in the field. (is, are)
35. He as well as his children ...... hungry. (is, are)
36. A taxi along with five passengers ...... traceless. (is, are)
37. A robber with all his followers ...... arrested. (was, were)
38. The thief, and not his sons, ... guilty. (was, were)
39. Not only Mohan but his friends ...... dishonest. (is, are)
40. Not only students but the teacher ...... responsible. (is, are)
41. Nothing but trees ...... seen. (was, were)
42. Everyone of them ...... innocent. (was, were)
43. Each boy ...... a pen. (has, have)
44. Either of the students ...... to be selected. (is, are)
45. Neither of them ...... courage to go. (have, has)
46. Each and every boy ...... ready. (is, are)
47. Every man and every woman ...... some problems. (has, have)
48. One of them ...... been arrested. (have, has)
49. A few persons ...... honest. (is, are)
50. None of the boys ...... come. (have, has)

ANSWERS

1. are, **2.** is, **3.** are, **4.** are, **5.** is, **6.** is, **7.** is, **8.** are, **9.** have, **10.** has, **11.** have, **12.** is, **13.** have, **14.** is, **15.** is, **16.** has, **17.** were, **18.** is, **19.** is, **20.** was, **21.** is, **22.** are, **23.** is, **24.** is, **25.** have, **26.** is, **27.** is, **28.** is, **29.** are, **30.** was, **31.** was, **32.** were, **33.** was, **34.** is, **35.** is, **36.** is, **37.** was, **38.** was, **39.** are, **40.** is, **41.** was, **42.** was, **43.** has, **44.** is, **45.** has, **46.** is, **47.** has, **48.** has, **49.** are, **50.** has/have

[B]

1. Either he or I ...... guilty. (am, is)
2. Neither you nor he ...... guilty. (is, are)
3. Neither she nor they ...... to blame. (is, are)
4. Either the father or the sons ...... to blame. (is, are)
5. ...... he or they to blame ? (is, are)
6. Bread and butter ...... a rich food. (is, are)
7. A horse and carriage ...... waiting at the gate. (is, are)
8. Rice and curry ...... my favourite dish. (is,are)
9. No boy and no girl ...... present there. (was, were)
10. Milk and honey ...... costly things. (is, are)
11. The poet and philosopher ...... said so. (have, has)

12. The poet and the philosopher ...... said so. (have, has)
13. A black and red cow ...... grazing. (is, are)
14. Two and two ...... four. (is, are)
15. The boy who is reading there ...... my son. (is, are)
16. The boys who are playing there ...... my friends. (is, are)
17. It is I who ...... done this. (have, has)
18. It is they who ......to blame. (is, are)
19. I am one of those persons who ...... not accept bribes. (do, does)
20. You, Ram, ... a wicked boy. (is, are)
21. There ...... a boy and a girl there. (is, are)
22. He ...... not go there. (dare, dares)
23. He ...... to go there. (dare, dares)
24. She ...... not do this. (need, needs)
25. She does not ...... to do this. (need, needs)
26. I wish I ...... a rich man. (was, were)
27. ...... she a bird, she would fly to me. was, were)
28. Time and tide ...... for no man. (wait, waits)
29. The cattle ...... grazing in the field. (is, are)
30. Either of the roads ...... to the railway station. (go, goes)
31. The poet and singer ...... dead. (is, are)
32. I wish he ...... the Prime Minister of India. (was, were)
33. Slow and steady ...... the race. (win, wins)
34. Truth and honesty ...... the best policy. (is, are)
35. The number of the guests ...... very large. (was, were)
36. The cost of these chairs ...... high. (is, are)
37. He and not I ...... done it. (has, have)
38. The sons as well as their father ...... arrested. (was, were)
39. All ...... well that ends well. (is, are)
40. Two years ...... a small period. (is, are)
41. You should not ...... beaten your brother. (have, has)
42. No news ...... good news. (is, are)
43. The audience ...... requested to maintain law and order. (was, were)
44. There ...... eggs and milk for breakfast. (are, is)
45. A lot of work ...... to be done. (was, were)
46. All that glitters ...... not gold. (is, are)
47. The Ganges ...... a holy river. (is, are)
48. The books that you gave me ...... very old. (is, are)
49. Lots of people ...... still coming. (is, are)
50. Six times five ...... thirty. (is, are)

ANSWERS

1. am, 2. is, 3. are, 4. are, 5. is, 6. is, 7. is, 8. is, 9. was, 10. are, 11. has, 12. have, 13. is, 14. is, 15. is, 16. are, 17. have, 18. are, 19. do, 20. are, 21. are, 22. dare, 23. dares, 24. need, 25. need, 26. were, 27. were, 28. wait, 29. are, 30. goes, 31. is, 32. were, 33. wins, 34. is, 35. was, 36. is, 37. has, 38. were, 39. is, 40. is, 41. have, 42. is, 43. were, 44. are, 45. was, 46. is, 47. is, 48. are, 49. are, 50. is.

[C]

1. A parcel of books ...... been received. (has, have)
2. I wish it ...... possible. (was, were)
3. Sweet ...... the uses of adversity. (is, are)
4. What I say and do ...... easy to understand. (is, are)
5. Politics ...... a dirty game. (is, are)
6. This is one of the finest houses which ...... been built in this town. (has, have)
7. Of the four prisoners everyone ...... escaped. (have, has)
8. Oil and water ...... not mix. (do, does)
9. Every man, woman and child ...... given food. (was, were)
10. Ram, rather than others, ... guilty. (is, are)
11. He is one of the players who ......been selected. (have, has)
12. Either she or I ...... done it. (have, has)
13. The public ...... requested not to walk on the grass. (is, are)
14. The notorious dacoit with his followers ...... escaped. (has, have)
15. Many a man ...... working. (was, were)
16. Two metres ...... needed for my coat. (is, are)
17. Either the boys or the teacher ...... in the wrong. (is, are)
18. Neither of the sisters ...... very much liked. (was, were)
19. The sum and substance of the matter ...... that he died on the spot. (is, are)
20. My partners as well as I ...... ruined. (was, were)
21. Not only he but also his servants ...... blamed for the accident. (was, were)
22. The number of the persons ...... high. (was, were)
23. Three-fourths of the book ...... been finished. (has, have)
24. The teeth of the boy ...... white. (is, are)
25. The parliament ...... taken its decision. (have, has)
26. None of us ...... money. (have, has)
27. The philosopher and scholar...... dead. (is, are)
28. Bread and butter ...... a nice breakfast. (is, are)
29. He ...... not go there. (dare, dares)
30. Neither of the stories ......interesting. (is, are)

31. ...... you or he to blame ? (is, are)
32. More than one book ...... bought. (was, were)
33. My friend as well as myself ...... caught. (was, were)
34. All furniture ...... good. (is, are)
35. A number of boys ...... playing there. (is, are)
36. Half of the mango ...... rotten. (is, are)
37. You are the person who ...... me. (help, helps)
38. Neither the moon nor the stars ...... visible. (was, were)
39. The house with all its belongings ...... stolen. (was, were)
40. He ordered as if he ...... my master. (was, were)
41. The young ...... misguided. (is, are)
42. Three parts of this work ...... still unfinished. (is, are)
43. His means ...... extremely poor. (is, are)
44. ...... either of the girls come ? (has, have)
45. Either of the steps ...... wrong. (is, are)
46. More soldiers than one ...... killed. (was, were)
47. Nothing but trees ...... seen. (was, were)
48. It is one of the best books that ...... been written. (have, has)
49. Our only guide ...... the stars. (was, were)
50. The light of these lamps ...... very bright. (is, are)

ANSWERS

1. has, **2.** were, **3.** are, **4.** are, **5.** is, **6.** have, **7.** has, **8.** do, **9.** was, **10.** is, **11.** have, **12.** have, **13.** are, **14.** has, **15.** was, **16.** is, **17.** is, **18.** was, **19.** is, **20.** were, **21.** were, **22.** was, **23.** has, **24.** are, **25.** has, **26.** have/has, **27.** is, **28.** is, **29.** dare, **30.** is, **31.** are, **32.** was, **33.** was, **34.** is, **35.** are, **36.** is, **37.** helps, **38.** were, **39.** was, **40.** were, **41.** are, **42.** is, **43.** are, **44.** has, **45.** is, **46.** were, **47.** was, **48.** have, **49.** was, **50.** is.

EXERCISE 91

Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs choosing from the brackets.

1. You and I ...... good friends. (am, are)
2. The nature of these boys ...... good. (is, are)
3. The sons of Lata ...... very intelligent. (is, are)
4. The gold in the boxes ...... not pure. (is, are)
5. The quality of these mangoes ...... not good. (is, are)
6. The colour of these shirts ...... blue. (is, are)
7. The boys of this school ...... very disciplined. (is, are)
8. A number of boys ...... going today. (is, are)
9. The number of boys ...... increasing everyday. (is, are)
10. Most of the houses in the street ...... (is, are)

11. A lot of sugar ...... been bought. (has, have)
12. A lot of books ...... been bought. (has, have)
13. Heaps of sand ...... lying on the bank. (was, were)
14. A part of the mango ...... rotten. (is, are)
15. A part of the mangoes ...... rotten. (is, are)
16. Half of the boys ...... absent. (is, are)
17. Half of the water ...... dirty. (is, are)
18. Forty percent of the students ...... failed in the examination. (have, has)
19. The percentage of good persons ...... not very high. (is, are)
20. Forty percent of the amount ...... been paid. (has, have)
21. A lot of work ...... still undone. (is, are)
22. Three-fourths of the book ...... been finished. (has, have)
23. A large number of people ...... applied for the job. (have, has)
24. The number of people applying for the job ...... very large. (was, were)
25. A number of cattle ...... grazing. (is, are)
26. A herd of cows ...... grazing grass. (is, are)
27. A team of speakers ...... reached here. (has, have)
28. A parcel of books ...... been received. (has, have)
29. A set of books ...... been bought. (has, have)
30. A number of books ...... been bought. (has, have)
31. The jury ...... passed its judgement. (has, have)
32. The jury ...... divided in their opinions. (was, were)
33. The government ...... done so in their interest. (has, have)
34. Twenty-one rupees ...... paid to me. (was, were)
35. Ten miles ...... not a long distance. (is, are)
36. Five tons of coal ...... enough for me. (is, are)
37. City after city ...... destroyed. (was, were)
38. Your trousers ...... very loose. (is, are)
39. A pair of trousers ...... been made for you (has, have)
40. My scissors ...... sharp. (is, are)
41. The poor ...... honest by nature. (is, are)
42. The blind ...... helpless. (is, are)
43. All the furniture ...... good. (is, are)
44. Shakespeare's poetry ...... immortal. (is, are)
45. The police ...... arrested the thief. (have, has)
46. Mathematics...... not very tough. (is, are)
47. His wages....... Rs. 1000/- a month. (is, are)
48. The wages of sin ...... death. (is, are)
49. Nothing but water ...... seen. (was, were)
50. Nothing but trees ...... seen. (was, were)

EXERCISE 92

Fill in the blanks with the suitable form of the verbs given in the brackets.

1. I wish I ...... a king. (was, were)
2. If I ...... rich, I would buy a car. (was, were)
3. ...... she a bird, she would fly to me. (was, were)
4. He commanded me as if he ...... my boss. (was, were)
5. Many a man ...... visited him. (has, have)
6. More than one man ...... killed. (was, were)
7. More books than one ...... been bought. (have, has)
8. My friend with all the members of his family ...... come. (has, have)
9. The teacher with his two students ......doing research. (is, are)
10. The notorious dacoit with his followers ...... arrested. (was, were)
11. Mr Sinha, with his wife and children, ... present at the show. (was, were)
12. He as well as his children ...... come. (has, have)
13. The students as well as the teacher ...... not punctual. (is, are)
14. The thief, as well as his sons, ... arrested. (was, were)
15. He, no less than you, ... to blame. (is, are)
16. The thief, and not his sons, ... guilty. (was, were)
17. Gopal, together with his friends, ... shot dead. (was, were)
18. He, like his friends, always ...... (drink, drinks)
19. You, rather than your father, ... to blame. (is, are)
20. Not only Mohan but also his brothers ...... there. (was, were)
21. Not only students but the teacher ...... also responsible. (is, are)
22. Each boy ...... a pen. (has, have)
23. Each of the boys ...... rewarded. (was, were)
24. Everyone of them ...... the fact. (know, knows)
25. Each of you ...... guilty. (is, are)
26. Neither of the clerks ...... able. (is, are)
27. Either of the books ...... readable. (is, are)
28. One of you ...... to be punished. (is, are)
29. One of the players ...... well. (play, plays)
30. Either of these roads ...... unsafe these days. (is, are)
31. None of them ...... come here. (has, have)
32. Any of the boys ...... able. (is, are)
33. None of the persons ...... courage. (have, has)
34. Each boy and each girl ...... present. (was, were)
35. Each and every man, woman and child ...... given food. (was, were)

36. Either Ram or his friends ...... done this. (has, have)
37. Neither you nor he ...... guilty. (is, are)
38. Either she or I ...... to do it. (am, is)
39. Ram or his friends ...... done this. (has, have)
40. The boy who is sleeping ...... my son. (is, are)
41. The boys who ...... sleeping are my sons. (is, are)
42. It is the boys who ...... done this. (have, has)
43. It is I who ...... to do it. (am, is)
44. He is one of the players who ...... been selected. (have, has)
45. I am one of those persons who never ...... a lie. (tell, tells)
46. The head clerk and accountant ...... dead. (is, are)
47. The poet and the philosopher ...... dead. (is, are)
48. A red and black horse ...... grazing in the field. (is, are)
49. A red and a black horse ...... grazing in the field. (is, are)
50. Four and two ...... equal to six. (is, are)
51. Ten times five ...... fifty. (is, are)

EXERCISE 93

Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs choosing from the brackets.

1. No boy and no girl ...... ready. (is, are)
2. Slow and steady ...... the race. (win, wins)
3. Time and tide ...... for none. (wait, waits)
4. Oil and water ...... not mix. (do, does)
5. Bread and butter ...... wholesome food. (is, are)
6. The horse and carriage ...... at the door. (is, are)
7. The sum and substance of the matter ...... that he died on the spot. (is, are)
8. Truth and honesty ...... the best policy. (is, are)
9. Eggs and butter ...... not sold here. (is, are)
10. I, Suresh, ... going to do it now. (am, is)
11. He ...... not do this. (need, needs)
12. He ...... to labour hard. (need, needs)
13. She ...... not need anything. (do, does)
14. She ...... not face her father. (dare, dares)
15. There ...... gold and silver in the box. (is, are)
16. There ...... no mangoes here. (is, are)
17. There ...... a boy and a girl playing there. (is, are)
18. There ...... no hope there. (is, are)
19. The new rates are as ...... (follow, follows)
20. The main events were as ...... (follow, follows)
21. The following ...... the names likely to be selected. (are, is)

22. The number of persons engaged ...... fifty. (was, were)
23. Each of us ...... to do this. (has, have)
24. Nothing but adventures ...... liked by me. (is, are)
25. Milk and soda ...... a nice drink. (is, are)
26. The mother as well as her children ...... engaged. (is, are)
27. Many a man ...... engaged. (was, were)
28. A variety of pleasing objects ...... the eyes. (charm, charms)
29. Rama, and not you, ... won the prize. (has, have)
30. He is one of those authors who ...... destined to be immortal. (is, are)
31. Which one of these umbrellas ...... yours ? (is, are)
32. Milton was one of the greatest poets that ...... ever lived. (have, has)
33. Either you or she ...... to blame. (is, are)
34. The box, with all his articles, ... been stolen. (has, have)
35. The Magistrate and the collector ...... here. (is, are)
36. What we need most ...... books. (is, are)
37. One of my friends ...... gone to America. (has, have)
38. The pens that you gave me ...... lost. (is, are)
39. The Himalayas ...... a range of mountains. (is, are)
40. More than one person ...... arrested. (was, were)
41. Age and experience ...... wisdom to man. (bring, brings)
42. Half of the mangoes ...... rotten. (is, are)
43. More boys than one ...... present. (was, were)
44. I wish it ...... possible. (was, were)
45. Either the boys or the teacher ...... in the wrong. (is, are)
46. My friend, poet and philosopher ...... no more. (is, are)
47. It is I who ...... to blame. (is, am, are)
48. Nobody, not even the teachers, ... present. (was, were)
49. Every man, woman and child ...... given proper care. (was, were)
50. A set of combs ...... been bought. (has, have)

EXERCISE 94

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of the verbs.

1. There (is, are) many objections to such a plan.
2. The accountant and the cashier (was, were) charged.
3. Each of the students (have, has) been awarded.
4. The police (have, has) been asked to help them.
5. Neither of the combatants (was/were) able to win a decisive victory.
6. A team of doctors (has, have) reached.
7. The dog along with the boys (was, were) moving in the jungle.

8. Neither reward nor punishment (is, are) to be expected.
9. More books than one (was, were) bought.
10. One of the best students ...... absent today.
11. The packet, with all its contents, ... stolen.
12. The wages of sin ...... death.
13. Time and tide (wait,waits) for none.
14. The number of the men employed (was, were) great.
15. A number of people (have, has) been killed.
16. One-fourth of the mango (is, are) rotten.
17. My parents as well as I (was, were) examined.
18. Some people (dislike, dislikes) travelling.
19. Much (has, have) been said on the subject.
20. A lot of rice (has, have) been brought.
21. A large number of books (has, have) to be bought.
22. I am the person who (is, are) to blame.
23. I am one of the persons who (is, are) always against this.
24. A pair of shoes (is, are) in the box.
25. The cattle ...... grazing in the field.
26. Five sheep ...... grazing in the field.
27. A herd of cows ...... grazing in the field.
28. The board (has, have) decided to elect its new members.
29. The jury (was, were) divided in its opinion.
30. Sixty miles ...... a long distance.
31. The crown and glory of life (is, are) character.
32. The leader and scholar (is, are) to address this meeting.
33. Neither the students nor I (am, are) to blame.
34. A crowd of people (was, were) shouting slogans.
35. What I say and what I do (is, are) no business of yours.
36. It (is, are) they who (is, are) to be blamed for the accident.
37. The whole herd of cattle (is, are) likely to be sold.
38. Bad news always (travel, travels) fast.
39. Two-thirds of the acid (has, have) evaporated.
40. The tallest of the three boys (live, lives) next door to me.
41. One of the pupils in our class (own, owns) a car.
42. She is one of those who (has, have) never surrendered.
43, The people waiting for the train (is, are) getting impatient.
44. The difficulty of obtaining pure ghee and milk ...... great.
45. The chief with his followers ...... present there.
46. Two-thirds of the city ...... destroyed.
47. To take pay and then not to work (is, are) dishonest.
48. Every man and every woman ...... equal right.
49. Ram (dare, dares) not face me.

Hints : 34. was 35. are 37. is

17. Phrasal Verbs

अँग्रेजी में कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं जो Prepositions या Adverbs के साथ मिलकर नया अर्थ प्राप्त कर लेते हैं। ऐसे Verb + Preposition या Verb + Adverb combinations को Phrasal Verbs कहते हैं। जैसे—

look after	—	देखभाल करना
give up	—	छोड़ना, त्यागना
give away	—	बाँटना, देना
see off	—	विदा करना
work out	—	हल करना

Note : 1. Phrasal Verb का अर्थ उनमें प्रयुक्त individual words के अर्थ से भिन्न होता है। अगर Verb के बाद Preposition या Adverb प्रयुक्त हो और दोनों मिलकर एक नया अर्थ प्राप्त नहीं करते हों तो ऐसे combinations को Phrasal Verbs नहीं कहेंगे। उदाहरण के लिए निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में कोई भी Phrasal Verbs प्रयुक्त नहीं हैं।

He looked at me.

The prize was given by the President.

He came by bus.

What are you doing in the room ?

He is going to school.

2. कुछ Phrasal Verbs तीन words से बने होते हैं। जैसे—

put up with

carry on with

look forward to

3. कभी-कभी वाक्य में प्रयोग के हिसाब से कोई combination एक वाक्य में Phrasal Verb हो सकता है, तो वही combination दूसरे वाक्य में Phrasal Verb नहीं भी हो सकता है।

(a) Some of these leaders have decided to go over to the Congress Party.

यहाँ go over to एक Phrasal Verb है। इसका अर्थ है—धर्म या दल बदल देना।

(b) The waitor went over to a cupboard and took some glasses out.

यहाँ went over to Phrasal Verb नहीं है क्योंकि वाक्य के भाव एवं अर्थ से स्पष्ट है कि went, over तथा to का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में किया गया है। went से movement तथा over/to से direction का बोध हो रहा है।

अब हम कुछ Phrasal Verbs पर विचार करेंगे। यहाँ आपको यह जानना जरूरी नहीं है कि Verb के बाद Preposition प्रयुक्त हुआ है या Adverb; आपको सिर्फ Phrasal Verb का अर्थ तथा इसके प्रयोग को समझना है।

1. **account for**—explain the cause of, का कारण बताना
His illness accounts for his absence.

2. **ask for (something)**—demand, की माँग करना/के लिए अनुरोध करना
The workers asked for more pay and shorter hours.

3. **ask for (somebody)**—say that one wants to see or speak to somebody, मिलने या बात करने के लिए संवाद देना
Go to the office and ask for my secretary.

4. **back out**—withdraw from an agreement or a promise, मुकर जाना
You promised me to help, now you can't back out.

5. **back up**—support, का समर्थन करना
I shall back up my friend's claim.

6. **bear out**—support somebody, confirm something, सिद्ध करना, साबित करना
Have you a witness to bear out what you say ?
They will bear me out in court.

7. **bear with**—tolerate patiently, धीरज से सहना, बरदाश्त करना
You must bear with her a few days more.

8. **blow out**—extinguish by blowing, फूँककर बुझाना
When the door opened, the wind blew out the candle.

9. **blow up**—explode, फूट पड़ना, उड़ा देना
Suddenly the bomb blew up.
They blew up the building/bridge/car.
The commander ordered the army to blow up the bridge.

10. **boil over**—boil and flow over the side of a container, उफन पड़ना
The milk is boiling over now.

11. **break down**—fail, stop, cease to function, रुक जाना, खराब हो जाना
The car suddenly broke down while passing through the dense forest.
The telephone has broken down.
He broke down in the middle of his speech.

12. **break in (intransitive), break into (transitive)**—enter by force, बलपूर्वक (तोड़कर) भीतर घुस जाना
Thieves broke in and stole all the costly articles.
The house was broken into last week when the owner was on holiday.

13. **break out**—(of bad or violent events) start suddenly, बुरी या अशुभ घटना का आरंभ होना
The fire broke out at midnight.
The war broke out in 1940.
Cholera has broken out everywhere in the district.

14. **break up**—end, disperse, समाप्त होना, तितर-बितर हो जाना
The meeting broke up at 9 o'clock.

15. **break with**—end a relationship with somebody, संबंध-विच्छेद करना
He broke with his girl-friend.

16. **bring forth**—produce something, उत्पन्न करना
Trees bring forth fruit.
Drinking brings forth misery.

17. **bring up**—raise, rear or educate, पालन-पोषण करना, पढ़ाना-लिखाना
My parents died when I was a little child and I was brought up by my father's friend.
She brought up the orphan as her own child.

18. **bring out**—cause something to appear or open, publish, प्रकट या प्रकाशित करना
We are soon bringing out a political magazine.

19. **bring down**—cause to fall, lower, गिराना, कम करना
No government has been able to bring down the prices of commodities.

20. **bring about**—cause something to happen, उत्पन्न करना
His theory brought about a revolution in the field of computer.

21. **bring under**—bring something under control, वश में करना, नियंत्रण में करना
The police soon brought the riot under control.

22. **bring round**—cause somebody to regain consciousness, होश में लाना
The injection soon brought the patient round.

23. **burn down**—destroy or to be destroyed by fire
The mob burnt down the railway station.

24. **call in**—किसी को बुलवाना
Please call in a doctor immediately.

25. **call off**—cancel, withdraw, order to stop, समाप्त करना, वापस लेना
The strike will be called off tomorrow.
The match was called off because of bad weather.

26. call up—recall, याद करना
After the accident he was not able to call up past events.

27. call for—require, demand, need, माँग करना, आवश्यकता होना
The situation calls for prompt action to be taken.
The teacher called for an explanation of my absence.

28. call on—pay someone a brief visit, थोड़ी देर के लिए जाना या रूकना
She called on me yesterday.

29. call out—बुलाना, summon
When the situation was out of control, the army was called out.

30. care for—like or love somebody or something, look after, पसंद करना, चाहना, देख-भाल करना
He does not care for his wife.
I don't care much for English films.
Who will care for the little child if its mother dies ?
She cares for her deeply.

31. carry out—execute, fulfil, obey, पूरा करना, आज्ञा/आदेश का पालन करना
He agreed to carry out my orders.
I have to carry out the orders of my master.

32. carry off—win, पुरस्कार जीतना
He carried off many prizes last year.

33. carry on—continue (usually work or duty)
I am fed up with this business; I can't carry on any longer.

34. carry on with—continue
The doctor told me to carry on with the treatment.

35. catch on—become popular, लोकप्रिय हो जाना
Disco is catching on very fast.

36. catch up with—overtake but not pass, दूसरे के बराबर होना
You are the weakest boy in the class; you must labour hard to catch up with other students.

37. clear up—make tidy and clean, ठीक करना
Please clear up the table before you leave.

38. clear away—disperse, pass away, remove
When the clouds cleared away the stars became quite visible.

39. clear off—go away, complete the payment of somebody, भाग जाना, चुकाना
As soon as he saw the police he cleared off.
I am to clear off the debt soon.

40. **come across**—find by chance, संयोग से मिलना
When I was looking for my purse I came across these old photographs.
While going to market I came across an old friend of mine.

41. **come out**—be published, be exposed, प्रकाशित होना, प्रकट होना
My new book will come out soon.
At last, the truth came out.

42. **come up**—begin to grow
In spring weeds come up everywhere.

43. **come about**—happen, होना, घटित होना
Nobody knows how the accident came about.

44. **come down**—become lower, fall, कम होना, नीचे उतरना
The price of nothing is to come down.

45. **come off**—take place, होना
When is the wedding coming off ?

46. **come on**—come with me. 'Come on' is often said to someone who is hesitating or delaying.
Come on, we'll be late for the show.

47. **count on**—rely on, भरोसा करना
I count on your help.

48. **cry down**—depreciate, तुच्छ समझना, शिकायत करना
You must not cry down her real achievements.

49. **cry up**—extol, प्रशंसा करना
He was cried up by his friends.

50. **cut down**—reduce, कम करना
Cut down your expenses, or you will be getting into debt.

51. **cut off**—disconnect, remove
If you don't pay the bill on time your electric supply will be cut off.
He cut off a metre of cloth from the roll.

52. **deal in**—sell something, trade in something, का व्यापार करना
He deals in sugar.

53. **deal with**—behave towards somebody, व्यवहार करना
How would you deal with an angry man ?

54. **dispose of**—समाप्त करना, निपटाना, बेचना
Why don't you dispose of your old car ?
He is engaged in disposing of all the files.

55. **do away with**—abolish, समाप्त करना
We must try to do away with bad customs.

56. do without—manage in the absence of somebody or something, के बिना काम चलाना
You may go. I'll do without you.
Now a days we can't do without telephone.

57. die out—become extinct, no longer be common, लुप्त हो जाना, अप्रचलित हो जाना
Some old customs are dying out.

58. draw back—retire, recoil, पीछे हटना, से अलग हो जाना
It is not wise to draw back now; so much has been invested in this scheme.

59. draw up—make a written plan or agreement, तैयार करना
If we want to work together we must draw up an agreement.

60. drop in—pay a short unannounced visit, बिना पूर्व सूचना के थोड़ी देर के लिए कहीं जाना
He occasionally dropped in to ask if I had any problem.

61. drop out—withdraw, stop attending, retire from a scheme or plan, छोड़ देना, बंद कर देना
He joined the coaching but after a few days he dropped out.

62. eat into—consume something, destroy as if by eating; dissolve, नष्ट करना, खा जाना
Rust has eaten into these iron rods.
Acid eats into metal.

63. fall off—decrease, घट जाना, कम हो जाना
The number of students has fallen off.

64. fall out—quarrel, झगड़ा करना
I don't know why they fell out.

65. fall through—fail, असफल होना
The scheme has fallen through for want of support.

66. fall back—retreat, withdraw, पीछे हटना
At last, the enemies had to fall back.

67. fall on—attack violently, आक्रमण करना
A number of robbers fell on the villagers and robbed everything they got.

68. fill in—add what is necessary to make something complete, पूरा करना
Many of the applicants did not know even how to fill in the application form.

69. find out—पता लगाना, खोजना
Nobody could find out what was wrong with it.

70. get up—rise, उठना, जगना
I get up at 5 o'clock every morning.

71. get out—be out
The teacher ordered the student to get out of the class.

72. get through—complete, पूरा करना, सफल होना
He failed but his sister got through.

73. get on—make progress, तरक्की करना
How is your son getting on at school ?
Is he getting on very well with his English ?

74. get in—arrive, पहुँचना
The train got in an hour late.

75. get back—return, recover possession of, लौटना, पुनः प्राप्त करना
I shall get back tomorrow.
I did not get back the money he had taken from me.

76. get away—भाग जाना, निकलने का मौका पाना
Some of the prisoners got away from jail.
I shall not be able to get away from office before 4 o'clock.

77. get into—become involved with something
He got into trouble with the police.

78. give up—stop, leave, surrender, बंद करना, छोड़ देना, त्याग देना, समर्पण करना
Give up your bad habits.
He has given up smoking.
At last, the robber decided to give himself up to the police.

79. give away—बाँटना, देना
The prizes were given away by the chairman.
The bride was given away by the father.

80. give back—return something to its owner, लौटाना
I think he will never give my book back.

81. give in—yield, cease to resist, झुकना, दब जाना, हार मानना
She is too much stubborn; she will never give in.
The rebels were forced to give in.

82. go ahead—proceed, continue, कार्य जारी रखना
Go ahead with patience; you will get the result.

83. go away—leave a place, disappear
I am going away for a few days.

84. go back—return
I have to go back to my country next week.

85. go down—become less, कम हो जाना
The price of sugar has gone down.

86. go up—rise, ऊपर उठना, बढ़ना
The prices of everything are going up.

87. go off—be fired, explode, छूटना, फूटना
When he was clearing the gun, it went off by mistake.

88. go out—be extinguished, रोशनी बुझ जाना
When the light went out it was quite dark everywhere.

89. go on—continue any action, जारी रखना
Please go on singing; it is so sweet.

90. go into—investigate thoroughly, गंभीरता से जाँच करना
I can say nothing unless I go into the matter.

91. go through—examine carefully and thoroughly, सावधानी पूर्वक विस्तार से जाँच करना
There is a mistake somewhere; we must go through the accounts to see where it is.

92. grow up—become adult
She is growing up fast.

93. hold on—stop, wait (especially on the telephone)
Yes, Mr Sinha is in. If you hold on for a moment I'll get him for you.

94. hold up—रोकना, बाधा डालना, लूटना
We were held up by a few masked man.
His payment was held up.

95. keep back—restrain, hinder, conceal, prevent from moving, रोकना, छिपाना, आगे न बढ़ने देना
Poverty has kept him back.
I shall keep back nothing from you.
She tried to keep back her tears but it was in vain.

96. keep on—continue, जारी रखना
She kept on weeping for hours.

97. keep off—से दूर या वंचित रहना
Keep off drugs; it is more than a poison.

98. keep under—oppress, control, दबा देना, नियंत्रण में रखना
At last the firemen managed to keep the fire under.

99. keep out—बाहर रखना, अन्दर न आने देना
Honesty keeps out fears.

100. knock off—stop doing something, बंद कर देना
Labourers usually knock off at 5.30 or 6.00 p. m.

101. knock down—ठोकर मार कर गिराना
He was knocked down by a car.

102. knock out—पछाड़ देना, अचेत कर गिरा देना, hit someone so hard that he falls unconscious
He knocked out his opponent in the boxing.

103. leave off—stop doing something, बंद कर देना
When are you going to leave off the work ?

104. leave out—omit, not include or mention, छोड़ देना
This poem will give no meaning if we leave out the first four lines.

105. let down—lower something, disappoint somebody by not helping him, उतार देना, नीचे गिरने देना, निराश करना
When she let her hair down it reached her waist.
He promised to help me, but when the time came he let me down.

106. let in—allow to enter, भीतर आने देना
If you don't have a ticket, they will not let you in.

107. let off—refrain from punishing severely, बिना कड़ी सजा दिए छोड़ देना
Criminals must not be let off.
I thought the magistrate would punish me but he let me off.

108. let out—allow to leave, release, बाहर जाने देना, छोड़ देना
She opened the window and let the cat out.

109. live on—किसी खास भोजन पर जिन्दा रहना
The cow lives on grass.

110. look after—take care of, देखभाल करना
There is no one to look after the orphan.
Who will look after the old man when his wife dies ?

111. look forward to—expect with pleasure, उत्सुकता से प्रतीक्षा करना
I am so much looking forward to seeing you again.

112. look for—खोजना, प्रतीक्षा करना
What are you looking for ?

113. look down on—तुच्छ समझना, तिरस्कार करना, contempt or despise sb/sth
The rich have got no right to look down on the poor.
He was looked down on because of his poor clothing.

114. look into—investigate or examine, जाँच पड़ताल करना
A team of experts has been set up to look into the problem.

115. look on—regard or consider, मानना, समझना
I have always looked on you as my father.
I look on him as my brother.

116. look in—pay a short visit
I am looking in this evening to see if she is quite well.

117. look out—be watchful
Look out ! There is a snake creeping.

118. look out for—किसी की ताक या खोज में रहना
Go to the market and look out for Mrs Sinha.

119. look up—खोजना, पता लगाना
Have you looked up the word 'environment' in a dictionary ?

120. make up one's mind—come to a decision, निर्णय करना
In the end he made up his mind to stay there.

121. make out—understand, discover the meaning of, समझना, अर्थ लगाना
I can't make out the meaning of this passage.
I can not make out what the child is crying for.

122. make off—run away
The thief made off when he saw the police.

123. make over—transfer
He made over his whole property to his daughter.

124. make after—chase or pursue, पीछा करना
The police made after the robber.

125. make away with oneself—commit suicide, आत्महत्या करना
She made away with herself.

126. make away with something— चुराकर भाग जाना
The robbers made away with the treasure.

127. make up— use cosmetics
Most women make up their faces.

128. pick out— choose, select, चुनना
Here are six items . Pick out the one you like most.

129. pick up— improve, take hold of and lift sb / sth
Unless you go to a hill station, your health will not pick up.
Who will not pick up the child crying alone on the ground ?

130. point out— indicate, show, दिखाना, निर्देशित करना
At last, it was pointed out where the mistake was.

131. pull down—demolish, destroy, ढाहना, नष्ट करना
It is easier to pull down than to build up.

132. put on—पहनना, दिखाना
My teacher always puts on simple dress.
An advocate puts on a black coat.
He put on an air of dignity.

133. put on—मोमबत्ती, विजली आदि को जलाना
Please put on the light. I have to read.

134. put out—मोमबत्ती, विजली आदि को बुझाना
Please put out the light when you go to bed.

135. put down—write down
Put down my telephone number before you forget it.

136. put up with—bear patiently, धैर्यपूर्वक बरदाश्त करना या सहना
Who can put up with such an insult ?

137. ring up—टेलीफोन करना
If you can't come ring up and let me know what I should do.
As soon as he saw the thief he rang up the police.

138. ring off—end a telephone call by putting down the receiver.
He rang off before I could ask who he was.

139. run after—pursue, के पीछे पड़ा रहना, का पीछा करना
The dog runs after the cat.
He always runs after wealth.

140. run away—flee, भाग जाना
As soon as the police came, the thief ran away.

141. run down—stop functioning, lessen, speak against, बंद हो जाना, कमजोर हो जाना, निन्दा करना
The battery has run down.
She is always running down her neighbours.

142. run out—समाप्त हो जाना, क्रिकेट में रन आऊट हो जाना
I am run out of money.
My passport has run out.
The petrol is running out.
The player was run out.

143. run over— overflow, ऊपर से बहना, कुचल देना
The river is running over.
The cat was run over by a car.

144. see about — deal with something
They needn't worry. I will see about the management myself.

145. see off—विदा करना
We all went to the railway station to see her off.

146. see through—किसी चाल को भाँप जाना, understand the trick
She can't cheat me. I have seen through her love.

147. see to—deal with something, का इंतजाम करना, की देख-रेख करना, ध्यान रखना
Who will see to the party in her absence ?
If this is not functioning why don't you get a mechanic to see to it ?

148. send for—बुला भेजना, मँगाना
We don't have so much time; send for a taxi.

149. set apart—make sb/sth different from others (औरों से अलग करना या रखना)
Reeta's style sets her apart from her sisters.

150. set aside—cancel or reject, रद्द करना
His appeal was set aside by the High Court.

151. set down—लिख लेना, write something down
What made you set her address down on the paper ?

152. set forth—make something known, declare, बताना, स्पष्ट करना
He set forth his views on the subject.

153. set in—begin, शुरू होना
The winter season sets in November every year.

154. set off / set out / set forth—start a journey.
He set out early in the morning.

155. set on—आक्रमण करना या आक्रमण के लिए उकसाना, attack or cause to attack
How were you set on by the dog ?
He threatened to set his dog on me.

156. set up—achieve, establish, start a new business
Gavaskar set up a new record in the world of cricket.
He has set up a number of institutions.
He has set up himself as a painter.
He is trying to set up on his own.

157. settle down—किसी काम या परिवेश में अपने आपको व्यवस्थित तथा स्थिर कर लेना
You must settle down before you marry.

158. shout down—make a loud noise to prevent a speaker from being heard, हल्ला करके किसी को बोलने नहीं देना
The angry crowd shouted down the speaker.

159. show off—display purely in order to impress others, दिखाना, प्रदर्शन करना
He is always picking up heavy things just to show off his strength.

160. stand by someone—support or help somebody, किसी को समर्थन देना या मदद करना
I will stand by him whatever happens.

161. stand for—represent, का प्रतीक होना
What does P_1 stand for in this equation ?

162. stand for parliament—be a candidate for parliament
I shall stand for parliament this year.

163. stand out—be easily seen, be conspicuous, स्पष्ट या विशिष्ट रूप से दिखाई देना
He stood out from the crowd because of his height and hat.

164. (be) taken aback—be surprised and disconcerted, चकित होना
I was taken aback by the way he spoke to me.
I was taken aback when I found her in my room.

165. take after—resemble (one's parents / grand parents) in appearance or character, देखने या चरित्र में समान होना
She takes after her mother.
None of his sons takes after him.

166. take back—withdraw, वापस लेना
I had to take back my remarks to please her.

167. take down—write, usually from dictation, लिख लेना
The reporters took down the leader's speech.

168. take for—कुछ दूसरा समझ लेना
I took him for his brother. They are extremely alike.
I took him for a thief.
Do you take me for a fool ?

169. take off—remove, leave the ground (of aeroplanes, helicopters, etc)
He took off his coat when he entered the house.
The aeroplane took off despite the fog.
The plane will take off soon.

170. take on—undertake something, हाथ में लेना
I cannot take on this responsibility.

171. take over—कार्य संभालना, पदभार ग्रहण करना
Mr John will take over as managing director when Mr Hardy retires.

172. take to something/doing something—begin to do something as a habit, कोई कार्य आदत के रूप में शुरू करना
He has taken to drink.
He has now taken to gambling.
He took to borrowing money from his friends.

173. take up—begin or start something, esp a job
He has taken up a job as a teacher.

174. think over—consider, गंभीरता से विचार करना
Please think over what I have said.

175. think of—याद करना, पर सोचना
What made you think of this ?

176. turn down—refuse, reject an offer / application / applicant, अस्वीकार करना
I applied for the job but they turned down my application.

177. turn against—become unfriendly or hostile towards somebody, के विरुद्ध हो जाना
He turned against his old friends.

178. turn into—convert into, में बदल देना
I am going to turn my garage into a guest room.

179. turn on—चलाना
Turn on the gas and light the oven.

180. turn off—बंद करना
The water is flowing over. Turn off the water tap.

181. turn out—produce, उत्पन्न करना, साबित होना, बाद में पता चलना
The factory turns out 400 cars a day.
He turned out to be the son of my old friend.
The job turned out to be harder than we thought.

182. turn up—make one's appearance, arrive, पहुँचना, होना
We arranged to meet at the cinema, but she did not turn up.

183. wait on—attend, serve, सेवा या देखभाल करना
He expected his wife to wait on him hand and foot.

184. wipe out—destroy completely, बर्बाद या सर्वनाश करना
The flood wiped out the whole village.
Whole villages were wiped out in the bombing raids.

185. work out—हल करना, तैयार करना
Can you work out this coded message ?
The commander worked out a new plan of attack.



18. Prepositions

अँग्रेजी शुद्ध-शुद्ध लिखने और बोलने के लिए आप जिन grammatical items का अध्ययन करते हैं उनमें Prepositions का अपना एक विशिष्ट महत्व है। इसके प्रयोग करने में बहुत अधिक सावधानी बरतने की आवश्यकता होती है, क्योंकि किसी खास शब्द के साथ किसी खास Preposition का प्रयोग होता है और कुछ शब्दों के साथ भिन्न-भिन्न अर्थों में भिन्न-भिन्न Prepositions का प्रयोग होता है। वह कुआँ में गिर गया। यहाँ 'में' की अँग्रेजी 'in' देते हैं तो गलत होगा। यहाँ आपको 'into' देना होगा क्योंकि गति/वेग दिखाने के लिए 'into' का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात् He fell into the well. पुनः live के बाद in देते हैं तो इसका कुछ और अर्थ होगा; अगर live के बाद on देते हैं तो इसका कुछ और भिन्न अर्थ होगा—

He lives in India. (वह भारत में रहता है)
The cow lives on grass. (गाय घास पर जिन्दा रहती है)

अब यहाँ देखें कि एक ही word 'died' के बाद विभिन्न स्थितियों में भिन्न-भिन्न Prepositions का प्रयोग कैसे हुआ है—

He died of cancer.
He died from wound.
He died for the nation.
He died through neglect.
He died in battle.
He died by violence.

इस प्रकार आपको word wise/situation wise यह जानना होगा कि किस word के बाद कौन Preposition अभीष्ट अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त होगा। इसके लिए सिर्फ certain rules जानना पर्याप्त नहीं होगा। बल्कि इसके लिए आपको निरन्तर अभ्यास करना होगा तथा किस word के बाद कौन Preposition लगता है यह ध्यान में रखना होगा तथा आवश्यकता पड़ने पर dictionary consult करना होगा।

Where to place a preposition in a sentence :

आप जानते हैं कि Preposition वह शब्द है जो प्रायः किसी Noun या Pronoun के पहले आकर उस Noun या Pronoun का संबंध वाक्य के कुछ अन्य शब्दों से कराता है। इसलिए अधिकांश स्थितियों में यह किसी Noun या Pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त रहता है जैसा कि इन वाक्यों से स्पष्ट है—

He is in the room.

She is going to school.
I am tired of walking.
The cat jumped off the chair.
What is that to me ?

यहाँ एक बात ध्यान में रखें कि जिस Noun/Pronoun के पहले Preposition प्रयुक्त रहता है वह Noun/Pronoun अभीष्ट Preposition का Object कहलाता है। ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में room, school, walking, chair तथा me क्रमशः in, to, of, off तथा to के Objects हैं।

कुछ परिस्थितियों में Preposition का प्रयोग Sentence/Clause के अंत में होता है या हो सकता है। ऐसी स्थिति में पहले Object आता है उसके बाद कुछ अन्य पद और तब उपयुक्त Preposition। अब एक-एक कर इन स्थितियों पर विचार करें।

1. जब Object के रूप में कोई Interrogative Pronoun प्रयुक्त रहता है तब Preposition को प्रायः Sentence/Clause के अंत में रखा जाता है, जैसे—

What are you looking at ?	(at is used for what)
What are you thinking of ?	(of is used for what)
What are you so angry about ?	(about is used for what)
Whom did you give it to ?	(to is used for whom)
Who is she weeping for ?	(for is used for who)

ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त what, when तथा who Interrogative Pronouns हैं जो वाक्य के अंत में प्रयुक्त Prepositions के Objects हैं।

2. जब Object Relative Pronoun 'that' रहे तब Preposition को Sentence/Clause के अंत में रखा जाता है, जैसे—

Here is the book that you have asked for.
This is the boy that I told you of.
I know the house that she lives in.

3. जब किसी वाक्य में Relative Pronoun अव्यक्त (unexpressed) रहे तब अभीष्ट Preposition को Sentence/Clause के अंत में रखा जाता है, जैसे—

This is the room I slept in.
This is the man I was speaking of.
The man I spoke to is my friend.
The house I live in is my own.

यहाँ ऊपर दिए गए प्रत्येक वाक्य में I के पहले Relative Pronoun प्रयुक्त रहना चाहिएं जो अव्यक्त है, अतः अभीष्ट Preposition को Sentence/Clause के बाद प्रयुक्त किया गया है। अगर आप Relative Pronouns प्रयुक्त करते हैं तो वाक्यों को इस प्रकार लिखा जायेगा—

This is the room in which I slept.
(This is the room that/where I slept in.)
This is the man of whom I was speaking.
The man to whom I spoke is my friend.
The house in which I live is my own.

4. जब कोई Infinitive Object के रूप में प्रयुक्त हो तब Preposition Infinitive के बाद प्रयुक्त होता है, जैसे—

This is a house to live in.
Here is a football to play with.
I need something to write with.

5. Some miscellaneous sentences ending with prepositions :

She likes being looked at.
I hate being laughed at.
Who is it for ?
Gandhiji is famous all the world over.

Prepositions : *meaning and correct usage*

1. About : nearness of some kind

(a) के संबंध में/के बारे में, concerning

Do you know about him ?
He is careless about his duties.
Tell me about the accident.
I am fond of hearing about ships.

(b) के इधर-उधर (स्थान का भाव), nearness of place

He is wandering about the town.
He is travelling about the world.

(c) के लगभग, nearness of time

It is about ten o'clock.
He arrived at about seven o'clock.

(d) होने-होने को (कार्य तुरन्त होने का भाव), nearness of state

The train is about to start.
The show is about to start.

2. Above : in a higher position

(a) के ऊपर (लेकिन सटा हुआ नहीं), higher than

A sword was hanging above his head.

The plane is flying above the clouds.

(b) से परे/से ऊपर, beyond the reach of, more than

He is above suspicion.
We should value honour above life.
The applicants should be above the age of twenty.

3. **Across :** from one side to the opposite

(a) के उस पार, on the opposite side of

Her house is across the river.

(b) एक छोर से दूसरी छोर तक, from one side to the other side of something

Can you swim across the river ?
There is a bridge across the river.

4. **After :** sequence

(a) के बाद, later than, showing sequence of time/place

He came after ten o'clock.
I will enter after you.
June comes after May.

(b) के बाद, indicating much repetition

He fired shot after shot.

(c) की शैली में, in the style of sb/sth

This is a poem after Shelly.

5. **Against :** opposition of some kind

(a) के विरुद्ध, के विपरीत, in opposition to sb/sth

I am not against you.
That is against the law.

(b) से सटकर, in contact with

He was leaning against a tree.

(c) की तैयारी में, in preparation for

There is an injection against cholera.

(d) in return for (something)

Tickets are issued only against payment of the full fee.

6. **Along :** in the same line with anything

(a) के समानान्तर, के बगल में, from one end to or towards the other end of something, close to or parallel with the length of something

The line went along the highway.
He walked along the river's bank.
Flowers grow along the side of the wall.

7. Among & Between :

इन दोनों का अर्थ होता है 'बीच में' पर इसमें अन्तर यह है कि जहाँ Between का प्रयोग दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के साथ होता है वहीं Among का प्रयोग तीन या तीन से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के साथ होता है, जैसे—

The money was divided between my two sons.
The money was divided among my four sons.
The books were distributed among the students.

Note : Between का प्रयोग दो से अधिक के साथ भी होता है, जब उन सब वस्तुओं या व्यक्तियों के बीच परस्पर संबंध या सहयोग (reciprocal relation) का बोध होता हो, जैसे—

There is a treaty between the five great powers.
There is not much space between the three points.

8. At : proximity (सामीप्य) with actual or intended contact

(a) निश्चित समय का बोध : proximity in time

He will come at 4 o'clock.
He came at noon/night/midnight.

(b) छोटे स्थान का बोध : proximity in place

He lives at Madhubani.
He is at home.
My son is at school.

(c) indicating price/rate/speed : proximity in value/speed

Rice sells at Rs. 10/- a kilo.
At what price is this sold ?
I bought this coat at 25% discount.
The train is running at sixty kilometres an hour.

(d) दिशा/लक्ष्य का बोध : proximity in aim/direction

She is looking at him.
He frowned at him for laughing at him.
Suddenly the dog rushed at me.
He aimed his gun at the thief.
A man with a gun was shooting at the crowd.

(e) indicating a state, condition or continuous activity : proximity in state/occupation

Children are at play.
They are at work.
He is standing at ease.

9. Before :

(a) से पहले, earlier than somebody/something

He will come before lunch.
A comes before B.
She has lived there since before the war.

(b) के सामने, in front of, in the presence of

He stood before the judge.
The task before us is not an easy one.
He said it before witnesses.

10. Behind : के पीछे

The dog ran behind its master. (स्थान का भाव)
She hid behind the tree. (स्थान का भाव)
India is behind China in developing modern technology. (तुलना का भाव)
The train is behind its time. (समय का भाव)
There is a smile behind his frown. (छिपाव का भाव)

11. Below : at a lower point or degree (नीचे)

Please don't write below this line.
He stood below me in the class.
The number was below twenty.

12. Beside and Besides :

Beside का अर्थ है—बगल में,समीप या बाहर और इससे स्थान का बोध होता है। Besides का अर्थ है—अतिरिक्त (in addition to), अलावे

She was sitting beside her mother. (माँ के बगल में)
She had no one besides her mother. (माँ के अतिरिक्त)
No one writes to me besides you. (तुम्हारे अलावे)

13. Beyond : on the farther side of, (के) परे, पार, बाहर

My house is beyond those hills.
It is beyond belief/endurance.
Her skill as a musician is beyond praise.
Don't spend beyond your means.
The bicycle is beyond repair. (too badly damaged to repair)

14. But : except, को छोड़कर, के अतिरिक्त

Everyone was there but you.
Nobody but you could be able.
The problem is anything but easy.
All but one were drowned.

15. By : nearness of some kind

(a) के समीप/के किनारे—nearness in place

Come and sit by me.
There was a house by the church/river.

(b) तक (समय से पहले)—nearness in time

Can you finish the work by 4 o'clock/tomorrow/next Sunday.

(c) से—यातायात के साधनं का बोध

We travel by car/bus/boat/cycle/plane.
He used to travel by air/land/sea.

(d) से/द्वारा—indicating means

May I pay by cheque ?
I shall contact you by letter.

(e) Some other uses of 'By' :

The thief entered by the back door.
Hamlet has been written by Shakespeare.
I met him by chance.
He seized me by the neck.
His condition is improving day by day.
The bullet missed him by two inches.
By my watch it is 4 o'clock.
He is an American by birth.
I swear by Almighty God.
Judging by appearances can be misleading.

16. For :

(a) के लिए (indicating personal benefit)

This is for you.
What is for Ravi ?
It is a book for children.
I bought sweets for children.
What can I do for you ?

(b) के लिए/की ओर (indicating direction/place)

He will soon start for home.
Is this the train for Delhi ?

(c) के कारण (indicating cause or reason)

She danced for joy.
He got a prize for bravery.

(d) समय का भाव (period of time)

He has been running for an hour.
He stayed there for two hours.
He was imprisoned for life.

(e) प्रतिनिधित्व या समर्थन का भाव

I am speaking for all the workers.
I am for this proposal.

(f) के रहते हुए भी (in spite of)

For all his learning he has no sense.
For all his wealth he is not happy.

(g) exchange का भाव

He sold his horse for five thousand.
I paid Rs. 100/- for the book.

(h) के लिए (indicating purpose or function)

He went for a walk.
He is learning music for pleasure.
This is a machine for cutting paper.

(i) Some other uses of 'For' :

She is tall for her age.
I am anxious for her.
The box is too heavy for me to lift.
He gave me roses for my birthday.
This is not fit for food.
Don't translate word for word.
What are you trying for ?
I have liking for fish.

17. From : motion or rest apart from anything

(a) से (स्थान से अलग होने का भाव)

He has come from Patna.
The wind is coming from the north.
Mangoes are falling from the tree.

(b) से (समय का भाव)

He was blind from birth.

I will be teaching from 10 a.m.
I will be there from morning to evening.

(c) से (कारण का भाव)

He is suffering from fever.

(d) से (श्रोत, origin का भाव)

These lines are from the Bible.

(e) से (एक वस्तु से दूसंरी वस्तु बनना)

We make curd from milk.
We make steel from iron.

(f) Some other uses of 'From' :

I had a phone call from Ravi.
This is a man from England.
I saved the girl from drowning.
From a teacher's point of view this book will be very useful.
He comes from a poor family.

18. In : rest in the interior of anything

(a) में (बड़े स्थान के साथ)

We live in India.
He lives in Bihar.

(b) में (समय का भाव)

He will come in four days.
I play in the morning.
It is hot in summer.

(c) में (दिशा, अवस्था का भाव)

He is in debt.
He is in a bad temper.
They are in trouble.
He is in good health.
Are you in love with her ?
Everything is in order.

(d) में (के भीतर)

She is in the room.
There are seven days in a week.
There are stars in the sky.
There is water in the river.

(e) में (पोशाक में)

He was in uniform.
She was in sari.
She was clothed in rags.
Did you see the woman in white?
She is all in green.

(f) में (दिशा का भाव)

The sun rises in the east.

(g) में (पेशा, व्यापार, कार्य-कलाप का भाव)

He is in the army.
He has been in politics all his life.

(h) Some other uses of 'In' :

This novel is in three parts.
Can you speak in English ?
The letter was written in ink.
She was lying in bed.

19. Into : motion towards the interior of something

(a) में (बाहर से भीतर की ओर जाने का भाव)

He came into my room.
She dived into the swimming-pool.

(b) में (एक वस्तु से दूसरी में बदलने का भाव)

Heat turns water into vapour.

(c) में (स्थिति में परिवर्तन का भाव)

She came into power in 1970.

20. Of :

(a) का/की/के (संबंध/अधिकार का बोध)

Ram was the son of Dasratha.
I don't live in the house of my father.

(b) माप/तौल का बोध

Please give me a cup of tea.
He bought a kilo of sugar/rice.
He demanded a bag of coins.
A loaf of bread will do.

(c) का/की/के (material का बोध)

This chair is made of wood/iron/steel.
This pot is made of glass.
This statue was made of marble/stone.

(d) का/की/के (अंश/मात्रा/ portion का बोध)

He is a member of the team.
Don't tear the page of that book.

(e) के कारण [कारण (cause) का भाव)]

He died of cholera.
He is ashamed of his behaviour.
What did he die of ?

(f) origin / source (श्रोत) का बोध

Of what family is he sprung ?
She is a woman of royal decent.

(g) के बारे में/के संबंध में

You must have heard of Gandhiji.
I know nothing of him.
He told us of his travels.

(h) का/की/के (quality का बोध)

He is a man of strong will.
She was a woman of cheap taste.
I saw a child of strange appearance.

(i) Some other uses of 'Of' :

It was kind of you to help me.
His chance of winning is very high.
Do you have a dictionary of English ?
The hotel is within 100 yards of the station.
He was robbed of everything he had.
It was the thirty-first of December.

21. Off : separation at a near distance

(a) से (स्थान से अलग होने का भाव)

He fell off the horse.
He jumped off the table.
The ball rolled off the table.
Keep off the grass.

(b) कुछ दूरी पर होने का भाव

There is a big house off the high street.

Note : On/Off का प्रयोग Adverb के समान भी होता है और तब इसके अर्थ में परिवर्तन होता है, जैसे :—

Put off the radio — रेडियो बंद करो।
Put on the radio — रेडियो चालू करो।

22. On : rest on the upper surface of a thing

(a) पर (वस्तु या व्यक्ति से सटा हुआ—स्थान का भाव)

They are sitting on the grass.
There are glasses on the table.
He hit me on the head.
Leaves are floating on the water.
He is writing on paper.

(b) को (समय का भाव)

I am free on Sundays.
He will come here on Monday.
My father is sure to come on my birthday.
She will reach on time. (समय पर)

Note : on time का अर्थ है—बिल्कुल ठीक समय पर, न पहले न बाद में; in time का अर्थ है—समय से कुछ पहले, अर्थात् देर से नहीं।

(c) के विषय में/के संबंध में (about/concerning)

I am writing on Shakespeare.
Can you write an essay on "Friendship" ?
He spoke for an hour on that subject.
He is writing a book on economics.

(d) सदस्य होने का भाव

He is on the committee/staff/jury.
Which side are you on ?

(e) कार्य व्यापार/स्थिति का भाव

He is on tour/business/holiday.

(f) के बिल्कुल नजदीक (close to a place or time)

There was no house on the main road.
There was a town on the coast.

(g) Some other uses of 'On' :

Have you got any money on you ?	(possession)
The cow lives on grass.	(dependence)
Most cars run on petrol.	(dependence)
They made an attack on my house.	(direction)
He was appointed on these terms.	(conditions)
It is easy to speak on the telephone.	(means)

23. Out of : motion from the interior of a thing

(a) स्थान का भाव

He is out of this town.
He jumped out of bed.

(b) श्रोत (source) का भाव

I paid it out of my own pocket.
The hut was made out of pieces of wood.

(c) प्रयोजन/कारण (motive/cause) का भाव

He said that out of ill temper.
She helped me out of pity/generosity.
I asked him out of curiosity.

(d) अनेक में से (from among)

Choose one out of the seven.

(e) Some other uses of 'Out of' :

He is not out of danger.
These books are out of order.
He is out of his mind.

24. Over : above or beyond anything

(a) के ऊपर (सटा हुआ/छुता हुआ)

Spread a cloth over the table.
He put his hand over her mouth to stop her screaming.

(b) के ऊपर (सटा या छुता हुआ नहीं)

There was an umbrella over her head.
The sky was a clear blue over our heads.

(c) के ऊपर (एक छोर से दूसरी छोर तक)

There was a bridge over the river.
The child could run over the grass.

(d) के उस पार

He lives over the road/bridge.
It is difficult to go over the mountain.

(e) से अधिक (more than)

He is over sixty.
The river is over sixty miles long.

I stayed there over a year.

(f) प्रत्येक जगह होने का भाव

Gandhijee is remembered all over the world.
It is raining all over the country.

(g) Some other uses of 'Over' :

I heard it over the radio.
She has no control over her emotions.
He ruled over a great empire.

25. Since : from some point of past time

से (समय का भाव—point of time के लिए)

He has been absent since morning/Sunday/January.

26. Through : across the interior of anything

(a) से होकर (एक छोर से दूसरी छोर तक)

The River Thames flows through London.
There is no way through the forest.

(b) शुरू से अंत तक (from the beginning to the end of something)

I have gone through the book.
She nursed me through my long illness.

(c) से/के द्वारा (means, साधन)

I knew it through a newspaper.
It was through you that I came to know it.
She is looking through glass.

(d) के कारण (cause/motive/reason)

The vase was broken through carelessness.
He died through neglect.
All this was done through envy.
Through your help I may succeed.

27. To : motion towards anything

(a) की ओर (indicating direction)

He is going to school.
The egg fell to the ground.
Please turn to the left.

(b) से....... तक (स्थान/समय का भाव)

from door to door
from morning to evening

(c) के लिए—उद्देश्य (purpose/intention)

He came to see us.
He came to our help.

(d) सीमा (limit)

They fought to the last man.

(e) स्थान (place)

He has come to me/my house.

(f) बाकी (समय का भाव)

It is six to ten.
It is a quarter to eight.

(g) belonging to somebody/something

This is a key to the door.

(h) comparison/ratio/proportion का भाव

I prefer reading to writing.
He is junior to me.
We won by five goals to four.
The chances are three to one.

(i) Some other uses of 'To' :

There are mountains to the north of India.
He rose to power.
He tore the letters to pieces.
The garden extends to the river bank.
I am devoted to my love.
She must be 20 to 25 years of age.
He gave the bread to me.

28. Towards :

(a) की ओर (nearness of approach)

He is coming towards the house.
The child came running towards me.

(b) के नजदीक/के लगभग (nearness of time)

It is now towards evening.

(c) के प्रति (in relation to—behaviour)

He was very kind towards beggars.
He behaved very affectionately towards my children.
She is very friendly towards her juniors.

(f) प्रत्येक जगह होने का भाव

Gandhijee is remembered all over the world.
It is raining all over the country.

(g) Some other uses of 'Over' :

I heard it over the radio.
She has no control over her emotions.
He ruled over a great empire.

25. Since : from some point of past time

से (समय का भाव—point of time के लिए)

He has been absent since morning/Sunday/January.

26. Through : across the interior of anything

(a) से होकर (एक छोर से दूसरी छोर तक)

The River Thames flows through London.
There is no way through the forest.

(b) शुरू से अंत तक (from the beginning to the end of something)

I have gone through the book.
She nursed me through my long illness.

(c) से/के द्वारा (means, साधन)

I knew it through a newspaper.
It was through you that I came to know it.
She is looking through glass.

(d) के कारण (cause/motive/reason)

The vase was broken through carelessness.
He died through neglect.
All this was done through envy.
Through your help I may succeed.

27. To : motion towards anything

(a) की ओर (indicating direction)

He is going to school.
The egg fell to the ground.
Please turn to the left.

(b) से....... तक (स्थान/समय का भाव)

from door to door
from morning to evening

(c) के लिए—उद्देश्य (purpose/intention)

He came to see us.
He came to our help.

(d) सीमा (limit)

They fought to the last man.

(e) स्थान (place)

He has come to me/my house.

(f) बाकी (समय का भाव)

It is six to ten.
It is a quarter to eight.

(g) belonging to somebody/something

This is a key to the door.

(h) comparison/ratio/proportion का भाव

I prefer reading to writing.
He is junior to me.
We won by five goals to four.
The chances are three to one.

(i) Some other uses of 'To' :

There are mountains to the north of India.
He rose to power.
He tore the letters to pieces.
The garden extends to the river bank.
I am devoted to my love.
She must be 20 to 25 years of age.
He gave the bread to me.

28. Towards :

(a) की ओर (nearness of approach)

He is coming towards the house.
The child came running towards me.

(b) के नजदीक/के लगभग (nearness of time)

It is now towards evening.

(c) के प्रति (in relation to—behaviour)

He was very kind towards beggars.
He behaved very affectionately towards my children.
She is very friendly towards her juniors.

(d) के लिए (in aid of)

You will have to give Rs. 100/- towards the Poor Boys' Fund.

29. Under : rest or motion in a lower place

(a) के नीचे (स्थान का बोध)

The cat was under the table.
The water flows under the bridge.
The poor fellow had to shelter under the tree.
What is under the bed ?

(b) से कम (less than/younger than)

Applicants should not be less than twenty.
Many children under 5 go to nursery schools.
If you are under 18 you cannot join the job.

(c) के पद के नीचे (lower in rank than somebody)

I have a staff of 20 working under me.
No one under the rank of captain may enter the room.

(d) के अधीन (governed or led by somebody)

Under his captainship the team is running well.
This institute works under a committee.

(e) दशा/अवस्था का बोध—being in a state of something

His case is under consideration.
These buildings are under construction.

(f) Some other uses of 'Under' :

One should not open a bank account under a false name.
He is very much under the influence of his neighbours.
He is struggling under the burden of his family.

30. With :

(a) के साथ/एक साथ/साथ-साथ (union of some kind)

He arrived with all his luggage.
He was playing with his friends.
The man with his little son was walking towards the coast.
It is easy to sail with the wind.
I can't do with you.
He does not have time to spend with his children.

(b) वाला/वाली (गुण का बोध), वाला/वाली/ के साथ (गुण का बोध)

She was a girl with red hair.
He is a man with long beards.
I want a house with a swimming-pool.

(c) के साथ (carrying something)

Did you see the boy with a camera ?
He was a hunter with a gun.

(d) से/के द्वारा (साधन—instrument/material का बोध)

He cut the apple with a knife.
He is writing with a pencil.
He killed the bird with a stone.
It is easy to translate with a dictionary.
Feed the baby with a spoon.
Fill the bowl with water.

(e) से/के कारण (कारण का बोध)

I was sick with fever.
They were dancing with joy.
He is trembling with fear.
Her fingers were numb with cold.
His face was red with anger.

(f) से (कार्य करने के तरीके का बोध)

I will do it with pleasure.
He looked upon them with anger.
He heard me with patience.

(g) सहमति का भाव

I am always with you.
I can't accord with the management.

(h) विरोध का भाव

He quarrelled with me.
One king fought with another.

(i) seperation का भाव

I parted with my friend yesterday.
I could never part with this ring.

(j) के बावजूद (in spite of)

With all his wealth he is in debt.
With all her faults he liked her.

(k) indicating point of reference

He is not popular with his pupils.

(l) Some other uses of 'With' :

Skill comes with experience.
Good wine will improve with age.
My father is pleased with my result.
What should I do with you ?

31. Within : inside the limits of anything

(a) के अंदर (स्थान/समय का बोध)

He will come within an hour/a month.
Her house is within a mile of the station.

(b) limit/range/capacity/के अंदर

This is not within my power.
She finds it hard to live within her income.

32. Without : on the outside of anything

(a) के बिना

One cannot live without food.
He came without any money.
I had three nights without sleep.
I can't do without her.
She can't see to read without glasses.
This is a river without water.

Some special notes on the use of Prepositions :

1. At & In : जहाँ At का सम्बन्ध small extent of space/time से है वहीं In का संबंध wider extent of space/time से है, जैसे :—

He lives at Salempur.
He lives in Patna/Bihar/India.
I will start at seven o'clock in the morning.

2. In & Into : जहाँ In किसी भी चीज के भीतर स्थिरता या विश्राम को सूचित करता है वहीं Into बाहर से भीतर आने की गति को सूचित करता है, जैसे :—

The frog is in the well. (विश्राम)
The frog fell into the well. (गति)

3. With & By : किसी कार्य को सम्पादित करने के लिए जहाँ कोई प्रयुक्त उपकरणों (tools) या भौतिक वस्तुओं (material instruments) के

पहले With का प्रयोग किया जाता है वहीं agent or doer (जो प्राय: मनुष्य या भाववाचक संज्ञा रहता है) के पहले By का प्रयोग किया जाता है, जैसे—

He was beaten with a stick.
He was beaten by his teacher.
The letter was written by him with a pen.

4. After & In : किसी period of time के बाद किसी कार्य व्यापार के सम्पन्न होने का बोध कराने के लिए जहाँ Past Tense में After का प्रयोग होता है वहीं Future Tense में In का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे—

He will come in a week. (एक सप्ताह के बाद)

He came after a week. (एक सप्ताह के बाद)

परन्तु point of time रहने पर Future Tense के साथ भी After का प्रयोग होता है, In का नहीं, जैसे—

He will come after 7 p.m./sunset.

Note : Future Tense में 'पहले' का बोध कराने के लिए Within का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है—

He will come within a week. (एक सप्ताह के पहले)

5. Since & From : Since का प्रयोग Future Tense के साथ नहीं होता है, इसके बदले From का प्रयोग होता है, जैसे :—

I shall have been doing this from January.

I shall be absent from Monday.

6. (a) जब Intransitive Verb के साथ कोई Noun/Pronoun आता है तब Verb तथा Noun/Pronoun के बीच में Preposition अवश्य आता है, जैसे :—

He is going to Patna.

I depend on him.

(b) जब Transitive Verb के साथ कोई Noun/Pronoun आता है तब Verb तथा Noun/Pronoun के बीच में Preposition नहीं आता है, जैसे :—

She loves me.

I know him very well.

He reads a book.

The child is drinking milk.

The poet describes Nature.

We should obey our elders.

7. कुछ ऐसे Verbs तथा Adjectives हैं जिनके बाद Infinitive (to + verb) कभी भी नहीं आता। वैसी अवस्था में उनके बाद Preposition + V-ing आता है, जैसे :—

He prevented me from doing it.
I think of going abroad.
He succeeded in passing the examination.
I am desirous of going.
He is hopeful of passing.
He is disqualified from competing.
I am tired of working.
He assisted in doing this.
You are right in holding that opinion.
He is fearful of going out to sea.

आप ऐसे Verbs/Adjectives तथा उनके बाद आने वाले उपयुक्त Prepositions को हमेशा ध्यान में रखें। ऐसे कुछ प्रमुख शब्दों की सूची—

abstain from
addicted to
aim at
assist in
averse to
bent upon
confident of
desirous of
disqualified from
excel in
excuse for
fortunate in
fond of
hopeful of
insist on
passion for
persist in
prevent from
prohibit from
proud of
refrain from
repent of
succeed in
successful in
think of
tired of
stop from

Words followed by Appropriate Prepositions

Verbs followed by Prepositions

Abide by a promise
Abide with a person
Abound in/with fish
Absolve of/from a charge
Abstain from wine
Accord with something
Accord something to somebody
Account for a fact
Accuse of some misdeed
Acquit of blame
Adapt (oneself) to circumstances
Admit of an excuse
Admit to/into a secret
Agree to a proposal
Agree with a person
Aim at an object
Alight from a carriage
Alight on the ground
Allot to a person
Answer to a person
Answer for something
Apologise to a person
Apologise for conduct
Appeal to a person
Appeal for redress or help
Appeal against a sentence
Apply to a person for a thing
Appoint to a post

Approve of an action
Argue with a person for/against a point
Arrive at a place
Arrive in a country
Ask for a thing
Ask of a person
Assent to your terms
Assure a person of a fact
Attend to business
Attend on a person
Avail oneself of an opportunity
Avenge oneself on a person
Bark at a person or thing
Bear with a man's impatience
Become of you
Beg pardon of a person
Beg a person to do a thing
Beg for something
Believe in a person or creed
Belong to a person
Beware of dogs
Blame a person for something
Boast of one's cleverness
Borrow from a person
Break into a house—thieves
Break ill news to a person
Bring a thing to light
Burst into flame
Call on a person (visit him at his house)
Call to (shout to) a person
Care for a person
Challenge a man to combat
Charge a man with a crime
Clear a man of crime
Cling to a person or thing
Come across (accidently meet) anyone
Comment on a matter
Communicate a thing to a person
Communicate with a person on a subject
Compare with (for similar things)
Compare to (for dissimilar things)
Compensate a person for his loss
Compete with a person for a prize
Complain against a person
Complain to a person
Comply with one's wishes
Conceal facts from anyone
Condemn a person to death
Condemn a person for murder
Condole with a person
Confess to a fault
Confer a thing on anyone
Confer with a person about anything
Conform to a rule
Conform with one's views
Congratulate a man on his success
Consent to some proposal
Consist of materials
Convict a person of a crime
Convince a person of a fact
Cope with a person
Correspond with a person (write)
Correspond to something (agree)
Crave for happiness
Cure a man of a disease
Cut a thing in or to pieces
Deal in rice
Deal with a person
Debar from doing anything
Decide on something
Decide against something
Declare for something
Declare against something
Defend a person from harm
Defer to a man's wishes
Delight in music
Depend on a person or thing
Deprive a person of a thing
Deviate from a certain course
Die of a disease
Die from some cause

Differ with a person on a subject
Disagree with a person
Disapprove of anything
Dispense with a man's services
Dissent from an opinion
Dissuade from an action
Distinguish one thing from another
Distinguish between two things
Divert a person from a purpose
Divide in half/into four parts
Dream of strange things
Drive at some point
Eat into iron
Entrust anyone with a thing
Entrust a thing to anyone
Escape from jail
Exchange one thing from another
Exempt a person from a rule
Explain to a person
Fail in an attempt
Fall among thieves
Fall in love with a person
Fall on the enemy (attack)
Feed on grass
Feed a cow with grass
Fight for the weak against the strong
Fight with or against a person
Flirt with a person
Furnish a person with a thing
Furnish a thing to a person
Glance at an object
Glance over a letter
Guard against a bad habit
Guess at something
Hear of an event
Hanker after riches
Happen to a person
Hide a thing from a person
Hinder one from doing something
Hint at an intention
Hope for something
Hunt after/for anything
Impart a thing to a person
Impose on a person
Incite a person to some action
Increase in wisdom
Indulge in wine
Indulge oneself with wine
Inform a person of a thing
Inform against a person
Inquire into a matter
Inquire of a person about something
Insist on doing something
Inspire a man with courage
Intersect with each other
Introduce a man to someone
Invest money in some project
Invite a man to dinner
Judge a person by his deeds
Jump to a conclusion
Knock at a door
Know of a person
Lament for the dead
Laugh at a person or thing
Lean against a wall
Lean on a staff
Lean to a certain opinion
Listen to sb/sth
Live for riches or fame
Live by honest labour
Live on a small income
Live without one's means
Long for/after anything
Look after some business
Look at a person or thing
Look into (closely examine) a matter
Look for something lost
Look through (examine carefully) an account
Look out of a place
Lust for riches
Make some meaning of a thing
Marry one person to another

Match one thing with another
Meddle with other men's business
Mourn for the dead
Object to some proposal
Part with a person or thing
Pay (suffer) for one's folly
Persist in doing something
Play upon a musical instrument
Play tricks with a person
Plot against a man
Plung into a river
Ponder on/over a subject
Pounce on a thing
Prefer onething to another
Preside at a meeting
Preside over a meeting
Prevent from doing something
Pride oneself on a thing
Prohibit from doing something
Protect from harm
Provide against the evil day
Provide oneself with something
Provoke a man to anger
Quarrel with someone over/about something
Rebel against authority
Recover from an illness
Refer to a matter
Refrain from doing wrong
Rejoice at the success of another
Rejoice in one's own success
Relate to a matter
Revenge oneself on someone for some injury
Revolt against a government
Rob a person of something
Rule over a country
Run after a person or thing
Run at a cat
Run into debt
Search for something lost
Search into (carefully examine) a matter
Seek after/for happiness
Send for a person or a thing
Set about (begin working at) a business
Set on/upon (attack) a traveller
Share in another's troubles
Shelter from rain
Shoot at a target
Smell of fish
Speak of a subject (briefly)
Speak on a subject (at greater length)
Speak to a friend
Stand against (resist) an enemy
Stand by (support) a friend
Stand to (maintain) one's opinion
Stare at a person
Stare a person in the face
Start for Calcutta
Stick to the point
Strike at (aim a blow at) a dog
Strike for higher pay
Strip a person of his cloth/ property
Struggle for the right
Struggle against a wrong
Submit to an authority
Suffer from a disease
Succeed to a property
Succeed in an undertaking
Sue for peace
Supply a thing to a person
Supply a person with a thing
Surrender to the enemy
Sweep the dirt off the floor
Sympathise with a person in his troubles
Take after (resemble) his father
Take a person for a spy
Take to gambling
Talk of / about an event
Talk to a person
Taste of salt

Tell of / about an event
Think of / about anything
Think over (consider) a matter
Throw a stone at anyone
Trade with a country in oranges
Tremble at a lion with fear
Triffle with a man's feeling
Trust in a person
Trust to a man's honesty
Trust a man with money
Turn verse into prose
Vote for anything
Vote against a thing
Wait at table
Wait for a person or thing
Wait on (attend) a person
Warn a person of danger
Warn a person against a fault
Wish for anything
Withdraw from a contest
Yearn for affection
Yield to clamour

Nouns followed by Prepositions

Ability for/in some work
Abundance of food
Access to a person or place
Accession to the throne
(In) accordance with rule
Accusation of theft
Acquaintance with a person or a thing
Admission to a society of persons
Admission into a place
Affection for a person
Allusion to something
Ambition for distinction
Amends for some fault
Anxiety for anyone's safety
Apology for some fault
Appetite for food
Apprehension of danger
Aptitude for mathematics
Arrival at a place
Arrival in a country
Assault on a person or thing
Assent to an opinion
Assurance of help
Attack on a place
Attention to study
Attraction to or towards a thing
Authority over a person
Authority on a subject
Authority for saying or doing
Bar to success
Bargain with a person
Bargain for a thing
Battle with anyone
Blindness to one's own faults
Candidate for election
Care for his safety
Care of his books
Cause for anxiety
Cause of trouble
Caution against error
Certainty about a matter
Certificate of good conduct
Claim to something
Claim on or against someone
Comment on something said
Comparison with a person or thing
Compassion for a person
Competition with a person
Competition for a thing
Complaint against a person
Complaint about a thing
Connection with a person or thing
Consciousness of guilt
Contact with something
Control over a person or thing
Conversation with a person
Conviction of guilt
Craving for anything

Correspondence with a person
Decision on some case
Decision of some dispute
Degradation from rank
Delight in a person or thing
Desire for wealth
Deviation from rule
Disagreement with a person
Discouragement to a person
Disgrace to a person
Disgust at meanness
Doubt of or about a thing
Drawback to success
Duty to person
Enmity with a person
Envy at another's success
Escape from punishment
Exception to a rule
Excuse for a fault
Exemption from a penalty
Experience of a thing
Experience in doing something
Exposure to danger
Faith in a person or thing
Familiarity with a person or thing
Fine for an offence
Fondness for anything
Freedom from care
Freedom of an action
Glance at a person or thing
Glance over a wide surface
Gratitude for a thing
Gratitude to a person
Guess at the truth
Harmony with anything
Hatred of a thing or person
Heir to some property
Heir of some person
Hindrance to anything
Hint at some reward
Hope of or for better luck
Identity with a person or thing
Incentive to industry
Inclination to or for study
Indifference to heat or cold
Influence over a person
Influence on a man's action
Inquiry into circumstances
Insight into a man's character
Intercourse with a person
Interest in a subject
Interest with a person
Interference with a man's affairs
Interview with a person
Intimacy with a person
Judge of a matter
Justification of or for crime
Key to a problem
Lecture on a subject
Liking for a person or thing
Limit to a man's zeal
Longing for or after a thing
Lust for money
Match for a person
Motive for health
Need for assistance
(In) need of assistance
Neglect of duty
Objection to a proposal
Obligation to a person
Offence against morality
Opportunity for action
Opposition to a person
Order for or against doing a thing
Partnership in a thing
Partnership with a person
Precaution against infection
Preface to a book
Pride in strength
Proficiency in mathematics
Progress in study
Prejudice against a person
Protest against a decision
Ratio of one to six
Reference to a person to thing
Regret for something done

Relation of one thing to another
Relation between two things
Remedy for or against snake-bite
Repentance for sin
Reply to a letter
Request for a thing
Resemblance to a person or thing
Resistance to injustice
Respect for a man or his office
Revolt against authority
Rival in anything
Search for or after wealth
(In) search of wealth
Share with a person
Sin against God
Submission to authority
Succession to an estate
Supplement to a book
Sympathy with or for the poor
Temptation to evil
Traitor to his country
Trust in honesty
Victory over his passion
Want of money
Witness of or to an event
Wonder at his rudeness
Zeal for a cause
Zest for enjoyment

Adjectives & Participles followed by Prepositions

Absent from class
Abounding in or with fish
Absolved of a charge
Absorbed in study
Acceptable to a person
Accomplished in an art
Accountable to a person
Accountable for a thing
Accurate in his statistics
Accused of a crime
Accustomed to riding/work
Acquainted with a person or thing
Acquitted of a charge
Addicted to gambling/wine
Adjacent to a place
Adverse to his interests
Affectionate to a person
Afraid of death
Agreeable to his wishes
Akin to a person or thing
Alarmed at a noise
Alien to his character
Alive to a situation
Amazed at anything
Ambitious of distinction
Angry at a thing
Angry with a person
Annoyed at a thing
Annoyed with a person
Answerable to a person for his conduct
Anxious for his safety
Anxious about the result
Apparent to anyone
Applicable to a case
Apprehensive of danger
Appropriate to an occasion
Ashamed of something/ somebody /myself
Associated in some business
Assured of the truth
Astonished at his rudeness
Astonishing to a person
Aware of his intentions
Based on facts
Bent on doing something
Blessed with a child/good health
Blind to his own faults
Blind of the eye
Born of rich parents
Born in England
Capable of improvement
Careful of his money
Careful about his dress

Certain of success
Clear of blame
Close to a person or thing
Clothed in red
Clothed with shame
Common to several persons or things
Competent for certain work
Composed of materials
Condemned to death
Conducive to success
Confident of success
Conscious of a fault
Confined to a house
Contrary to rule
Convicted of a crime
Cured of disease
Deaf to entreaties
Deficient in energy
Delighted with success
Dependent on a person or thing
Deprived of some good things
Disappointed of a thing not obtained
Disappointed in a thing obtained
Disappointed with a person
Disgusted with a thing
Displeased with a person
Disqualified for a post
Disqualified from competing
Distinct from something else
Doubtful of success
Due to some cause
Dull of understanding
Eager for distinction
Eager in the pursuit of knowledge
Easy of access
Effective for a purpose
Eligible for employment
Eminent for his learning
Employed in gardening
Empty of its contents
Enraged at something done

Entitled to hearing
Envious of another's success
Exempted from a fine
Exhausted with labour
Exposed to danger
Faithful to a master
False of heart
False to his friends
Familiar with a language
Familiar (well known) to a person
Famous for his learning
Fascinated with a person or thing
Fatigued with travelling
Fearful of consequences
Fertile in resources
Fit for a position
Fond of music
Free from blame
Full of persons or things
Gifted with abilities
Glad of the news
Good for nothing
Good at cricket
Guilty of theft
Healed of a disease
Held in high esteem
Honest in his dealings
Hopeful of success
Horrified at the sight
Hostile to an idea
Hungry after wealth
Hurtful to health
Ignorant of Latin
Ill with fever
Inclined to laziness
Inclusive of extras
Indebted to a person
Indebted for some kindness
Indebted in a large sum
Indifferent to heat or cold
Infected with smallpox
Infested with rats

Innocent of a charge
Insensible to shame
Inspired with hope
Interested in a person or thing
Intimate with a person
Introduced to a person
Introduced into a place
Involved in difficulties
Irrelevant to the question
Irrespective of consequences
Jealous of one's reputation
Just to everyone
Lame of one leg
Level with the ground
Liable to error
Liable for payment
Limited to a certain area
Loyal to the government
Made for someone
Made of iron
Moved to tears
Moved with pity
Moved at the sight
Moved by entreaties
Natural to a person
Negligent of duty
Negligent in his work
Notorious for his misdeeds
Obedient to parents
Obliged to a person
Obliged for some kindness
Obstinate in his resistance
Offended with a person
Offended at something done
Opposite to a place
Overcome with sorrow
Overwhelmed with grief
Painful to one's feelings
Parellel to or with anything
Peculiar to a person or thing
Polite in manner
Polite to strangers
Poor in spirit
Popular with schoolfellows
Possessed of wealth
Possessed with a notion
Precious to a person
Proficient in mathematics
Profitable to an investor
Proud of one's work/position
Qualified for teaching physics
Quarrelsome with everyone
Quick of understanding
Quick at mathematics
Reckless of expenditure
Reduced to poverty
Regardless of consequences
Related to a person
Relevant to the point
Repentant of his sin
Respectful to one's superiors
Responsible to a person
Responsible for his actions
Revenge on a person for doing something.
Rid of trouble
Satisfied with one's work
Sensitive to blame
Shocked at your behaviour
Shocking to everyone
Short of money
Sick of waiting
Silent about a subject
Similar to a person or thing
Simultaneous with an event
Skillful in doing a thing
Slow of hearing
Slow in making up his mind
Slow at accounts
Sorry for your sufferings
Stained with blood
Startled at a sight
Strange to a person
Subject to authority
Subsequent to another event
Subordinate to a person

Sufficient for a purpose
Suitable to the occasion
Suitable for his income
Suited to the occasion
Suited for the post
Sure of success
Sympathetic with sufferers
Synonymous with another word
Thankful for past favours
Tired of doing something
Tired with his exertions
True to one's words
Unfit for the job
Unjust to a person
Uneasy about consequences
Useful for certain purpose
Versed in mathematics
Vested in a person
Vexed with a person for doing something
Vexed at a thing
Wanting in common sense
Weak of understanding
Weak in his head
Weary of doing nothing
Welcome to my house
Worthy of praise

Misuse of Prepositions

(a) कभी-कभी आप उस स्थान पर भी Preposition प्रयुक्त कर देते हैं जहाँ Preposition की कोई आवश्यकता नहीं है। ऐसा करना गलत है। आप इससे बचें, जैसे—

Wrong	*Correct*
He ordered for my dismissal.	He ordered my dismissal.
The poet describes about Nature.	The poet describes Nature.
He does not obey to my words.	He does not obey my words.
This book resembles to that.	This book resembles that book.
He carefully investigated into the case.	He carefully investigated the case.
I want to assist to you in this matter.	I want to assist you in this matter.
I will inform to your father.	I will inform your father.
You must not violate against the rules.	You must not violate the rules.
Have you signed to that contract ?	Have you signed that contract ?

(b) कभी-कभी आप उस स्थान पर Preposition प्रयुक्त नहीं करते हैं जहाँ इसकी आवश्यकता है। ऐसा करना गलत है। आप ऐसे स्थान पर उपयुक्त Preposition दें, जैसे—

Wrong	*Correct*
You must apply the judge for pardon.	You must apply to the judge for pardon.
You should not boast your merits.	You should not boast of your merits.
No one can depend his word.	No one can depend on his word.

(c) हमेशा उपयुक्त Prepositions ही प्रयुक्त करें, जैसे—

Wrong	*Correct*
I am tired with this work.	I am tired of this work.
He was angry upon me.	He was angry with me.
He complained upon me.	He complained against me.
Gandhijee was dear for all.	Gandhijee was dear to all.

Note : आप इस chapter का अच्छी तरह अध्ययन कर चुके हैं। अब कुछ exercises दिए जा रहे हैं। इन्हें solve करने से पहले आप Phrasal Verbs का अच्छी तरह अध्ययन कर लें। इनके बिना आपका काम नहीं चल सकता।

Insert appropriate Prepositions :—

EXERCISE 95

1. The book was......the table.
2. You should give .... smoking.
3. I am proud .... my son.
4. He was annoyed .... me.
5. The teacher was angry .... us.
6. He was found guilty .... theft.
7. I am not satisfied .... your work.
8. I agree .... you on that point.
9. You should take care .... your health.
10. I shall go .... Patna tomorrow.
11. We shall travel .... train.
12. He felt pity .... the poor.
13. He jumped .... the river.
14. I must consult .... you.
15. Beware .... dogs.
16. Don't quarrel...... anybody.
17. I have been waiting here .... a long time.
18. Some robbers broke .... my house.
19. He deals .... stationary.
20. The trader deals .... rice.
21. This book belongs .... me.
22. There is no one to look .... the poor boy.
23. We walked .... miles.
24. Divide the money .... labourers.
25. He shot this bird .... a gun.
26. You should not laugh .... him.
27. I am senior .... you.
28. He cannot give .... his habits.
29. Please send .... a doctor.

30. Sohan deals .... rice and other grains.
31. She was not pleased .... her husband.
32. Come and sit .... me.
33. He died .... cholera.
34. Nobody was acquainted .... her.
35. The ball fell .... the well.
36. I prefer milk .... tea.
37. He was charmed .... flowers.
38. I have to select one .... them.
39. Don't go out .... the rain.
40. She has no taste ...... music.

EXERCISE 96

1. What is .... the box ?
2. The house was .... fire.
3. He came .... Calcutta yesterday.
4. He is .... the top of his class.
5. He was down .... fever.
6. He has been accused .... stealing.
7. I was here .... time.
8. He has not replied ...... my letter.
9. He comes.........a noble family.
10. She is good ...... English.
11. I am senior ...... you.
12. I have no faith ...... his promises.
13. What are you looking ...... ?
14. The lady objected ...... the statement.
15. He is suffering ...... fever.
16. The watch was sold ...... five hundred rupees.
17. He is driving the car ...... a fast speed.
18. I congratulated him ...... his success.
19. He was robbed.........his wealth.
20. The glass fell......the ground.
21. That is no news ...... you.
22. He cried ...... the top of his voice.
23. The miscreants set the house ...... fire.
24. He is anxious ...... his safety.
25. I am devoted ...... my country.
26. She is the apple ...... my eye.
27. She is not capable ...... hard work.
28. Don't throw stones ...... the mad man.
29. He has been beaten ...... his father ...... a stick.
30. It will be finished ...... the end of this month.
31. Is it an answer .... the question ?
32. He shot ...... the tiger.
33. Please call ...... a doctor at once.
34. My mother stays ...... home.
35. I have not seen her ...... a week.
36. The poor had to go ...... food.
37. The streets are lighted ...... electricity.
38. I was born ...... 1964.
39. Tell me ...... the accident.
40. The plane was flying ...... the clouds.

EXERCISE 97

1. Rice sells ...... Rs. 10/- a kilo.
2. Children are ...... play.
3. He preferred death ...... dishonour.
4. He inquired ...... the case.
5. Can you swim ... the river ?
6. Hamlet was written ...... Shakespeare.
7. He was wandering ...... the town.
8. He prevented me ...... doing this work.
9. May God bless you ...... a son !
10. He fired shot ...... shot.
11. He was accused ...... theft.
12. Congratulations ...... your success.
13. Aim ...... doing your duty.
14. He is sick ...... fever.
15. The train started ...... time.
16. I go to school ...... a bicycle.
17. Don't cry ...... spilt milk.
18. He is married ...... daughter of a rich man.
19. He came ...... train.
20. The train is running ...... sixty kilo metres an hour.
21. He stood ...... the judge.
22. They are ...... work.
23. He complained ...... the offender.
24. He is innocent...... the crime.
25. I came ...... his request.
26. He went to the temple ...... foot.
27. I was waiting.........the postman.
28. He is ...... suspicion.
29. You should be ashamed ...... your conduct.
30. There is an injection ...... cholera.
31. The lights were turned ......
32. ...... what price is this sold ?
33. Divide this mango ...... four parts.
34. He aimed his gun ...... the tiger.
35. What are you talking ...... ?
36. I have great respect ...... my teacher.
37. The problem is anything ...... easy.
38. Always stick ...... your principles.
39. You may ask a favour ...... me.
40. What is the time ...... your watch ?

EXERCISE 98

1. He is jealous ...... me.
2. This is a secret ......you and me.
3. The drug had no effect ...... me.
4. I have been away.........a week.
5. This is the poet I was referring ......
6. He is careless ...... his dress.
7. They passed ...... a dense forest.
8. May I pay ...... cheque ?
9. I competed ...... the prize.
10. There are some exceptions ...... the rule.
11. He died ...... the loss of blood.
12. You always worry me ...... foolish questions.

13. I cannot cut it ...... this knife.
14. I met him ...... chance.
15. I am anxious ...... the result.
16. He is ...... debt.
17. He did not turn ...... today.
18. He will inquire ...... this matter.
19. He is blind......his own faults.
20. I am confident ...... winning.
21. He seized me ...... the neck.
22. I was invited ...... dinner.
23. Do you have faith ...... me ?
24. I differ ...... you.
25. I am devoted ...... my love.
26. She has thirst...knowledge.
27. He sat ...... his father and mother.
28. Wait ...... tomorrow.
29. Did you see the woman ...... white ?
30. He was disqualified ...... the post.
31. I am content...... what I have.
32. He gave me this book free ...... cost.
33. The ball went...the window.
34. What are you talking ...... ?
35. I am an Indian ...... birth.
36. He is bent ...... mischief.
37. He is always short...... money.
38. She has no compassion ...... me.
39. She danced ...... joy.
40. ...... all his wealth he is not happy.

EXERCISE 99

1. He was blind ...... birth.
2. Heat turns water...... vapour.
3. He threw himself ...... the river.
4. The cow lives ...... grass.
5. I have liking ...... fish.
6. The letter was written ...... ink.
7. It was kind ...... you.
8. What are you looking ...... ?
9. He assisted ...... doing this.
10. We make curd ...... milk.
11. Her face was red ...... anger.
12. He will bleed ...... death.
13. What is that ...... me ?
14. I dreamt...... home last night.
15. Have you got any money ...... you ?
16. You should not boast ...... your merits.
17. He stood ...... me.
18. He is ...... tour.
19. The examination commences ...... the 12th of May.
20. He went ...... a walk.
21. He was hard ...... work all the morning.
22. He took ...... his coat.
23. I swear ...... Almighty God.
24. He died ...... the burn injury.
25. You must listen ...... the Headmaster ...... all your attention.
26. He was deaf...... my request.
27. He is ...... the committee.
28. The man fell ...... the ladder.
29. We should aim ...... excellence.
30. He fell ...... the horse.
31. He is desirous ...... going.
32. They were dancing ...... joy.
33. He complained ...... me.
34. You should be ashamed ...... your conduct.

35. He has no house to live ......
36. She has no interest ...... mathematics.
37. He could not comply ...... my request.
38. He is writing ...... paper.
39. Don't translate word ...... word.
40. The child was gifted ...... abilities.

EXERCISE 100

1. What are you afraid ...... ?
2. This work is ...... his capacity.
3. I am writing a book ...... economics.
4. Early rising is beneficial ...... health.
5. He hanged himself ...... a piece of cloth.
6. The meeting broke ...... at 5 p.m.
7. The house was ...... fire.
8. Gandhijee is remembered all ...... the world.
9. She is expected to reach here ...... 8 o'clock.
10. I abstain ...... drinking.
11. They fell ...... the enemy at once.
12. Death does not distinguish ...... rich and poor.
13. We have been waiting here ...... over an hour.
14. I object ...... your sleeping in the day time.
15. He died ...... the loss of blood.
16. He is weak ...... English.
17. I am disgusted ...... my life.
18. I am disgusted ...... the conditions existing in the University.
19. It is easy to translate ...... a dictionary.
20. He was trembling ...... fever.
21. Will you entrust me ...... that letter ?
22. He succeeded ...... passing the examination.
23. Everyone said yes ...... him.
24. He threw a stone ...... me.
25. I can't agree ...... you in this matter.
26. I was brought up ...... Muzaffarpur ...... Bihar.
27. Cut the bread ...... small pieces.
28. We must pay attention ...... our health.
29. He takes ...... his father.
30. Oil does not mix ...... water.
31. I could never part ...... this ring.
32. His poverty is bar ...... success.
33. I have not met him ...... Sunday.
34. He is very sensitive ...... such things.
35. There are exceptions ...... every rule.
36. My application was turned ......
37. I pray ...... God everyday.
38. He went ...... the hill in two hours.
39. He was not aware ...... my intentions.
40. She can't see to read ...... glasses.

EXERCISE 101

1. I am vexed ...... you.
2. He was not attentive ...... studies.
3. The accused was absolved ...... all blame.
4. He carried.........several prizes.
5. He assisted ...... doing this.
6. War between India and Pakistan broke ...... in 1970.
7. He has no interest...... sports.
8. This paper is inferior ...... that.
9. He was accompanied ...... his mother to the cinema.
10. I complained ...... him.
11. This chair is ...... sale.
12. He inquired ...... me.
13. He reminded me ...... our appointment.
14. I rely ...... his help.
15. Who did you give the money ...... ?
16. There is a bridge ...... the railway lines.
17. She seems to take pride ...... her beauty.
18. The mail train is due ...... 3 p.m.
19. He has to beg......door to door.
20. I am sick ...... the whole business.
21. Nobody ...... you knows the truth.
22. This house is infested ...... rats.
23. I am obliged ...... you for this good turn.
24. She has no excuse ...... being late.
25. You are right ...... holding that opinion.
26. My brother has no liking ...... such a thing.
27. Are you sure ...... success ?
28. He is clever ...... translation.
29. We got ...... difficulties.
30. The dog ran ...... the road.
31. I solved the questions ...... an hour.
32. He died ...... the country.
33. What is the time ...... your watch ?
34. He is neglectful......his dress.
35. He rushed ...... the room.
36. He is true ...... his boss.
37. He comes ...... a high family.
38. I shall arrive ...... three o'clock ...... Sunday.
39. They have no relation...me.
40. He will have reached home ...... then.

EXERCISE 102

1. He abstains ...... liquor.
2. The dogs differ ...... each other in colour.
3. I differ ...... you.
4. I prefer this book ...... that.
5. He is ...... debt.
6. I called ...... him at his residence.
7. Is there a train ...... the platform ?
8. People are standing ...... the platform.
9. The enemy submitted himself ...... the king.
10. He excels ...... speaking English.

11. He made objection ...... my proposal.
12. I am fond ...... music.
13. It is best to draw lines ...... a ruler.
14. I shall do it ...... pleasure.
15. Are you confident ...... success.
16. He is married......my cousin.
17. This is different ...... that.
18. Do you agree...the proposal ?
19. Our efforts were crowned ...... success.
20. She has great affection ...... him.
21. I was invited .... the dinner.
22. Lust ...... money is not good.
23. I suffered ...... fever.
24. The river flows ...... the bridge.
25. I am not envious ...... his success.
26. This resembles ...... that.
27. Her dress was made ...... silk.
28. The term begins...July 1st.
29. He gave his assent ...... my proposal.
30. Please open the book ...... page five.
31. The godown is infested ...... rats.
32. Nobody informed me ...... what had happened.
33. The road has been widened ...... six feet.
34. I was ill ...... fever.
35. This is a good pen to write ....
36. He soon got ...... his illness.
37. He has a passion ...... gambling.
38. He burst ...... tears.
39. The girl pointed ...... a stain on her coat.
40. The teacher pointed ...... the pupil's mistakes.

EXERCISE 103

1. This is the road to go ....
2. She gave me a chair to sit ....
3. He accompanied ...... his friends.
4. This is a matter ...... little importance.
5. The meeting was held ...... secret.
6. We shall start ...... 15 th July.
7. She will be cured ...... her fever.
8. We cannot do ...... money.
9. He died ...... loss of blood.
10. He yielded ...... superior force.
11. This is not meant ...... you.
12. She is related ...... me.
13. We approached ...... the house.
14. The sun rose......the horizon.
15. He went away ...... business.
16. Our class consists ...... thirty boys.
17. Only graduates are eligible ...... the post.
18. He died ...... over work.
19. I bought this hat ...... ten shillings.
20. We must guard ourselves ...... vices.
21. I shall explain this ...... them.
22. He is seeking ...... real happiness.
23. The lady was dressed ...... black.

24. They soon got the fire ...... control.
25. He was ill ...... Sunday to Friday.
26. He is not popular ...... his students.
27. You may write ...... a pen.
28. The letter was written ...... ink.
29. He differs ...... you.
30. I shall inform them ...... this.
31. She is the apple ...... my eye.
32. Everyone longs ...... peace.
33. He was not worthy...praise.
34. The work was done...haste.
35. I took him ...... a thief.
36. He is negligent ...... his work.
37. We should not be negligent ...... duty.
38. He was warned ...... the danger.
39. The bank is close ...... my school.
40. His income is not adequate ...... his wants.

EXERCISE 104

1. He is angry ...... my behaviour.
2. He is angry ...... me.
3. Send this letter ...... my address.
4. The enemy had to give ....
5. He took revenge ...... me.
6. He meditates ...... his past life.
7. He has not met me ...... Friday.
8. The dog attacked ...... the child.
9. He sat with his arm ...... his waist.
10. He resigned himself ...... failure.
11. We all congratulate you ...... your success.
12. This ox is not accustomed ...... the yoke.
13. I heard it ...... the radio.
14. He was addicted ...... gambling.
15. You must put ...... something against the rainy day.
16. He is very weak ...... English but good ...... mathematics.
17. I got an invitation ...... a dinner.
18. You will have to answer ...... me ...... your misconducts.
19. He was amused ...... the joke.
20. Did you see the girl ...... blue eyes ?
21. What brought...the quarrel ?
22. He hankers ...... riches.
23. ......all her faults he liked her.
24. The ship was laden ...... salt.
25. I wish to remind you ......the promise you made.
26. He has no control ...... his servants.
27. The library is open ...... the public.
28. Which class are you ...... ?
29. He sat ...... the shade of a tree.
30. I could not answer ...... the question.
31. I fear ...... him.
32. There is no harm ...... doing this.
33. He is active ...... doing good to others.

34. The thief jumped ...... the compound wall.
35. The cyclist ran .... a child.
36. Have you disposed ...... the current work ?
37. A blind man can't distinguish light ...... darkness.
38. He suggested this ...... me.
39. I bought this pen......ten rupees...Students' Corner.
40. I must apologize ...... you ...... this mistake.

EXERCISE 105

1. Write ...... ink.
2. Write ...... a pen.
3. We have duty ...... our parents.
4. Sit ...... the door.
5. When this was searched...... it was found.
6. Let us prepare ...... our examination.
7. The thief robbed me ...... my all.
8. He spoke to me ...... the phone.
9. You are welcome ...... my house.
10. He is taller than you ...... four inches.
11. You should attend ...... your lessons.
12. He is an enemy ...... you.
13. He is coming ...... plane.
14. Alcohal is injurious ...... health.
15. The tank abounds ...... fish.
16. Don't prevent me ...... working.
17. Abstain ...... speaking ill of others.
18. He repented ...... having been idle.
19. The moon does not shine ..:... its own light.
20. He is an heir ...... a large property.
21. This line is parallel ...... that line.
22. He is blind ...... his own flaws.
23. He is blind ...... an eye.
24. What is he ...... now ?
25. You must confirm ...... the regulations.
26. Do you bet ...... horse-races?
27. He rides ...... a car.
28. He rides ...... a cycle.
29. There is no cause ...... anxiety.
30. Hard work is key ...... success.
31. He has been absent ...... Monday this week.
32. He fell a prey ...... disease.
33. The examination will commence ...... 10th June.
34. He is eager ...... peace.
35. He is a genius ...... mathematics.
36. Be honest ...... dealings with others.
37. He cannot cure himself ...... drugs.
38. Why do you stare me ...... the face ?
39. This is a comfortable house to live ....
40. She is accomplished ...... the art of painting.

EXERCISE 106

1. I am seek ...... the whole business.
2. He availed himself ...... the chance.
3. He spoke ...... me ...... English.
4. There is a saying ...... the Hindus.
5. This is a question you must decide ...... yourself.
6. He is complaining ...... headache.
7. She was waiting ...... me ...... the station.
8. Life is compared ...... a battle field.
9. I insisted ...... having my fee paid.
10. He prohibited me ...... borrowing a book.
11. I begged ... him a favour.
12. The Principal is away ...... holiday.
13. The whole village got ...... difficulties.
14. Nepal is ...... the north of Bihar.
15. This is the book I told you ....
16. The poet has compared her face ...... the moon.
17. A drawning man will catch ...... a straw.
18. He is weak ...... his head.
19. He is false ...... heart.
20. Is the train running ...... time ?
21. They discussed ...... the matter.
22. I can certify ...... his good character.
23. He always failed ...... want of help.
24. He supplies the poor ...... clothing.
25. Do not deviate ...... the path of virtue.
26. Where is the bus coming ...... ?
27. The old lady is affectionate ...... all.
28. We shall talk ...... the question ...... the employers tomorrow.
29. Will you entrust me ...... that letter ?
30. No, I will entrust nothing ...... you.
31. I have resigned ...... my post.
32. The hotel is adjacent ...... the station.
33. Do you know what has become ...... him ?
34. The ship was caught ...... the storm.
35. One is sure ...... what one sees.
36. I will send you this book latest. ...... 10th May.
37. They were shouting ...... joy.
38. He has a very strong prejudice ...... dogs.
39. She puts ...... an air of innocence.
40. I will call ...... you ...... tomorrow.

EXERCISE 107

1. I was horrified ...... the sight ...... so much distress.
2. He did not die ...... cholera but ...... the effects ...... over exposure ...... the sun.
3. This shopkeeper deals ...... grain, but he did not deal honestly ...... me and I shall have no more dealings ...... him in future.
4. You will have to answer ...... me ...... your misconduct.
5. I must consult ...... you ...... that matter shortly.
6. We must provide ......our children ...... the evil day.
7. Do not live ...... riches, but whatever you live ......, live ......honest labour, and if you have to live ...... a small income, live ...... your means.
8. The river ......which I went ...... my brother abounds ...... fish.
9. We took a boat and rowed......the stream......the opposite bank.
10. Write ...... ink and put your name ...... the top of the page.
11. Whatever you decide ...... stick ...... it and do your best ...... difficulties.
12. I am vexed ...... him ...... what he has done.
13. I disapprove ...... your way of working, and must, therefore, dispense ...... your services.
14. I can divide this apple ...... two persons, but it is too small to be divided ...... forty; for it cannot be divided ...... forty parts.
15. He was disqualified ...... the post on account ...... age, but he was not disqualified ...... competing for a diploma.
16. I will exchange this book ...... you ...... another.
17. While the cat was running ...... the mouse, the mouse ran ...... its hole and freed itself ...... danger.
18. He increased ...... wisdom ...... the increase of age.
19. A young man should be ...... his guard ...... bad company, and beware ......falling into their evil ways.
20. She burst ...... tears, when she found that he did not care ...... her affection.
21. I cannot agree ...... you ...... this matter, and therefore, I do not agree ...... your proposal.
22. You will have ...... answer ...... your master ...... that mistake and you may hope ...... pardon, if you ask ...... it in a proper way.
23. You must apologise ...... him...... what you have done.
24. It is better even to be blind ...... one eye, than to be blind ...... one's own faults.
25. I am interested ...... chess but I am not very good ...... it.

ANSWERS

Exercise 95

1. on, 2. up, 3. of, 4. with, 5. with, 6. of, 7. with, 8. with, 9. of, 10. to, 11. by, 12. for, 13. into, 14. with, 15. of, 16. with, 17. for, 18. into, 19. in, 20. in, 21. to, 22. after, 23. for, 24. among, 25. with, 26. at, 27. to, 28. up, 29. for, 30. in, 31. with, 32. with, 33. of, 34. with, 35. into, 36. to, 37. with, 38. of, 39. in, 40. for.

Exercise 96

1. in, 2. on, 3. to/from, 4. at, 5. with, 6. of, 7. in, 8. to, 9. of, 10. at, 11. to, 12. in, 13. for, 14. to, 15. from, 16. for, 17. at, 18. on, 19. of, 20. to, 21. to, 22. at, 23. on, 24. for, 25. to, 26. of, 27. of, 28. at, 29. by, with, 30. by, 31. to, 32. at, 33. in, 34. at, 35. for, 36. without, 37. by, 38. in, 39. about, 40. above.

Exercise 97

1. at, 2. at, 3. to, 4. into, 5. across, 6. by, 7. about, 8. from, 9. with, 10. after, 11. of, 12. on, 13. at, 14. with, 15. on, 16. on, 17. over, 18. to, 19. by, 20. at, 21. before, 22. at, 23. against, 24. of, 25. at, 26. on, 27. for, 28. above, 29. of, 30. against, 31. on, 32. at, 33. into, 34. at, 35. about, 36. for, 37. but, 38. to, 39. of, 40. by.

Exercise 98

1. of, 2. between, 3. on, 4. for, 5. to, 6. about, 7. through, 8. by, 9. for, 10. to, 11. from, 12. with, 13. with, 14. by, 15. for, 16. in, 17. up, 18. into, 19. to, 20. of, 21. by, 22. to, 23. in, 24. with, 25. to, 26. for, 27. between, 28. till, 29. in, 30. for, 31. with, 32. of, 33. through, 34. about, 35. by, 36. upon, 37. of, 38. for, 39. for, 40. for.

Exercise 99

1. from, 2. into, 3. into, 4. on, 5. for, 6. in, 7. of, 8. at, 9. in, 10. from, 11. with, 12. to, 13. to, 14. of, 15. on, 16. of, 17. by, 18. on, 19. from, 20. for, 21. at, 22. off, 23. by, 24. from, 25. to, with, 26. to, 27. on, 28. off, 29. at, 30. off, 31. of, 32. with, 33. against, 34. of, 35. in, 36. in, 37. with, 38. on, 39. for, 40. with.

Exercise 100

1. of, 2. beyond, 3. on, 4. to, 5. with, 6. up, 7. on, 8. over, 9. by, 10. from, 11. upon, 12. between, 13. for, 14. to, 15. from, 16. in, 17. with, 18. with, 19. with, 20. with, 21. with, 22. in, 23. to, 24. at, 25. with, 26. at, in, 27. into, 28. to, 29. after, 30. with, 31. with, 32. to, 33. since, 34. to, 35. to, 36. down, 37. to, 38. up, 39. of, 40. without.

Exercise 101

1. with, 2. to, 3. of, 4. off, 5. in, 6. out, 7. in, 8. to, 9. by, 10. against, 11. for, 12. of, 13. of, 14. on, 15. to, 16. over, 17. in, 18. at, 19. from, 20. of, 21. but/except, 22. with, 23. to, 24. for, 25. in, 26. for, 27. of, 28. at, 29. over, 30. along, 31. within.

32. for, 33. by, 34. of, 35. into, 36. to, 37. of, 38. at, on, 39. with, 40. by.

Exercise 102

1. from, 2. from, 3. with, 4. to, 5. in, 6. on, 7. at, 8. on, 9. to, 10. in, 11. to, 12. of, 13. with, 14. with, 15. of, 16. to, 17. from, 18. to, 19. with, 20. for, 21. to, 22. for, 23. from, 24. under, 25. of, 26. × , 27. of, 28. on, 29. to, 30. at, 31. with, 32. of, 33. by, 34. with, 35. with, 36. over, 37. for, 38. into, 39. to, 40. out.

Exercise 103

1. by, 2. on, 3. ×, 4. of, 5. in 6. on, 7. of, 8. without, 9. from, 10. to, 11. for, 12. to, 13. ×, 14. above, 15. on, 16. of, 17. for, 18. from, 19. for, 20. against, 21. to, 22. for, 23. in, 24. under, 25. from, 26. with, 27. with, 28. in, 29. with, 30. of, 31. of, 32. for, 33. of, 34. in, 35. for, 36. in, 37. of, 38. of, 39. to, 40. to.

Exercise 104

1. at, 2. with, 3. to, 4. in, 5. on, 6. on, 7. since, 8. ×, 9. round, 10. to, 11. on, 12. to, 13. over, 14. to, 15. in, 16. in, at, 17. to, 18. to, for, 19. at, 20. with, 21. about, 22. after, 23. with, 24. with, 25. of, 26. over, 27. to, 28. in, 29. in, 30. ×, 31. ×, 32. in, 33. in, 34. over, 35. over, 36. of, 37. from, 38. to, 39. for, from, 40. to, for.

Exercise 105

1. in, 2. with, 3. to, 4. at, 5. for, 6. for, 7. of, 8. on, 9. to, 10. by, 11. to, 12. to, 13. by, 14. to, 15. in/with, 16. from, 17. from, 18. of, 19. by, 20. to, 21. to, 22. to, 23. of, 24. at, 25. to, 26. on, 27. in, 28. on, 29. for, 30. to, 31. since, of, 32. to, 33. on, 34. for, 35. in, 36. in, 37. of, 38. in, 39. in, 40. in.

Exercise 106

1. of, 2. of, 3. to, in, 4. among, 5. by, 6. of, 7. for, at, 8. to, 9. on, 10. from, 11. of, 12. on, 13. into, 14. to, 15. about, 16. to, 17. at, 18. in, 19. at, 20. to, 21. ×, 22. to, 23. for, 24. with, 25. from, 26. from, 27. to, 28. on, with, 29. with, 30. to, 31. ×, 32. to, 33. of, 34. in, 35. of, 36. by, 37. with, 38. against, 39. on, 40. on, by.

Exercise 107

1. at, of, 2. of, from, of, to, 3. in, by, with, 4. to, for, 5. with, on, 6. for, against, 7. for, for, by, on, within, 8. to, with, in, 9. across, to, 10. in, at, 11. on, to, under, 12. with, for, 13. of, with, 14. between, among, into, 15. from, of, from, 16. with, for, 17. at, into, from, 18. in, with, 19. on, against, of, 20. into, for, 21. with, in, to, 22. to, to, for, for, for, 25. to, for, 24. of, to, 25. in, at.

19. Punctuation and the Use of Capital Letters

किसी भी भाषा में Punctuation का महत्त्वपूर्ण स्थान होता है। किसी sentence या passage में अर्थ की स्पष्टता या समुचित विराम के लिए निर्धारित चिह्नों के प्रयोग की विधि को Punctuation कहते हैं। Punctuation Marks की सहायता से वाक्यों को पढ़ने, बोलने और उनके अर्थ समझने में सुगमता होती है।

अँग्रेजी में मुख्य **Punctuation Marks** इस प्रकार हैं—

1. Full Stop (.)
2. Comma (,)
3. Semi-colon (;)
4. Colon (:)
5. Question Mark (?)
6. Exclamation Mark (!)
7. Hyphen (-)
8. Dash (—)
9. Apostrophe (')
10. Inverted Commas ("……") या ('……')

अब इन चिह्नों और इनके प्रयोग पर विचार करें।

1. Full Stop (.)

1. Interrogative, Optative तथा Exclamatory Sentences को छोड़कर किसी भी तरह के पूर्ण वाक्य के अंत में Full Stop का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He is a boy.
Go there.
Don't do this.
He asked me what my name was.

2. Abbreviations और Initial letters के बाद Full Stop का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

B. A.	Ph. D.	K. P. Singh
M. A.	U. S. A.	T. K. Jha
B. D. O.	Nov.	T. Khan
M. L. A.	Dec.	L. P. Mishra

3. आजकल Dr, Mr, Mrs, St (Saint) के बाद Full Stop का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, क्योंकि अब ये पूरे शब्द की भाँति प्रयुक्त होते हैं, संक्षिप्त शब्दों की तरह नहीं।

4. आजकल बहुत सारे प्रचलित Abbreviations के बाद भी Full Stop का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे—

MLA, BBC, OUP, VIP, UNO

5. रुपये-पैसे, डॉलर-सेण्ट, पौंड-शिलिंग तथा घंटा-मिनट के बीच में Full Stop प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

Rs. 20.50 read as twenty rupees and fifty paise
$ 2.30 read as two dollars and thirty cents
£ 2.20 read as two pounds and twenty pence
6.40 a.m. read as six-forty or forty past six.

6. 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th इत्यादि के बाद Full Stop प्रयुक्त नहीं होता है।

7. अगर कोई वाक्य Abbreviation से अंत करे तो वाक्य के अंत में एक ही Full Stop दिया जाता है, दो नहीं। जैसे—

He is an I. A. S.
I am an M. A.
Come at 5 p.m.

2. Comma (,)

Comma अल्प ठहराव का सूचक है। इसके कुछ मुख्य प्रयोग इस प्रकार हैं—

1. अगर वाक्य में एक ही Part of Speech के तीन या तीन से अधिक शब्द एक के बाद एक आये तो उनके बीच Comma दिया जाता है जैसा कि इन उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है।

Ram, Mohan, Sohan and Gopal are my friends.
Sita, Gita or Meena can do this.
He is tall, gentle and handsome.
I know Hindi, English, Urdu and Punjabi.
He is always eating, drinking and dancing.

Note : यहाँ ध्यान दें कि जब अंतिम शब्द के पहले and/or आता है तब उसके पहले Comma का प्रयोग नहीं किया जाता है।

2. जब किसी शब्द को दुहराया जाय तब उसके बीच Comma प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

Go, go; I don't need you.
Try, try again.

3. कभी-कभी वाक्य में दो words का प्रयोग इस प्रकार रहता है जिसे अलग-अलग कुछ रुककर पढ़ने की आवश्यकता होती है। ऐसे दो शब्दों के बीच

Comma का प्रयोग किया जाता है ताकि दोनों शब्दों को गलती से एक ही साथ न पढ़ लें।

What he is, is known to me.
What he does, does not suit me.
What he did, was quite clear.
He who can, does; he who cannot, teaches.
What should be done, should be done.

4. वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Apposition पद के पहले और बाद में Comma का प्रयोग किया जाता है। इस प्रकार Apposition पद दो Commas के बीच में आ जाता है।

I, Ram, am a student.
Rajendra Prasad, the first President of India, was a great man.
He, the son of a rich man, is very proud.

5. कुछ वाक्यों में words of address का प्रयोग रहता है। अगर words of address वाक्य के शुरू में रहे तो ठीक इसके बाद Comma लगता है। अगर words of address वाक्य के अंत में रहे तो Comma ठीक इसके पहले लगता है। अगर वाक्य के बीच में words of address रहे तो इसके दोनों बगल Commas प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे—

Mohan, where are you going ?
Ladies and gentlemen, listen to me attentively.
Get out, Ram.
May I go out, Sir ?
What are you doing, boys ?
I know, Suresh, that only you can do this.
I am sure, dear boys, that our labour will never go in vain.

6. कभी-कभी वाक्य के बीच में बाहर से words/phrases/clauses को रख दिया जाता है जिसे अगर निकाल भी दिया जाए तो वाक्य के construction में कोई अन्तर नहीं आता है। ऐसे words/phrases/ clauses के दोनों तरफ Commas का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

He, however, passed the examination.
I, therefore, request you to grant me leave.
He is, after all, my friend.
His behaviour, to say the least, was very rude.
You will get nothing, I suppose, if you go on doing in this way.
You will, I hope, agree with me.
His life was, in several ways, fruitless.

7. अगर वाक्य में in fact, in short, for example, therefore, however, of course, too, moreover, for instance, on the contrary,

by the way जैसे expressions का प्रयोग हो तो इन्हें भी Commas द्वारा वाक्य के शेष भाग से अलग किया जाता है । जैसे—

In fact, he is a good singer.
I love you, too.
I have been to Paris, too.
I, too, have been to Paris.

Note : जब too का प्रयोग Adverb of Degree के रूप में हो तो इसे Comma से seperate नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे—

This is too much for me.
The news is too good to be true.

8. Yes/No के बाद comma का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है, जब इसके बाद कोई वाक्य आता है। जैसे—

Yes, I will help you.
No, you can't.

9. व्यक्ति के नाम तथा उनके पद/उपाधियों के बीच Commas का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Prof. T. P. Sinha, M. A. , Ph. D., has joined today.
Sri Singh, I.A.S., is our new S.D.O.

10. Dates के साथ Comma का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है—

April 20, 1980
20 April, 1980

जब सिर्फ महीना और साल देना हो तो Comma दे भी सकते हैं और नहीं भी।

He was born in March, 1967.
He was born in March 1967.

11. चिट्ठियों में अभिवादन (salutation) तथा विदाई (words of leave-taking) के बाद Comma दिया जाता है। जैसे—

Dear Suresh,	Yours faithfully,
Dear Mary,	Yours truly,
Dear Mother,	Yours affectionately,
Yours sincerely,	Sincerely yours.

12. कुछ वाक्यों में Verbs का लोप हो जाता है। वैसी अवस्थां में Subject के बाद एक Comma आता है। जैसे—

I like fish; my friend, chicken.
I am going today; she, tomorrow.
He will succeed; you, never.
He is a Rajput; she, a Brahmin.

13. Question Tag को Main Clause से अलग करने के लिए Comma प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

You will go tomorrow, won't you ?
He is ready, isn't he ?
Bring a glass of water, will you ?

14. वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Direct Speech को वाक्य के शेष भाग से अलग करने के लिए Comma का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

He said, "I am ready."
She said to me, "When will you come ?"
"I don't know her", she said.
"You know", said she, "that I don't like him."

Note : अगर Direct Speech में Question/Exclamation रहे और उसके बाद Reporting Verb आये तो अभीष्ट Direct Speech के बाद Comma प्रयुक्त नहीं होगा। जैसे—

"Where are you going ?" he asked me.
"Well done !" he said.

15. जब वाक्य के शुरू में Adverbial Clause रहे या Non-finite/Verbless Construction रहे तो इसके बाद Comma प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

If he comes to me, I shall help him.
When I was a bachelor, I lived by myself.
As soon as he saw the tiger, he fled away.
If there were no bad people, there would be no good lawyers.
When in Rome, do as the Romans do.
To be sure of getting there on time, he left an hour early.

16. वाक्य में Adverbial Phrase, Participle Phrase या Absolute Phrase के बाद Comma प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

At present, I have nothing to care for.
At last, he succeeded.
Having worked hard, he felt tired.
The sun having set, we all went home.

17. Non-defining Relative Clause के पहले और बाद में (अगर sentence continue करता है) Comma प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

My husband, who lives in London, is coming tomorrow.
This is Jane, who is living in America.

18. दो Main Clauses जब or, but, and, nor इत्यादि से जुटे हों तो कभी-कभी (प्रायः जब clause लम्बा रहता है) इन शब्दों के पहले Comma दिया जाता है। जैसे—

He went to the party, but his brother did not go.
Men may come and men may go, but I go on for ever.
He cannot see, nor could he hear until a month ago.
The rains descended, and the floods came.

Note : ऊपर के उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है कि Comma का प्रयोग तब किया जाता है जब दूसरा Principal Clause कोई नया या विरोधी विचार व्यक्त करे या उसकी बनावट नए ढंग की हो।

जब दो छोटे-छोटे Independent Clauses and, or,but इत्यादि से जुटे हों तब उनके बीच Comma प्रयुक्त नहीं होता है। जैसे—

Do or die.
I shall sing and he will dance.

19. Compound Sentence में छोटे-छोटे Co-ordinate Clauses को अलग करने के लिए Comma का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

He came, he saw, and he conquered.
I came, I saw, I conquered.
The way was long, the wind was cold.
The rains descended, and the floods came.

3. Semi-colon (;)

1. Comma का प्रयोग वहाँ होता है जहाँ कम ठहरने की जरूरत पड़ती है। Full Stop का प्रयोग वहाँ होता है जहाँ अधिक ठहरने की जरूरत पड़ती है। वहीं Semi-colon का प्रयोग वहाँ होता है जहाँ Comma से कुछ अधिक तथा Full Stop से कुछ कम ठहराव की जरूरत पड़ती है।

2. Semi-colon का प्रयोग वहाँ होता है जहाँ Full Stop का प्रयोग हो सकता है। लेकिन, जब हम विभिन्न Principal Clauses को बिना linking words के एक ही वाक्य में प्रयुक्त करना चाहें जिससे अभीष्ट विचार अधिक तीव्रता से एक साथ स्पष्ट हो सके तो ऐसे Clauses को Semi-colons से अलग किया जाता है; जैसे—

Wise men love truth; fools shun it.
Come early; go early.
Honesty is the best policy; it inspires us with greater confidence.

इस प्रकार Semi-colons का प्रयोग वैसे Co-ordinate Clauses को अलग करने के लिए किया जाता है जो किसी Conjunction से जुड़े नहीं रहते हैं।

3. ऐसे Clauses के पहले भी Semi-colons का प्रयोग होता है जिसके Verbs को लुप्त कर दिया जाता है। जैसे—

She will succeed; you, never.

I like fish; my brother, chicken.

He received a pen; I, a watch.

Wise men learns by other men's mistake; fools by their own.

यहाँ ऊपर दिए गए examples में प्रयुक्त second clauses में क्रमश: will, likes, received तथा learn का लोप है।

4. ऐसे constructions जिनके भीतर Commas प्रयुक्त हों, उसे Semi-colon द्वारा जोड़ा जाता है। जैसे—

He was a brave, large hearted man; and we all honoured him.

If you are a master, sometimes be blind; if you are a servant, sometimes be deaf.

4. Colon (:) विसर्ग चिन्ह

1. Colon का प्रयोग किसी सूची (list) या उदाहरण (example) को आरम्भ करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

The following words are nouns : cat, cow, boy and girl.

I want the following : books, pens and note-books.

He named his three favourite poets : Milton, Wordsworth and Eliot.

2. Direct Speech तथा Quotation के पहले Colon का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

He said : "I will do it."

Shakespeare said : "Sweet are the uses of adversity."

Once Mrs Indira Gandhi said : We must do ......

3. Dialogue में वक्ता के नाम के वाद Colon का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

Teacher : What are you doing ?
Ram : Sir, I am doing my lessons.

4. जब किसी शब्द के वाद उसका definition या description देना हो तो उस शब्द के बाद Colon दिया जाता है। जैसे—

Noun : A noun is a naming word.

Albatross : A large white sea-bird with long wings.

5. वाक्य में पहले कही गई बात के बाद अगर उस सम्बन्ध में कोई explanation या illustration या statement देना हो तो उन दोनों के बीच Colon प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे—

I can't eat this bread : it is burnt.

He is too much of a cynic : he does not listen to anyone.

This house is of no use : its door, windows and roof are all broken.

5. Question Mark (?)

1. Interrogative Sentence के अंत में Question Mark प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

What is your name ?
Who are you ?
Do you know ?
When are you going ?
He said to me, "What are you doing ?"
"What do you know ?" asked he.

Note : Indirect question के बाद Full Stop प्रयुक्त होता है, Question Mark नहीं। जैसे—

He asked me what my name was.
I don't know who he was.

2. Question Tag के बाद Question Mark प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

You are going tomorrow, aren't you ?
Come tomorrow, will you ?

3. ऐसे phrases, words या statements के बाद भी Question Mark प्रयुक्त होता है जिससे प्रश्न का बोध हो। जैसे—

Ram	:	I shall return the book soon.
Shyam	:	But when ?
James	:	There is always hope.
Jane	:	Hope of what ?
John	:	You want me to tell lies ?
Mary	:	No, I don't.

6. Exclamation Mark (!)

1. Optative Sentence तथा Exclamatory Sentence के अंत में Exclamation Mark प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

May God help you !
May he die !
What a beautiful scene it is !
What a good luck !
How lovely she looks !

2. Interjections तथा ऐसे Phrases/Sentences जिनसे आकस्मिक भाव व्यक्त हों उनके बाद Exclamation Marks प्रयुक्त होते हैं। जैसे—

Alas !
Oh !
Oh dear !
What fun !
Nonsense !
Hello !
Good Heavens !
Oh ! enough !
Well done !

3. कभी-कभी short order के बाद उसकी तीव्र अभिव्यक्ति के लिए Exclamation Mark प्रयुक्त किया जाता है। जैसे—

Get out ! I don't want to see you again.
Shut up ! I don't want to hear a word.

7. Hyphen (-)

1. अगर किसी वाक्य का कोई शब्द पंक्ति के अंत में जगह के अभाव के कारण पूरा नहीं आवे तो उस अपूर्ण शब्द के बाद Hyphen दिया जाता है तथा उस शब्द के शेष भाग को अगली पंक्ति में लिखा जाता है।

Note :

(a) dog, cow, bag, box, ox इत्यादि जैसे एक syllable वाले शब्दों को divide नहीं किया जाता। इन्हें जहाँ भी लिखें पूरा लिखें। Hyphen की मदद से दो lines में न लिखें।

(b) पंक्ति के अंत में किसी शब्द का केवल एक अक्षर लिखकर या एक अक्षर छोड़कर Hyphen कभी न दें। जैसे—grammar को g–rammar या gramma–r नहीं लिखें।

(c) किसी शब्द का syllable पूरा हो जाने के बाद ही Hyphen दें। जैसे—

beau-ti-ful
im-me-di-ate

अगर beautiful वाक्य के अंत में लिखना हो और पूरा न अटे तो beau के बाद Hyphen दें या beauti के बाद Hyphen दें।

2. 21 से 99 तक के compound numbers को शब्दों में लिखने के लिए Hyphen प्रयुक्त किया जाता है। जैसे—

21 = twenty-one	431 = four hundred and thirty-one
45 = forty-five	974 = nine hundred and seventy-four
62 = sixty-two	855 = eight hundred and fifty-five
89 = eighty-nine	5153 = five thousand, one hundred and fifty-three

3. यदि Prefix के लगाने से लगातार दो same vowels हो जाएँ तो अभीष्ट Prefix के बाद Hyphen दिया जाता है। जैसे—

co-operation, re-elect, pre-eminent

4. Prefix 're' का अर्थ again है, यह निर्देशित करने के लिए re के बाद Hyphen प्रयुक्त किया जाता है। जैसे—

recover = get back	re-cover = cover again
reform = improve	re-form = form again

recount	= tell a story	re-count	= count again
recall	= remember	re-call	= call again
react	= respond	re-act	= act again

5. अँग्रेजी में बहुत सारे compound तथा complex words हैं जिनके formation में Hyphen प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

sister-in-law	Vice-President	non-violence
brother-in-law	self-made	non-Indians
father-in-law	self- control	non-Christians
a five-rupee note	self-explanatory	un-Indian
a one-storey house	cross-examine	pro-Indian
a one-eyed man	ill-tempered	pre-planned
a first-class hotel	well-behaved	mid-June
a five-foot stick	light-hearted	mid—Victorian
a 10-day trip	double-edged	anti-Indian
500-word essays	soft-spoken	ex-M.L.A.
a heart-broken lover	single-handed	anti-American
Editor-in-chief	absent-minded	ex-Principal

8. Dash (—)

1. कभी-कभी जहाँ Colon का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है वहाँ Dash का भी प्रयोग किया जाता है। list of things, examples या वाक्य में पहले कही हुई बातों के बाद अगर उस सम्बन्ध में कोई explanation / illustration / statement देना हो तो Dash का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

I want the following—ten note-books, two pens and one ink-pot.

Man is very selfish and greedy—the more he has the more he wants.

2. दो संख्याओं के बीच Dash का प्रयोग दी हुई प्रथम तथा अंतिम संख्या के बीच की लुप्त संख्या या संख्याओं को सूचित करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

1970—1980	(1970 से 1980 तक)
Chapters I-XI	(एक से ग्यारह तक)
PP 10–100	(पेज 10 से पेज 100 तक)

3. किसी Quotation के प्रारम्भ में Dash का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

The teacher said—"Honesty is the best policy."

4. किसी बात पर जोर देने के लिए भी Dash का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Mohan is honest, laborious and intelligent—but very talkative.

5. किसी वाक्य के मध्य में प्रयुक्त Parenthetical Phrases के पहले और बाद में Dash प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

My brother—to tell you the truth—is a thief.

Note : यहाँ Dash के बदले Commas दें तो ज्यादा अच्छा रहेगा।

6. यदि वाक्य में अचानक रुकावट या भाव परिवर्तन हो तो उसे सूचित करने के लिए Dash का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

She knew nothing at all about it—or so she said.
If she were alive now—but why lament the past ?

7. कभी-कभी apposition या explanation के पहले Dash का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

We bow to God—the Creator of the universe.
He lost everything—health, wealth and reputation.

9. Apostrophe (')

1. Contractions (संक्षिप्त शब्दों) में लुप्त अक्षर या संख्या के स्थान पर Apostrophe का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे—

Ma'am	(for Madam)
can't	(for cannot)
aren't	(for are not)
I'm	(for I am)
I'll	(for I will)
It's	(for it is)
O'clock	(for of the clock)
'82	(for 1982)

2. Noun के Possessive Form में Apostrophe का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—Ram's cow, the cow's milk, the boy's names.

3. संख्या तथा अक्षरों को Plural बनाने में 's प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे—

Add four 3's and the result is 12.
Your t's and l's look alike.

Note : संख्या यदि शब्दों में लिखी जाए तो उसका plural s/es लगाकर बनता है, 's लगाकर नहीं। जैसे—

Sachin hit three fours and two sixes.

10. Inverted Commas

Inverted Commas को Quotation Marks भी कहा जाता है। Inverted Commas single ('......') भी हो सकता है और double ("......") भी। आप दोनों में से किसी एक का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं। इसके मुख्य प्रयोग इस प्रकार हैं—

1. Inverted Commas का प्रयोग Quotation तथा Direct Speech को घेरने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे—

He said, "What are you doing ?"
Shakespeare says, 'Sweet are the uses of adversity.'
He said to me, "May God help you !"

2. Inverted Commas का प्रयोग पुस्तक, कहानी, कविता, लेख, अखबार आदि के नाम के साथ भी होता है। जैसे—

Have you read "Hamlet" ?
'Ode on Solitude' is a famous poem.
I read 'The Times of India' everyday.

3. वाक्य में प्रयुक्त ऐसे words/phrases को भी Inverted Commas के भीतर रखा जाता है जिस पर विशेष ध्यान (special attention) देने की जरूरत है या जो context में unusual हो। जैसे—

The word 'disinterested' is sometimes used to mean 'uninterested.'
A lot of persons were imprisoned in the name of "national security".

4. अगर Quotation के भीतर भी Quotation हो तो भीतरी Quotation के लिए वैसे Inverted Commas का प्रयोग करते हैं जैसा Main Quotation के लिए नहीं किया गया है। जैसे—

He asked me, "Have you read 'Hamlet' ?"
He asked me, 'Have you read "Hamlet" ?'

The Use of Capital Letters

Capital Letters के प्रयोग इस प्रकार हैं—

1. प्रत्येक वाक्य का पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जाता है। जैसे—
He is my brother.
What are you doing ?
Take medicine in time.

2. Poem की प्रत्येक पंक्ति का पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जाता है। जैसे—

She dwelt among the untrodden ways
Beside the Springs of Dove;
A maid whom there were none to praise
And very few to love.

Note : बहुत से आधुनिक कवि अब इस नियम की मान्यता नहीं देते।

3. Inverted Commas के अंदर शुरू होने वाले प्रत्येक वाक्य का पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जाता है। जैसे—

He said to me, "What do you want ?"
"She is ill", said her mother to the doctor.

अगर Direct Speech / Quotation में प्रयुक्त एक ही वाक्य दो या दो से अधिक भागों में बँटा हो तो केवल पहले भाग का पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जायेगा। जैसे—

"Call no man happy", said the philosopher, "untill he has ended his life in a fitting manner."

4. किसी व्यक्ति के नाम में प्रयुक्त प्रत्येक शब्द का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है।

Ram, Ram Kumar Singh, Gopi Mehta, Asha Kumari, Lucy, John, Tom

5. किसी व्यक्ति के नाम के पहले आने वाले title का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे—

Mr	Sir	Dr	Lt.
Mrs	Miss	Prof	Col.

6. किसी गाँव, शहर, राज्य, देश, महादेश इत्यादि के नाम का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे—

Chamanpur	Patna	Bihar	India	Asia
Sheohar	Ranchi	Punjab	Nepal	Africa

7. पहाड़, नदी, ट्रेन, जहाज आदि के नाम का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे—

The Himalayas	The Toofan Express	The Vikrant
The Ganga	The Taj Express	The Sagar Samrat

8. पुस्तक, नाटक, समाचारपत्र, पत्रिका आदि के नाम में प्रयुक्त सभी शब्दों का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। सिर्फ Article, Conjunction या Preposition बीच में आये तो वे small letters से लिखे जायेंगे। जैसे—

The Ramayana, A Tale of Two Cities, The Times of India, Pratiyogita Kiran, etc

9. story, poem, report, article या chapter of a book के title में प्रयुक्त सभी शब्दों का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। सिर्फ Article, Conjunction या Preposition बीच में आये तो वे small letters से लिखे जायेंगे। जैसे—

Ode on Solitude, Gandhiji as World Citizen

10. दिन, महीने, भाषा, समुदाय, धर्म, त्योहार आदि के नाम का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे—

Sunday	Monday	March	May	December

Hindi	Urdu	French	English	Sanskrit
Hindu	Muslim	Sikh	Islam	Budhist
Holi	Diwali	Easter	Id	New year

11. Political Parties के नाम का प्रत्येक शब्द Capital से शुरू होता है। जैसे—

the Congress Party	the Socialist Party	the B.J.P.
the Janata Party	the Muslim League	the C.P.I.

12. ऐतिहासिक घटनाओं में आए प्रत्येक शब्द का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे—

Independence Day	French Revolution	World War I
Republic Day	the Middle Ages	the Battle of Panipat

13. पदवी (title) और ओहदा (designation) में प्रयुक्त प्रत्येक शब्द का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे—

Chief Minister	Chief Justice	Principal
Prime Minister	District Magistrate	Headmaster

14. Proper Noun से बने अन्य शब्दों का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे—

Indian	American	Bihari	British
Russian	Japanese	Punjabi	Greek

15. Proper Noun या Proper Noun से बने Adjectives के पहले Prefix आए तो अभीष्ट Prefix small letter से तथा मूल शब्द Capital Letter से लिखें जायेंगे। जैसे—

un-English	anti-American	mid-July
non-Indian	pro-French	non-Christian

16. अधिकांश Abbreviations में प्रयुक्त प्रत्येक letter को Capital से लिखा जाता है। जैसे—

B.D.O.	B.A.	M.L.A.	U.N.O.
I.A.S.	M.A.	M.P.	U.S.A.

Note : (a) जब abbreviation में एक से अधिक letters संयुक्त रहे तो केवल पहला letter Capital होता है जैसा कि इन उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है।

I.Sc.	M.Sc.	Ph.D.	B.Sc.

(b) कुछ abbreviations small letters से भी लिखे जाते हैं। जैसे—

a.m. p.m. i.e. e.g. etc m.p.h.

17. Pronoun I, Interjection O तथा Personified word का पहला letter Capital से लिखे जाते हैं। जैसे—

He knew that I was not there.
O that she were alive !
O Death ! Come soon.

18. अगर God का प्रयोग सर्वशक्तिमान ईश्वर के लिए हो तो God तथा उनके लिए प्रयुक्त Pronoun (He/Him/His) तथा अन्य शब्दों का पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जायेगा। जैसे—

None can challenge God.

God is Almighty.

God is the Father of fathers.

God is kind to His creatures.

Note : अगर God का प्रयोग देवता के लिए हो तो God तथा उनके लिए प्रयुक्त Pronouns Capital Letters से आरम्भ नहीं होते हैं। जैसे—

The god of fire will burn you if you don't obey him.

19. जब Father / Mother / Uncle / Aunt से वक्ता के अपने Father / Mother / Uncle / Aunt का बोध हो और इनके पहले कोई Determiner (the, your, my, his, etc) प्रयुक्त न हो, यानी इनका प्रयोग Proper Nouns की तरह हो तब इनका पहला अक्षर Capital Letters से लिखा जायेगा। इनके पहले Determiners प्रयुक्त रहने पर इन्हें small letters से लिखा जायेगा। जैसे—

I dare not face Father.

Father agreed but Mother didn't.

I am waiting for Uncle and Aunt.

My father is very poor.

When is your uncle / aunt / mother / father coming ?

Examples Worked Out

Punctuate the following sentences, using capital letters, where necessary :

Q. 1. is he an ma
Ans. Is he an M.A. ?

Q. 2. ram is an sdo
Ans. Ram is an S.D.O.

Q. 3. mr sinha is coming from patna
Ans. Mr. Sinha is coming from Patna.

Q. 4. ram mohan and sohan are gentle
Ans. Ram, Mohan and Sohan are gentle.

Q. 5. try try again for success
Ans. Try, try again for success.

Q. 6. what he is is clear
Ans. What he is, is clear.

Q. 7. what he did did not surprise me
Ans. What he did, did not surprise me.

Q. 8. ram the son of dashrath killed ravan
Ans. Ram, the son of Dashrath, killed Ravan.

Q. 9. i mohan am present
Ans. I,.Mohan, am present.

Q. 10. sir i am here
Ans. Sir, I am here.

Q. 11. i know mohan that you can never do this
Ans. I know, Mohan, that you can never do this.

Q. 12. i know mohan very well
Ans. I know Mohan very well.

Q. 13. milton the great english poet was blind
Ans. Milton, the great English poet, was blind.

Q. 14. he however helped me with money
Ans. He, however, helped me with money.

Q. 15. you will i hope agree with me
Ans. You will, I hope, agree with me.

Q. 16. his behaviour to say the least was very rude
Ans. His behaviour, to say the least, was very rude.

Q. 17. he is after all my brother
Ans. He is, after all, my brother.

Q. 18. in fact his poetry is no better than his prose
Ans. In fact, his poetry is no better than his prose.

Q. 19. what did you say your name was by the way
Ans. What did you say your name was, by the way.

Q. 20. yes i know him
Ans. Yes, I know him.

Q. 21. no i cant
Ans. No, I can't.

Q. 22. mr kumar ma bl is my brother
Ans. Mr Kumar, M.A., B.L. is my brother.

Q. 23. today is 15 june 1995
Ans. Today is 15 June, 1995.

Q. 24. he received a book and i a pen
Ans. He received a book and I, a pen.

Q. 25. i like fish and my brother chicken
Ans. I like fish and my brother, chicken.

Q. 26. you know ram dont you
Ans. You know Ram, don't you ?

Q. 27. he is not coming is he
Ans. He is not coming, is he ?

Q. 28. the girl said to me what are you doing
Ans. The girl said to me, "What are you doing ?"

Q. 29. why do you not read the teacher said
Ans. "Why do you not read ?" the teacher said.

Q. 30. that is my horse said he and if i do not prove it in a few minutes i will give up my claim
Ans. "That is my horse", said he, "and if I do not prove it in a few minutes I will give up my claim."

Q. 31. he said to me i am always ready to help you
Ans. He said to me, "I am always ready to help you."

Q. 32. luckily the child was not drowned
Ans. Luckily, the child was not drowned.

Q. 33. the sun having set down we all went home
Ans. The sun having set down, we all went home.

Q. 34. when in rome do as the romans do
Ans. When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

Q. 35. when the bell rings we shall go to the class
Ans. When the bell rings, we shall go to the class.

Q. 36. having done the work she went home
Ans. Having done the work, she went home.

Q. 37. turning to her i smiled
Ans. Turning to her, I smiled.

Q. 38. if you want good advice consult an old man
Ans. If you want good advice, consult an old man.

Q. 39. ram who was present there expressed the same opinion
Ans. Ram, who was present there, expressed the same opinion.

Q. 40. he is a hindu she a muslim
Ans. He is a Hindu; she, a Muslim.

Q. 41. i received a pen he a pencil
Ans. I received a pen; he, a pencil.

Q. 42. as caesar loved me i weep for him as he was fortunate i rejoice at it as he was valiant i honour him but as he was ambitious i slew him
Ans. As Caesar loved me, I weep for him; as he was fortunate, I rejoice at it; as he was valiant, I honour him; but as he was ambitious, I slew him.

Q. 43. do well get well
Ans. Do well; get well.

Q. 44. sometimes he weeps sometimes he laughs
Ans. Sometimes he weeps; sometimes he laughs.

Q. 45. honesty is rewarded dishonesty is punished
Ans. Honesty is rewarded; dishonesty is punished.

Q. 46. teacher who can answer the question mohan sir i can
Ans. Teacher : Who can answer the question ?
Mohan : Sir, I can.

Q. 47. i need the following a cup tea water and sugar
Ans. I need the following : a cup, tea, water and sugar.

Q. 48. give the opposite words cow fat good etc
Ans. Give the opposite words : cow, fat, good, etc.

Q. 49. pronoun a pronoun is used in place of a noun
Ans. Pronoun : A pronoun is used in place of a noun.

Q. 50. shakespeare has rightly said neither a borrower nor a lender be
Ans. Shakespeare has rightly said : "Neither a borrower nor a lender be."

Q. 51. nobody can teach her she is so disobedient
Ans. Nobody can teach her : she is so disobedient.

Q. 52. she understands everything doesnt she
Ans. She understands everything, doesn't she ?

Q. 53. who can go he said to me
Ans. "Who can go ?" he said to me.

Q. 54. what a beautiful rose this is
Ans. What a beautiful rose this is !

Q. 55. alas my cat is dead
Ans. Alas ! My cat is dead.

Q. 56. may he die of cholera
Ans. May he die of cholera !

Q. 57. nonsense get out at once
Ans. Nonsense ! Get out at once.

Q. 58. hurrah we have won the match
Ans. Hurrah ! We have won the match.

Q. 59 oh what fun
Ans. Oh ! What fun !

Q. 60. i can never forget his cooperation
Ans. I can never forget his co-operation.

Q. 61. she is my sister in law
Ans. She is my sister-in-law.

Q. 62. this is a one act play
Ans. This is a one-act play.

Q. 63 she is ill tempered
Ans. She is ill-tempered.

Q. 64. i am not antiamerican
Ans. I am not anti-American.

Q. 65 please recount the eggs
Ans. Please re-count the eggs.

Q. 66. i have seventy five rupees
Ans. I have seventy-five rupees.

Q. 67. ill help you
Ans. I'll help you.

Q. 68. its 4 o clock
Ans. It's 4 o'clock.

Q. 69. rams cow is ill
Ans. Ram's cow is ill.

Q. 70. he said bravo you have done well
Ans. He said, "Bravo ! You have done well."

Q. 71. what makes you cry asked her sister
Ans. "What makes you cry ?" asked her sister.

Q. 72. many people he said are not happy over the progress of india
Ans. "Many people", he said, "are not happy over the progress of India."

Q. 73. have you ever read macbeth
Ans. Have you ever read "Macbeth" ?

Q. 74. how many of you have read ode on solitude asked the teacher in the class
Ans. "How many of you have read 'Ode on Solitude' ?" asked the teacher in the class.

Q. 75. he said to me do you know miss lata
Ans. He said to me, "Do you know Miss Lata ?"

Q. 76. the ganga is a holy river
Ans. The Ganga is a holy river.

Q. 77. mount everest is the highest peak of the himalayas
Ans. Mount Everest is the highest peak of the Himalayas.

Q. 78. have you read as you like it
Ans. Have you read "As You Like It" ?

Q. 79. he will come on the first sunday of january
Ans. He will come on the first Sunday of January.

Q. 80. a hindu celebrates deepawali with great joy
Ans. A Hindu celebrates Deepawali with great joy.

Q. 81. some indians know both hindi and urdu
Ans. Some Indians know both Hindi and Urdu.

Q. 82. who is the main leader of the congress party asked the teacher
Ans. "Who is the main leader of the Congress Party ?" asked the teacher.

Q. 83. when does the prime minister arrive here
Ans. When does the Prime Minister arrive here ?

Q. 84. where will you be at 5 pm
Ans. Where will you be at 5 p.m. ?

Q. 85. this universe has been created by god
Ans. This universe has been created by God.

Q. 86. god is kind to his children
Ans. God is kind to His children.

Q. 87. there are a number of gods in hindu methology
Ans. There are a number of gods in Hindu methology.

Q. 88. why has father not come yet
Ans. Why has Father not come yet ?

Q. 89. father agreed but mother didnt
Ans. Father agreed but Mother didn't.

Q. 90. i think uncle will approve it
Ans. I think Uncle will approve it.

Q. 91. my father and your father are fast friends
Ans. My father and your father are fast friends.

EXERCISE 108

Punctuate the following, using capital letters where necessary :

1. do you know what my name is
2. who is he
3. i dont know what he is
4. he asked me what my name was
5. mr l p sinha is an sdo
6. ram mohan and sohan are coming soon
7. he is tall gentle and laborious

8. i have a pen a book a bag and a watch
9. he was questioned abused and beaten
10. swimming walking and dancing are good exercises
11. try try again for success
12. what his occupation is is of no interest to me
13. what he does does not suit me
14. if you can do do if you cant go away
15. what should be done should be done
16. mount everest the worlds highest mountain was first climbed in 1953
17. i mukesh kumar am not to tolerate it
18. how can ram the son of a very poor farmer can manage all these
19. that was his sister sheela
20. mukesh the novelist was a professor
21. milton the great english poet was blind
22. sonu the fourth son of the farmer was really hard working
23. where are you going my friend
24. i tell you gopi never do it again
25. come here and listen to me my children
26. raju bring that to me
27. get off you wicked boys
28. i think mukesh you can do this
29. my sweet heart will you ever forget me
30. we were believe it or not in love with each other
31. he however succeeded in catching him
32. most of the students i hope will pass in the examination
33. he is after all my bossom friend
34. his behaviour to say the least was very rude
35. yes i am always ready to help you
36. no i cant
37. prof d k sukla m a ph d has been a renowned teacher
38. what were you doing on 20 may 1990
39. i like fish my brother meat
40. he is a bihari she a punjabi
41. to err is human to forgive divine
42. i received a pen he a book
43. she will succeed you never
44. he is always haughty she always mild
45. he does not smoke does he
46. you should not be so lazy should you

47. he said to me i shall come soon
48. ram said to mohan how can you help me
49. the priest said to me may god bless you
50. he is not here said her mother to me
51. why have you broken the glass his mother asked him
52. most of you know said he that i never tell a lie

EXERCISE 109

Punctuate the following, using capital letters where necessary :

1. mohan who is your best friend is not going to help you
2. this is rajan who is going abroad to study
3. my wife who works in a bank is unable to look after the family
4. if you are in patna come and look me up
5. at last he decided to leave the place
6. at present i am doing nothing
7. the boy who is playing in the field is my brother
8. to tell you the truth i suffered a heavy loss
9. the wind being favourable we pushed the boat on
10. he is at least in my opinion quite innocent
11. after completing the work he decided to go to the playground
12. whenever i go to him i find him sleeping
13. he came he saw and he conquered
14. he i believe does not drink
15. i love him too
16. everyone can do but you cant
17. you have always been late and for that you will be punished
18. read not to contradict nor to believe but to judge and consider
19. as caesar loved me i weep for him as he was fortunate i rejoice at it as he was valiant i honour him but as he was ambitious i slew him
20. wise men love truth fools shun it
21. some people believe in telling lies others believe in speaking the truth
22. ram has a car shyam a jeep
23. today i have to buy the following ten eggs a kilo of sugar and some ghee
24. pronoun a pronoun stands for a noun
25. teacher who can answer this question
    mohan sir i can
26. we cant reach in time the train is so late
27. i cant eat this bread it is burnt

28. the house is of no use its door windows and roof are all broken
29. ram you must go there
    shyam for what
30. i cant say why he did so
31. alas my cat is dead
32. what a place it is
33. hurrah we have won the match
34. hello how are you
35. well done i am proud of you
36. oh enough
37. may god bless you
38. he is my brother in law
39. i have twenty one rupees
40. we cant do without your cooperation
41. recount the money
42. she is soft spoken
43. he is non indian
44. ramu is a one eyed man
45. he is ill tempered
46. you dont have self control
47. this is a 100 foot deep well
48. he lost everything health wealth and fame
49. the boys names have been selected
50. ill help you very soon
51. i m unable to do it
52. its for you
53. add four 6 s and the result is 24

EXERCISE 110

Punctuate the following, using capital letters where necessary :

1. you are my friend said he and so i shall help you
2. he said hurrah my friend has come
3. he said to me are you going away today
4. what makes you cry asked her sister
5. go and send off this letter she said to the maid
6. they said no we cant do this
7. ill help you if you come to me my friend said to me
8. mohan said how beautiful the sight is
9. i have come from ranchi i want some job here can you help me the man said to me

10. you are a wicked boy said he i dont like you be off at once
11. the man said alas i am undone
12. tom said thank you
13. have you read sympathy asked the teacher
14. what shall i do if he tells me thank you the child said to his mother
15. you say said the judge that your box contained one kg of gold
16. sit down boys said the teacher today i am going to start a new lesson so be attentive
17. we know mother said her children we must not go out when you are away
18. i cant say why he always says please
19. please enjoy our company said he i am glad to see you after such a long time where had you been all this while when are you to go back if you need anything here dont hesitate to ask me
20. what is prof r p gupta doing here asked the principal
21. i cant say if he has come from punjab
22. the hindus worship the ganga
23. a tale of two cities has been written by shakespeare the greatest english dramatist
24. what is the main idea contained in gandhijee as world citizen
25. when does the toofan express arrive here asked the man
26. why dont you read times of India everyday
27. are you free on sunday at 5 pm
28. i intend to go to france in the month of march to study french
29. every hindu muslim and sikh is at first an indian
30. what is the janata party doing for you asked one of the congress leaders
31. indians celebrate the independence day with great joy and reverence
32. when does the prime minister arrive here
33. are indians anti americans
34. he is a student of i sc
35. o death come soon it is too much for me
36. everybody knows that god is kind to his children
37. the god of fire will burn you if you dont obey him
38. mother where has father gone has he gone to see uncle said the child to his mother
39. my father is ill so mother will not come here today
40. when did world war I take place
41. which is more difficult to learn english or sanskrit

Solved Examples

Q. 1. i am going to america my father will accompany me will you like to join us

Ans. I am going to America. My father will accompany me. Will you like to join us ?

Q. 2. some are born great some achieve greatness and some have greatness thrust upon them

Ans. Some are born great, some achieve greatness and some have greatness thrust upon them.

Q. 3. for gods sake said the man tell me who you are and what you want

Ans. "For God's sake", said the man, "tell me who you are and what you want."

Q. 4. the teacher asked ramesh what time do you get up i get up at 4 o clock replied ramesh

Ans. The teacher asked Ramesh, "What time do you get up ?" "I get up at 4 o'clock", replied Ramesh.

Q. 5. he said do you think your brother believes in god yes i do replied the boy

Ans. He said, "Do you think your brother believes in God ?" "Yes, I do", replied the boy.

Q. 6. a young rajah once said to his vizier how is it that i am so often ill

Ans. A young Rajah once said to his vizier, "How is it that I am so often ill ?"

Q. 7. reading makes a full man speaking a ready man writing an exact man

Ans. Reading makes a full man ; speaking, a ready man; writing, an exact man.

Q. 8. children do not make a noise in the class room i think the teacher should be coming soon said the monitor

Ans. "Children, do not make a noise in the class room. I think the teacher should be coming soon", said the monitor.

Q. 9. may god forgive you said the hermit go your way dont disturb me in my devotion

Ans. "May God forgive you !" said the hermit. "Go your way. Don't disturb me in my devotion."

Q. 10. may god help you my dear son said the mother may your path be full of success

Ans. "May God help you, my dear son !" said the mother. "May your path be full of success !"

Q. 11. do you know what will happen to you if you fail said the emperor i know your majesty replied jai singh but if i succeed you will give me the reward you have offered wont you

Ans. "Do you know what will happen to you if you fail ?" said the Emperor. "I know, Your Majesty", replied Jai Singh, "But if I succeed, you will give me the reward you have offered, won't you ?"

Q. 12. i dont want to disturb you said ramesh for i know your examination is at hand but you must have some time for me too you shall have but you must wait for some time replied gopal

Ans. "I don't want to disturb you", said Ramesh, "for I know your examination is at hand. But you must have some time for me, too." "You shall have, but you must wait for some time", replied Gopal.

Q. 13. my sons said he a great treasure lies hidden in the estate i am about to leave you where is it hidden said the sons i am about to tell you said the old man but you must dig for it

Ans. "My sons," said he, "a great treasure lies hidden in the estate I am about to leave you." "Where is it hidden ?" said the sons. "I am about to tell you," said the old man, "but you must dig for it."

Q. 14. it was a question of please the complainant entering the lift said top the lift man demanded top please

Ans. It was a question of 'Please'. The complainant entering the lift said, 'Top'. The liftman demanded 'Top, please'.

Q. 15. you are tired said the king let me take the spade and work in your place thank you said the hermit giving the king his spade

Ans. 'You are tired', said the king, 'Let me take the spade and work in your place'. 'Thank you', said the hermit, giving the king his spade.

Q. 16. forgive me said the bearded man in a weak voice when he saw that the king was awake and looking at him i dont know you and have nothing to forgive you said the king

Ans. "Forgive me", said the bearded man in a weak voice, when he saw that the king was awake and looking at him. "I don't know you and have nothing to forgive you", said the king.

Q. 17. little johnny was not happy it was raining and john did not like rain he kept saying rain rain go away come again another day

Ans. Little Johnny was not happy. It was raining and John did not like rain. He kept saying, "Rain, rain, go away and come again another day."

Q. 18. how clever i am he said all my life i have been talking prose without knowing it

Ans. "How clever I am !" he said, "All my life I have been talking prose without knowing it.

Q. 19. the traveller said can you tell me the way to the nearest inn yes said the peasant do you want one in which you can spend the night no replied the traveller i only want a meal

Ans. The traveller said, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest inn ?" "Yes," said the peasant, "do you want one in which you can spend the night ?" "No," replied the traveller, "I only want a meal."

Q. 20. what are you doing good old woman said the princess i m waiting for my son my pretty child said she where has he gone and when will he come asked the princess truly speaking i don t know all these things but i must wait for him replied the woman

Ans. "What are you doing, good old woman", said the princess. "I'm waiting for my son, my pretty child," said she. "Where has he gone and when will he come ?" asked the princess. "Truly speaking, I don't know all these things, but I must wait for him," replied the woman.

EXERCISE 111

Punctuate the following, using capital letters where necessary :

1. get away she said to bottom i cant bear the sight of a donkey
2. what is this he asked me
3. he said to me dont be afraid my son i am here with you
4. come and sit with me on the bed of flowers said titania to bottom
5. my mother always says to me if you make a promise you must keep it
6. boys dont make a noise the teacher may punish you for this
7. you are all fools get down uncle podger yelled
8. all right ill tell you tomorrow said the farmer
9. but tell me why you have come alone said mukesh
10. it is time for us to retire to bed said the blind man
11. he said lysander will marry hermia and demetrius helena
12. the farmer said all right ill tell you tomorrow
13. it is said that when alexander the great returned from india he brought with him a parrot with a pinkneck .
14. hermia said to demetrius if you have killed lysander kill me also
15. sir it was a mistake said puck

16. your majesty he said i have come to try my luck with your horse
17. i am free to do what i like with my walking stick argued the gentleman
18. of course you are said the man but you ought to know that your freedom ends where my nose begins
19. what is this said oberon to puck you have poured the juice into the eyes of the wrong man
20. my friend replied jai singh i know you say this out of love but how can we avoid war
21. i am the king said oberon you must not quarrel with me i ask you to give me the boy
22. i cant change the law said the duke if hermia doesnt marry demetrius the law will take care of her
23. that is strange he thought i saw no one yet someone has been here and has taken the bread
24. the devil watched all this with great delight this is fine he said
25. stop said the other i dont want all that shall i succeed in my present search or not

EXERCISE 112

Punctuate the following, using capital letters where necessary :

1. mother i shall not go to school today said the boy to his mother but why asked the mother
2. the teacher said to him why are you disturbing the whole class i cant tolerate it get off at once
3. he said to me i need some money have you five rupees mohan yes i have but i shall give you nothing said i
4. what do you mean asked the man how can a rope be used for binding flour a rope may be used for anything replied the man when i do not wish to lend it
5. where are you going, raju come and play with me manu said to him no no i cant play with you replied raju
6. they said to mohan i know you are a good boy but i want to know why you did so i think i should not tell you the fact said mohan for i know you will never believe me
7. do you really want work said the merchant yes if you have any said the boy then follow me and carry this box to my house said the merchant
8. joseph said to james i can tell you what strikes me as the most useful machine in the world james replied can you joseph i should like to hear of it what is it used for

9. the violent man said what violence have i done what anger have i been guilty of then the others laughed and said to him why should we speak you have given occular proof of your violent temper
10. yes son perhaps you are right said the old cobbler god has created iron in the mountains i suppose he means us to make machines with it
11. today we love what tomorrow we hate today we seek what tomorrow we shun today we desire what tomorrow we fear
12. as caesar loved me i weep for him as he was fortunate i rejoice at it as he was valiant i honour him but as he was ambitious i slew him
13. high and low rich and poor young and old all have to die one day
14. you say said the judge that the bag you lost contained one hundred gold coins yes your majesty replied the man
15. good morning friends said ramesh i suppose you all know what i have come to inform you
16. what a fool you are said the teacher why dont you say when you do not understand sir the problem with me is that i understand everything but soon i forget it replied the boy coldly
17. okay will you go said mukesh no i dont intend to get back replied his friend but why so dont you know both of us cannot adjust in this room said mukesh
18. father asked the little boy were you always good when you were a little child like me i was generally good replied the father at least when i was asleep
19. the stranger i feel is a mad man a man who does not know who he is and where he has come from said father to me then what should we do asked i let us inform the police otherwise he may create problem for us suggested my father
20. she will do us no harm she is so tender innocent and smiling she must be i suppose a princess said the prince to his men but is it not surprising that in this dense forest she is wandering alone said his men

20. Common Errors

Common Errors का अर्थ होता है—सामान्य भूलें। Common Errors grammar के नियमों के उल्लंघन के कारण होता है। ऐसे errors साधारणतः article, noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, number, tense, subject-verb agreement इत्यादि के हो सकते हैं। आपको दिए गए वाक्य में निहित errors को खोजना है और उसे शुद्ध कर पूरे वाक्य को पुनः लिखना है।

अब हम यहाँ यह मान कर चल रहे हैं कि आपने इस पुस्तक में अभी तक आए सभी chapters का अच्छी तरह अध्ययन कर लिया है और इसलिए अनेक आवश्यक grammatical rules से परिचित हो चुके हैं। अब आपको इनका practical applications देखना है। तो आइए, पहले विभिन्न प्रकार के errors के स्वरूप पर विचार करें।

1. Errors in the use of Articles :

Incorrect	*Correct*
He has got headache.	He has got a headache.
This is a red and a blue pencil.	This is a red and blue pencil.
There are few boys present in the class.	There are a few boys present in the class.
He reads in a H. E. School.	He reads in an H. E. School.
I go to school on the foot.	I go to school on foot.
I have hundred pens.	I have a hundred pens.
Do you play the football ?	Do you play football ?
The cholera is a dangerous disease.	Cholera is a dangerous disease.

2. Errors in the use of Nouns :

Incorrect	*Correct*
He got a freeship.	He got a free-studentship.
He gave me fooding and lodging.	He gave me food and lodging.
I have purchased his furnitures.	I have purchased his furniture.
There are five sheeps in the field.	There are five sheep in the field.
He is my cousin brother.	He is my cousin.

I have read several poetries.	I have read several poems.
I saw two females there.	I saw two women there.
She is a ten-years old girl.	She is a ten-year old girl.

3. Errors in the use of Pronouns :

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is taller than me.	He is taller than I.
He absented from school.	He absented himself from school.
One should do his duty.	One should do one's duty.
He, I and you are friends.	You, he and I are friends.
My all friends are absent.	All my friends are absent.
Let him and I work together.	Let him and me work together.
He cooked himself.	He cooked food himself.
It is All India Radio.	This is All India Radio.

4. Errors in the use of Adjectives :

Incorrect	*Correct*
He was the wisest of the two.	He was the wiser of the two.
You are more stronger than him.	You are stronger than he.
This is a most unique opportunity for you.	This is a unique opportunity for you.
Kalidas is greater than all poets.	Kalidas is greater than all other poets.
The climate of Ranchi is better than Patna.	The climate of Ranchi is better than that of Patna.
This cloth is more inferior than that.	This cloth is inferior to that.
He has no any pen.	He has not any pen.

5. Errors in the use of Verbs :

Incorrect	*Correct*
He has given his examination.	He has appeared at his examination.
Tell me what is your name.	Tell me what your name is.
I wish I was a king.	I wish I were a king.
Each of them were awarded.	Each of them was awarded.
Either you or I are guilty.	Either you or I am guilty.
It is you who is guilty.	It is you who are guilty.
He said that he can help me.	He said that he could help me.
My tooth is paining.	My tooth is aching.

6. Errors in the use of Adverbs :

Incorrect	*Correct*
My son's health is too good.	My son's health is very good.
The horse can run fastly.	The horse can run fast.
It was bitter cold.	It was bitterly cold.
This novel is much interesting.	This novel is very interesting.
He is comparatively better today.	He is comparatively well today.
He only died yesterday.	He died only yesterday.
He can't hardly do so.	He can hardly do so.

7. Errors in the use of Prepositions :

Incorrect	*Correct*
We should pray God.	We should pray to God.
He listened what I said.	He listened to what I said.
I fear from you.	I fear you.
Here is a chair to sit.	Here is a chair to sit on.
Open page 40.	Open at page 40.
He picked up a quarrel with me.	He picked a quarrel with me.
I write with ink.	I write in ink.
He is in the committee.	He is on the committee.

8. Errors in the use of Conjunctions :

Incorrect	*Correct*
Unless you do not read you will not pass.	Unless you read you will not pass.
Not only I lost my ticket but also my bag.	I lost not only my ticket but also my bag.
She called me as a fool.	She called me a fool.
Hardly had he gone than it began to rain.	Hardly had he gone when it began to rain.
Wait untill I do not return.	Wait untill I return.

9. Errors in the use of Participles, Gerunds and Infinitives :

Incorrect	*Correct*
Stop to write.	Stop writing.
Being a wet day I kept inside.	It being a wet day I kept inside.
Walking on the road, he met an accident.	While walking on the road he met with an accident.

He is said to fast for thirty days.	He is said to have fasted for thirty days.
He thought to go to Patna.	He thought of going to Patna.

10. Errors arising from the wrong position of words :

Incorrect	*Correct*
My both friends are faithful.	Both my friends are faithful.
I only eat when I am hungry.	I eat only when I am hungry.
He ordered to withdraw the army.	He ordered the army to withdraw.
I had never been in a so large house before.	I had never been in so large a house before.
Tell me who are you.	Tell me who you are.
I and Ram are friends.	Ram and I are friends.
He is enough strong to lift it.	He is strong enough to lift it.
He speaks very well English.	He speaks English very well.
She wants to go home back.	She wants to go back home.

11. Errors arising from the use of inappropriate words :

Incorrect	*Correct*
There is a crowd of girls.	There is a bevy of girls.
It is an ancient chair.	It is an old chair.
I saw a group of sheep there.	I saw a flock of sheep there.
He is devoted to gambling.	He is addicted to gambling.
Please grant me ill leave.	Please grant me sick leave.
You enjoy bad health.	You have bad health.
Columbus invented America.	Columbus discovered America.
I hope that I shall fail.	I fear that I shall fail.
He has given the examination.	He has taken the examination.

12. Errors arising from words wrongly omitted :

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is in hurry.	He is in a hurry.
He replied me.	He replied to me.
I availed of this opportunity.	I availed myself of this opportunity.
The climate of Ranchi is better than Patna.	The climate of Ranchi is better than that of Patna.
He appears honest.	He appears to be honest.
I want a bread.	I want a piece of bread.
It is good house to live.	It is a good house to live in.

13. Errors arising from words wrongly inserted :

Incorrect	*Correct*
He told to me.	He told me.
He is my own father.	He is my father.
I shall start on tomorrow.	I shall start tomorrow.
Ram married with Sita.	Ram married Sita.
He is my cousin brother.	He is my cousin.
I forbade him not to smoke.	I forbade him to smoke.
This is a true fact.	This is a fact.
Supposing if he fails, what will he do ?	Supposing he fails what will he do ?

14. Miscellaneous :

Incorrect	*Correct*
He came today morning.	He came this morning.
He fell sick.	He fell ill.
He did many mischiefs.	He did many acts of mischief.
He went for riding.	He went riding.
No mention.	Please do not mention it.
In my opinion I think it is wrong.	In my opinion it is wrong.
My family members have gone to Delhi.	The members of my family have gone to Delhi.

EXERCISE 113

Correct the following sentences :—

1. The sceneries of Kashmir are worth-seeing.
2. One must do his duty properly.
3. The climate of Ranchi is better than Patna.
4. I don't hardly think it will rain.
5. He runs fastly.
6. Each of the boys have returned back.
7. Either you or I are to blame.
8. The poet and philosopher have come here.
9. I, you and he are students of this college.
10. He is taller than me.
11. She bought a comb for the baby with celluloid teeth.
12. He is more stronger than me.
13. Tell me what is your name.
14. He asked me where are you going.
15. He has not and will not do this.
16. Columbus invented America.
17. He absented from school.
18. In my opinion I think it is wrong.
19. This is a true fact.
20. Let us discuss about it.

21. He left the place in hurry.
22. Poors are always in need.
23. This book is too interesting.
24. This milk is more inferior than that.
25. My scissors is sharp.
26. A team of players have arrived.
27. He as well as his friends are to blame.
28. He prevented me to do it.
29. He is the eldest man of my village.
30. It are they who is to blame.
31. He is devoted to gambling.
32. Sohan is wiser than brave.
33. I prefer reading than writing.
34. I advice you to go home.
35. He dares not oppose his father.
36. He talks as if he is a king.
37. He plays good.
38. This data is incomplete.
39. Hardly had he left than his father came.
40. He gave me a chair to sit.

Answers with Explanatory Notes :

1. scenery, furniture, luggage, information, advice, poetry, etc सदा Singular Number में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। देखें—Subject Verb Agreement, Rule No. 11. अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
   The scenery of Kashmir is worth-seeing.
2. He का Possessive Case 'his' तथा one का Possessive Case one's होता है। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
   One must do one's duty properly.
3. यहाँ Ranchi के climate की तुलना Patna के climate से करनी है Patna से नहीं। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
   The climate of Ranchi is better than the climate of Patna.
   Or, The climate of Ranchi is better than that of Patna.
4. don't तथा hardly दोनों Negative अर्थ रखते हैं। अतः वाक्य में Negative भाव के लिए किसी एक का ही प्रयोग होगा । अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
   I don't think it will rain.
   Or, I hardly think it will rain.
5. fast Adjective और Adverb दोनों है। इसमें ly जोड़कर नया शब्द नहीं बनाया जा सकता है। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
   He runs fast.
6. दिए गए वाक्य में Verb 'each' के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा। चूँकि each Singular है अतः वाक्य में Singular Verb 'has' प्रयुक्त होगा। इस प्रकार अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
   Each of the boys has returned back.
7. जब दो Nouns या Pronouns Either ...... or ......, Neither ...... nor ......, or या nor से जुड़े हो तो Verb अपने से सबसे नजदीक आने वाले Noun/

Pronoun के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होता है। इस वाक्य में जो Verb का स्थान है उसके सबसे नजदीक में I है। अतः यहाँ are प्रयुक्त न होकर am प्रयुक्त होगा। इस प्रकार वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

Either you or I am to blame.

Note : अगर इस वाक्य को Interrogative बनाना हो तो Verb 'you' के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा—

Are either you or I to blame ?

8. The poet and philosopher—एक ही Noun के पहले Article है, अतः एक ही व्यक्ति का बोध हो रहा है जो poet भी है और philosopher भी है।

   The poet and the philosopher—दोनों Nouns के पहले Articles हैं, अतः यहाँ दो व्यक्तियों का बोध हो रहा है—एक poet तथा दूसरा philosopher.

   स्पष्टतः जब एक व्यक्ति का बोध होगा तब Verb Singular तथा जब दो व्यक्तियों का बोध होगा तब Verb Plural प्रयुक्त होगा। अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

   The poet and philosopher has come here.
   The poet and the philosopher have come here.

9. यदि वाक्य में भिन्न-भिन्न persons के Nouns/Pronouns आएँ तो सबसे पहले Second Person आता है, उसके बाद Third Person और अन्त में First Person, अर्थात् 231 का क्रम। इस प्रकार अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

   You, he and I are the students of this college.

10. यहाँ 'He' Nominative Case में है। इसकी तुलना Nominative Case के Noun/Pronoun से होगी। इसलिए me (objective case) के बदले I (Nominative Case) प्रयुक्त होगा। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप—

    He is taller than I.

11. यहाँ celluloid teeth comb का है baby का नहीं। अतः with celluloid teeth का स्थान comb के तुरन्त बाद आना चाहिए। अतः वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

    She bought a comb with celluloid teeth for the baby.

12. यहाँ more तथा stronger दो Comparative Degrees का प्रयोग है जो गलत है। अतः stronger के पहले more नहीं लगावें। पुनः me के बदले I होगा। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

    He is stronger than I.

13. यह एक Indirect question है। अतः वाक्य के दूसरे भाग में Interrogative Verb प्रयुक्त नहीं होगा। अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

    Tell me what your name is.

14. Indirect Speech तथा Sequence of Tense के नियम के आधार पर वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप इस प्रकार होगा—

    He asked me where I was going.

15. has not के बाद Verb का Past Participle Form (v^3) आता है और will not के बाद Verb का v^1 form. इसलिए दोनों के लिए common verb Do (v^1) का प्रयोग नहीं किया जा सकता है। अतः वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

He has not done and will not do this.

16. वैसी चीज जो इस दुनिया में पहले से है लेकिन हमारी जानकारी में नहीं है उसे खोज निकालने के लिए Verb discover का प्रयोग किया जाता है। ऐसी चीज की खोज या आविष्कार जो पहले नहीं थी (जैसे—steam engine, pen, radio, television, etc) उसके लिए Verb invent का प्रयोग किया जाता है। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

Columbus discovered America.

17. कुछ Verbs (जैसे—absent, avail, enjoy, etc) के बाद Reflexive Pronouns अवश्य आते हैं। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

He absented himself from school.

18. in my opinion तथा I think दोनों के अर्थ में लगभग एक ही भाव है। दोनों में से किसी एक का प्रयोग ही वाक्य में निहित भाव के स्पष्टीकरण के लिए पर्याप्त है। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

In my opinion it is wrong.
Or, I think it is wrong.

Note—वाक्य में अनावश्यक शब्दों का प्रयोग अनुचित है।

19. fact तो true होता ही है अतः इसके पहले true लगाना अनावश्यक है। fact का अर्थ है—thing that is known to be true. अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

This is a fact.

20. discuss, tell, describe इत्यादि Transitive Verbs के बाद Preposition प्रयुक्त नहीं होता है। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

Let us discuss it.

21. in a hurry, in a temper, make a noise, keep a secret, have a headache, as a rule, make a fuss इत्यादि ऐसे Phrases हैं जिनमें a/an का प्रयोग निश्चित रूप से होता है। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

He left the place in a hurry.

22. कुछ Adjectives ऐसे हैं जिनके पहले the प्रयुक्त कर उनका प्रयोग Plural Nouns की तरह कर सकते हैं, जैसे—the blind (अंधे लोग), the poor (गरीब लोग), the rich (धनी लोग)। ऐसे Adjectives में s/es जोड़कर वाक्य में प्रयोग करना गलत है। इसे समझें—

poor = गरीब; the poor = गरीब लोग; poors = wrong use

पुनः यह भी ध्यान रखें कि ऐसे the + adjectives के बाद Plural Verbs प्रयुक्त होते हैं। इस प्रकार वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

The poor are always in need.

23. too से दोष का बोध होता है अच्छाई का नहीं। अच्छाई के लिए too के बदले very का प्रयोग करें। अतः यहाँ अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
This book is very interesting.

24. senior, junior, prior, posterior, superior, inferior तथा anterior ऐसे Adjectives हैं जिनके पहले more या less का प्रयोग नहीं होता है साथ ही इनके बाद to का प्रयोग होता है, than का नहीं। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
This milk is inferior to that.

25. scissors, trousers, spectacles इत्यादि ऐसे Nouns हैं जो सदा plural forms में रहते हैं तथा इनके बाद Plural Verbs ही प्रयुक्त होते हैं। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
My scissors are sharp.

26. यहाँ 'team' के अनुसार Verb प्रयुक्त होगा। चूँकि team Singular Number में है, अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
A team of players has arrived.

27. यहाँ Verb as well as के पहले आने वाले Noun/Pronoun के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा। देखें—Subject–Verb Agreement. अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

He as well as his friends is to blame.

28. कुछ Verbs/Adjectives ऐसे हैं जिनके वाद Infinitive (to + v) कभी नहीं आता। वैसी अवस्था में Infinitive के वदले Preposition आता है और Preposition के बाद सदा Gerund (verb + ing) आता है। ये शब्द हैं—prevent from, refrain from, hopeful of, confident of, desirous of, succeed in, think of, etc. अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
He prevented me from doing it.

29. elder/eldest का प्रयोग एक ही परिवार के सदस्यों के सापेक्ष में किया जाता है। older/oldest का प्रयोग उन व्यक्तियों के सापेक्ष में किया जाता है जिनमें family relationship नहीं है। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
He is the oldest man of my village.

30. It एक Singular Number का Pronoun है जिसके वाद हमेशा Singular Verb प्रयुक्त होगा। पुनः who के बाद प्रयुक्त Verb who के पहले आनेवाले Noun/ Pronoun के अनुसार होगा। इस प्रकार अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
It is they who are to blame.

31. gambling एक बुरी लत है जिसके लिए addicted to का प्रयोग होगा—
He is addicted to gambling.

32. यदि एक ही व्यक्ति या वस्तु के दो गुणों की तुलना की जाए तो more या less का प्रयोग होता है और than के पहले तथा वाद में आने वाले Adjectives सदा Positive Degree में रहते हैं। इस तथ्य को अभीष्ट वाक्य के शुद्ध रूप से समझें—
Sohan is more wise than brave.

Note—ध्यान दें कि यहाँ व्यक्ति एक है दो नहीं। दो व्यक्ति रहने पर Comparative Degree का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होगा—
Ram is wiser and braver than Mohan.

33. prefer के बाद to आता है than नहीं—I prefer reading to writing.

34. advice = Noun; advise = Verb
I advise you to go home. (advise = Verb)
He gave me good advice. (advice = Noun)

35. इस वाक्य में dare का प्रयोग Modal Auxiliary के रूप में किया गया है अतः इसमें s/es नहीं जोड़ा जा सकता है। इन दो वाक्यों को समझें—
He cannot go (can के बदले cans का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता)
He will not go (will के बदले wills का प्रयोग नहीं हो सकता)

इस पुस्तक में दिए गए chapter Modal Auxiliary में इस पर विस्तारपूर्वक चर्चा की गयी है।

इस प्रकार अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
He dare not oppose his father.

[परन्तु, He does not dare to oppose his father होगा क्योंकि यहाँ dare का प्रयोग ordinary Verbs की तरह हुआ है।]

36. as if/as though—इन दोनों का अर्थ होता है 'मानो' और इनसे शर्त्त या कल्पना का बोध होता है और ऐसी स्थिति में इनके बाद सदा Past Conditional Tense का प्रयोग होता है, Present या Future का नहीं। अतः दिए गए वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
He talks as if he were a king.

37. यहाँ Verb (plays) की विशेषता बतलाने के लिए Adjective (good) का प्रयोग अनुचित है। इसकी जगह पर Adverb का प्रयोग होगा। चूँकि well Adverb है और इसका अर्थ good से मिलता-जुलता है, अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—

He plays well.

38. data Plural Form है। इसका singular Form datum होता है। अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
These data are incomplete.

39. hardly के बाद when आता है than नहीं और no sooner के बाद than आता है when नहीं।

इसे ध्यान में रखें—

hardly ...... when	both ...... and
though ...... yet	either ...... or ......
no sooner ...... than	neither ...... nor ......

अतः अभीष्ट वाक्य का शुद्ध रूप होगा—
Hardly had he left when his father came.

40. यहाँ chair तथा sit के बीच सम्वन्ध दिखाने के लिए sit के वाद on का प्रयोग करना होगा। इन वाक्यों में Verbs के बाद प्रयुक्त Prepositions के औचित्य को समझें—

I need something to write with.
She needs other children to play with.
He gave me a chair to sit on.
This is the road to go by.
He offered me a gun to shoot with.
It is a good house to live in.

EXERCISE 114

Correct the following sentences :

1. He has lost his furnitures.
2. We have received no informations.
3. We have five breads only.
4. I and he are friends.
5. He is stronger than me.
6. My books are better than my friend.
7. He knows to swim.
8. He has given his examination.
9. He has been absent since three days.
10. He wrote me.
11. He dares not go there.
12. He is in temper.
13. Tell me what do you want.
14. He told me that I can help him.
15. Unless you do not come, I shall not go.
16. He was died yesterday.
17. His four fathers were great.
18. I have five ten-rupees notes.
19. Every people know this.
20. I do not know nothing about him.
21. Either he or they is to blame.
22. Rice I bought is fine.
23. I always speak truth.
24. The poor is always helpless.
25. I like apple more than mango.
26. A team of players have arrived.
27. He looks sadly.
28. He called me as a fool.
29. The number of students are increasing.
30. I am short in money.
31. He is fond to read stories.
32. Ram asked me what is my name.
33. He is superior than me.
34. He replied me.
35. He enjoys bad health.
36. This book is too interesting.
37. This ink is inferior than that.
38. He sat on the shore of the river.
39. He picked up a quarrel with me.
40. He is troubling me.

ANSWERS

1. He has lost his furniture.
2. We have received no information.
3. We have five pieces/loaves of bread only.
4. He and I are friends.
5. He is stronger than I.
6. My books are better than those of my friends.
7. He knows how to swim.
8. He has taken his examination.
9. He has been absent for three days.
10. He wrote to me.
11. He dare not go there.
12. He is in a temper.
13. Tell me what you want.
14. He told me that I could help him.
15. Unless you come I shall not go.
16. He died yesterday.
17. His fore-fathers were great.
18. I have five ten-rupee notes.
19. Everyone/Every man knows this.
20. I do not know anything about him.
21. Either he or they are to blame.
22. The rice I bought is fine.
23. I always speak the truth.
24. The poor are always helpless.
25. I like an apple more than a mango.
26. A team of players has arrived.
27. He looks sad.
28. He called me a fool.
29. The number of students is increasing.
30. I am short of money.
31. He is fond of reading stories.
32. Ram asked me what my name was.
33. He is superior to me.
34. He replied to me.
35. He has bad health.
36. This book is very interesting.
37. This ink is inferior to that.
38. He sat on the bank of the river.
39. He picked a quarrel with me.
40. He is giving me trouble.

EXERCISE 115

Correct the following sentences :

1. The pen is mightier than sword.
2. He as well as his friends are to blame.
3. I packed my luggages.
4. Columbus invented America.
5. He has got headache.
6. My house is made of bricks.
7. Dog is usefuller than cat.
8. She is a ten years old girl.
9. My tooth is paining.
10. He needs not go there.
11. She finished her work when I met her.
12. He helped the blinds.
13. It are the boys who won.
14. I will write you from Nepal.
15. He asked me what can I do.

16. A beautiful face is often compared with the moon.
17. I am confident to win.
18. He impressed me by his good behaviour.
19. These all mangoes are rotten.
20. He talks as if he is a king.
21. He stopped to read.
22. If only he can swim !
23. He is going to home.
24. Our only guide were the stars.
25. Ship after ship are sailing by.
26. He is true to his words.
27. He killed the dog by a stick.
28. Each of you know the fact.
29. He did nothing but played.
30. He was appointed as chairman.
31. What is her birth date ?
32. Calcutta is to the east of India.
33. He can talk English well.
34. This is a fine poetry.
35. The boy did not know how to cut the pencil.
36. He plays good.
37. I hope to secure good mark.
38. He sat under the shade of a tree.
39. Not only I lost my ticket but also my bag.
40. How many poetries have you learnt ?

ANSWERS

1. The pen is mightier than the sword.
2. He as well as his friends is to blame.
3. I packed my luggage.
4. Columbus discovered America.
5. He has got a headache.
6. My house is made of brick.
7. The dog is more useful than a cat.
8. She is a ten-year old girl.
9. My tooth is aching.
10. He need not go there.
11. She had finished her work when I met her.
12. He helped the blind.
13. It is the boys who won.
14. I will write to you from Nepal.
15. He asked me what I could do.
16. A beautiful face is often compared to the moon.
17. I am confident of winning.
18. He impressed me with his good behaviour.
19. All these mangoes are rotten.
20. He talks as if he were a king.
21. He stopped reading.
22. If only he could swim !
23. He is going home.
24. Our only guide was the stars.
25. Ship after ship is sailing by.
26. He is true to his word.
27. He killed the dog with a stick.
28. Each of you knows the fact.
29. He did nothing but play.
30. He was appointed chairman.
31. What is the date of her birth?
32. Calcutta is in the east of India.
33. He can speak English well.
34. This is a fine piece of poetry.

35. The boy did not know how to sharpen the pencil.
36. He plays well.
37. I hope to secure good marks.
38. He sat in the shade of a tree.
39. I lost not only my ticket but also my bag.
40. How many poems have you learnt ?

EXERCISE 116

Correct the following sentences :

1. She was dressed with black.
2. He was kind with me.
3. A robber with his followers were arrested.
4. It is nothing else than foolishness.
5. He sat in the shade of a tree.
6. Your trouser is dirty.
7. I am too glad to meet you.
8. He wrote a best book.
9. He is elder than I.
10. Everyone was frightened when they saw a tiger.
11. Unless you do not read you will not pass.
12. I have applied for lecturership.
13. I have no any friends.
14. He can never be success.
15. Here is a cup; please fill.
16. He gave me a chair to sit.
17. This is a red and a blue pencil.
18. The ship drowned in the ocean.
19. Need I go there ?
20. Burn the lamp.
21. The train is on the station.
22. It is the most interesting of the two books.
23. I regard him my elder brother.
24. He is blind of the right eye.
25. Supposing if he fails, what will he do ?
26. He agreed with the proposal.
27. You are right to hold this opinion.
28. I met him in the way.
29. The mankind should love the Nature.
30. May I allowed to come ?
31. Mohan is my oldest son.
32. What is the time in your watch ?
33. I want to know who are you.
34. He married with an European lady.
35. His Hindi knowledge is very poor.
36. He is enough wise to understand this.
37. Do you know where does he live ?
38. She could not successful.
39. Let us discuss about it.
40. He is a coward man.

ANSWERS

1. She was dressed in black.
2. He was kind to me.
3. A robber with his followers was arrested.
4. It is nothing else but foolishness.
5. The sentence is correct.
6. Your trousers are dirty.

7. I am very glad to meet you.
8. He wrote a good book.
9. He is older than I.
10. Everyone was frightened when he saw a tiger.
11. Unless you read you will not pass.
12. I have applied for lectureship.
13. I have no friends.
14. He can never be successful.
15. Here is a cup; please fill it.
16. He gave me a chair to sit on.
17. This is a red and blue pencil.
18. The ship sank in the ocean.
19. The sentence is correct.
20. Light the lamp.
21. The train is at the station.
22. It is more interesting of the two books.
23. I regard him as my elder brother.
24. He is blind in the right eye.
25. Supposing he fails what will he do ?
26. He agreed to the proposal.
27. You are right in holding this opinion.
28. I met him on the way.
29. Mankind should love Nature.
30. May I be allowed to come ?
31. Mohan is my eldest son.
32. What is the time by your watch ?
33. I want to know who you are.
34. He married a European lady.
35. His knowledge of Hindi is very poor.
36. He is wise enough to understand this.
37. Do you know where he lives ?
38. She could not be successful.
39. Let us discuss it.
40. He is a coward.

EXERCISE 117

Correct the following sentences :

1. He is my cousin brother.
2. One of my friend has come today.
3. You should avail of this.
4. My table's leg is broken.
5. Each boy and each girl have a coat.
6. That was a worth seeing sight.
7. I found hundred rupees.
8. When he returned back from Patna ?
9. I saw three females there.
10. Shakespeare was an imaginary poet.
11. The man is mortal.
12. Though he is poor but he is honest.
13. I am very interested in this work.
14. He picked up a quarrel with me.
15. I wrote the letter by a fountain pen.
16. Both boys have not come.
17. Who discovered the fountain pen ?
18. The magistrate and collector were present there.
19. My neighbour had a hundred sheeps.
20. My father is the eldest man of this village.
21. Sohan is wiser than brave.
22. I am quite sorry to hear this news.

23. Give me ten and half rupees.
24. He said me a thief.
25. From which train did she come ?
26. The train is running in time.
27. I bought two dozens pens.
28. He asked that what are you doing.
29. Which is the oldest—Rome or Athens ?
30. What can be done should be done.
31. He is in the committee.
32. He went for riding.
33. We had a good play of football.
34. The doctor saw her pulse.
35. He could not enter into the room.
36. I did not know why he does not read.
37. I met an accident.
38. This pot is vacant.
39. He is worst than me.
40. The ship was drowned.

ANSWERS

1. He is my cousin.
2. One of my friends has come today.
3. You should avail yourself of this.
4. The leg of my table is broken.
5. Each boy and each girl has a coat.
6. That was a sight worth-seeing.
7. I found a hundred rupees.
8. When did he return from Patna ?
9. I saw three women there.
10. Shakespeare was an imaginative poet.
11. Man is mortal.
12. Though he is poor yet he is honest.
13. I am much interested in this work.
14. He picked a quarrel with me.
15. I wrote the letter with a fountain pen.
16. Neither boy has come.
17. Who invented the fountain pen ?
18. The magistrate and collector was present there.
19. My neighbour had a hundred sheep.
20. My father is the oldest man of this village.
21. Sohan is more wise than brave.
22. I am very sorry to hear this news.
23. Give me ten rupees and a half.
24. He called me a thief.
25. By which train did she come?
26. The train is running to time.
27. I bought two dozen pens.
28. He asked what we were doing.
29. Which is older—Rome or Athens ?
30. The sentence is correct.
31. He is on the committee.
32. He went riding.
33. We had a good game of football.
34. The doctor felt her pulse.
35. He could not enter the room.
36. I did not know why he did not read.
37. I met with an accident.
38. This pot is empty.
39. He is worse than I.
40. The ship sank.

EXERCISE 118

Correct the following sentences :

1. It is raining since 10 o'clock.
2. It is bitter cold today.
3. Open page 40.
4. I could not catch up his words.
5. Many a man run after wealth.
6. I forbade him not to smoke.
7. He is more better than me.
8. The picture was hanged.
9. Kalidas is greater than any other poets.
10. He told that the honesty is the best policy.
11. My father and myself went there.
12. She has a large number of money.
13. He died of hunger.
14. He died from fever.
15. He ordered for my dismissal.
16. The thief stood in front of the judge.
17. Go to Bombay and enjoy.
18. He got an employment there.
19. None of the two students were present.
20. There is no harm to do this.
21. He denied to come.
22. He fell sick.
23. I am looking forward to meet you.
24. I have no knowledge and no interest in music.
25. I shall start on tomorrow.
26. Open the light.
27. Shut the light.
28. Tell me where is the pen.
29. I got into a bus.
30. He fell from his horse.
31. Is this the road to go ?
32. I must revenge my brother.
33. He is the bravest and intelligent man of this village.
34. This is a worth seeing sight.
35. He is working with heart and soul.
36. He sat on a tree.
37. This data is incomplete.
38. Five years passed since I met him.
39. Keep this on the table.
40. Write this in your copy.

ANSWERS

1. It has been raining since 10 o'clock.
2. It is bitterly cold today.
3. Open at page 40.
4. I could not catch on his words.
5. Many a man runs after wealth.
6. I forbade him to smoke.
7. He is better than I.
8. The picture was hung.
9. Kalidas is greater than any other poet.
10. He said that honesty is the best policy.
11. My father and I went there.
12. She has a large amount of money.
13. He died from hunger.
14. He died of fever.

15. He ordered my dismissal.
16. The thief stood before the judge.
17. Go to Bombay and enjoy yourself.
18. He got employment there.
19. Neither of the two students was present.
20. There is no harm in doing this.
21. He refused to come.
22. He fell ill.
23. I am looking forward to meeting you.
24. I have no knowledge of and no interest in music.
25. I shall start tomorrow.
26. Turn on the light.
27. Turn off the light.
28. Tell me where the pen is.
29. I got on a bus.
30. He fell off his horse.
31. Is this the road to go by ?
32. I must avenge my brother.
33. He is the bravest and the most intelligent man of this village.
34. This is a sight worth-seeing.
35. He is working heart and soul.
36. He sat in a tree.
37. These data are incomplete.
38. Five years have passed since I met him.
39. Put this on the table.
40. Write this in your note book.

EXERCISE 119

Correct the following sentences :

1. Did you buy two breads ?
2. One of the boy is absent.
3. He often absents from school.
4. I have rang the bell.
5. How many times do you pray God ?
6. He believes God.
7. He prevented me to go.
8. Hardly I had gone than it began to rain.
9. This is different to that.
10. Work until you live.
11. Mohan is two years smaller than Ravi.
12. There is no place in this compartment.
13. Come between 4 p.m. to 6 p.m.
14. Smoking is a bad custom.
15. He said to me how are you.
16. I congratulated him for his success.
17. Open your book at six page.
18. Whom are you speaking to ?
19. I saw a joker at the circus.
20. Today the climate is not good.
21. They killed all but he.
22. A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye.
23. Diamond is more precious than any metal.
24. He made a goal.
25. I told him good morning.
26. My thank is due to him.
27. His words are as sweet as sugar.
28. I have disposed off my old car.
29. I cannot rise this box.
30. You, Mohan, is a student of M.A.
31. He prevented me from harm.
32. Four boys have passed and one failed.

33. I am hopeless to pass.
34. Please excuse me being late.
35. He hinted that he wants money.
36. I have not and shall not do this.
37. I would not hear him.
38. Walk slowly lest you should not fall down.
39. You are better than anybody in the class.
40. Please put your sign here.

ANSWERS

1. Did you buy two loaves of bread ?
2. One of the boys is absent.
3. He often absents himself from school.
4. I have rung the bell.
5. How many times do you pray to God ?
6. He believes in God.
7. He prevented me from going.
8. Hardly had I gone when it began to rain.
9. This is different from that.
10. Work as long as you live.
11. Mohan is two years younger than Ravi.
12. There is no room in this compartment.
13. Come between 4 p.m. and 6 p.m.
14. Smoking is a bad habit.
15. He asked me how I was.
16. I congratulated him on his success.
17. Open your book at page six.
18. Who are you speaking to ?
19. I saw a clown at the circus.
20. Today the weather is not good.
21. They killed all but him.
22. A variety of pleasing objects charms the eye.
23. Diamond is more precious than any other metal.
24. He scored a goal.
25. I bade him good morning.
26. My thanks are due to him.
27. His words are as sweet as honey.
28. I have disposed of my old car.
29. I cannot raise this box.
30. You, Mohan, are a student of M.A.
31. He protected me from harm.
32. Four boys have passed and one has failed.
33. I have no hope of passing.
34. Please excuse my being late.
35. He hinted that he wanted money.
36. I have not done and shall not do this.
37. I would not listen to him.
38. Walk slowly lest you should fall down.
39. You are better than anybody else in the class.
40. Please put your signature here.

EXERCISE 120

Correct the following sentences :

1. Forty miles are a long distance.
2. It are boys who have done this.
3. Nothing but trees were seen there.
4. He has read both in India and England.
5. The number of boys are increasing.
6. Please excuse the troubles.
7. May God saves the king !
8. He is one of the best men who has ever lived.
9. His sister is older than he.
10. He as well as I am guilty.
11. He gave me many good advices.
12. I found out that he is guilty.
13. He wanted to know what can I do for him.
14. Not only he was injured but also ruined.
15. I am right, am not I ?
16. I spent the holidays with my family members.
17. Small cars are very economic.
18. He is good in health.
19. Please see my book.
20. The clock has struck seven hours.
21. He gave me a gun to shoot.
22. I had been born in 1965.
23. He left the place with bag and baggage.
24. He lived there for a day.
25. Her face resembles to her mother.
26. He took admission in our school yesterday.
27. I know him for ten years.
28. He is becoming strong.
29. This is a quite different question.
30. I am not knowing any of them.
31. It was bitter cold yesterday.
32. Write with ink.
33. I have less friends than Sohan has.
34. He has no issues.
35. You can talk English well.
36. In India there are many poors.
37. This is a most unique opportunity for you.
38. He took out his shoes.
39. I am reading at the High School.
40. The teacher tested the boy if he could read French.

ANSWERS

1. Forty miles is a long distance.
2. It is boys who have done this.
3. Nothing but trees was seen there.
4. He has read in both India and England.
5. The number of boys is increasing.
6. Please excuse me for the trouble.
7. May God save the king !
8. He is one of the best men who have ever lived.
9. His sister is elder to him.

10. He as well as I is guilty.
11. He gave me lots of good advice.
12. I found out that he was guilty.
13. He wanted to know what I could do for him.
14. He was not only injured but also ruined.
15. I am right, aren't I ?
16. I spent the holidays with the members of my family.
17. Small cars are very economical.
18. He is in good health.
19. Please look at my book.
20. The clock has struck seven.
21. He gave me a gun to shoot with.
22. I was born in 1965.
23. He left the place bag and baggage.
24. He stayed there for a day.
25. Her face resembles the face of her mother.
26. He was admitted into our school yesterday.
27. I have known him for ten years.
28. He is becoming stronger.
29. This is quite a different question.
30. I don't know any of them.
31. It was bitterly cold yesterday.
32. Write in ink.
33. I have fewer friends than Sohan has.
34. He has no issue.
35. You can speak English well.
36. In India there are many poor persons.
37. This is a unique opportunity for you.
38. He took off his shoes.
39. I am at the High School.
40. The teacher tested the boy to see if he could read French.

EXERCISE 121

Correct these sentences :

1. My friend has been absent from Monday.
2. Where is my spectacle ?
3. The train left before he reached the station.
4. She does not know to swim.
5. I have read several poetries.
6. He and you are fast friends.
7. Do not speak a lie.
8. I wish I was a king.
9. It is very cold on the Mount Everest.
10. The sun is more big than the earth.
11. Each boy and each girl were present there.
12. I prefer reading than writing.
13. He enjoys freeship.
14. The news of his death are too deep for tears.
15. My son is too healthy.
16. You must avail of this opportunity.
17. He has no any problems.
18. He said that he is my friend.
19. I shall see you when I shall come back.
20. It is I who is to blame.
21. She is my cousin sister.
22. I live in India since 1970.
23. Do you know where does she live ?

24. Let you and they work together.
25. Good night, Sir, how are you ?
26. It is the best of the two books.
27. It is between you and I.
28. Unless you do not try, you can not succeed.
29. He died from fever.
30. Sixty rupees were paid.
31. All our family members are going to Delhi.
32. He took me as a thief.
33. He is more stronger than me.
34. I prefer this pen than that.
35. They gave us fooding and lodging.
36. One should obey his parents.
37. He is comparatively better today.
38. This is a comfortable house to live.
39. Please let me know how are you.
40. You must listen what I say.

EXERCISE 122

Correct these sentences :

1. If I will see her, she will be happy.
2. He is senior than me.
3. Can you say me what does it mean ?
4. He is angry upon me.
5. His all furnitures are old.
6. One cannot say what will happen to himself.
7. Which is easier to learn— Hindi, English, Urdu ?
8. He gave me a most perfect answer.
9. Either you or I are wrong.
10. He has given his examination.
11. He only died this morning.
12. I asked him what is your age.
13. The poet has described about Nature.
14. My servant has come yesterday.
15. Bread and butter make a good food.
16. The news are shocking.
17. Each of them have finished their work.
18. This is a quite easy question.
19. Where have you hid the gold ?
20. Let us discuss about this problem.
21. Why don't you play the football everyday ?
22. The sceneries of Kashmir is better than Kathmandu.
23. I am to win, am not I ?
24. He is capable to do this work.
25. I saw a dead man walking across the field.
26. I don't hardly think it will rain.
27. He has not and will not give up smoking.
28. Can you walk twenty miles by foot ?
29. Neither food nor water were there.
30. Ten sheeps are grazing in the field.
31. Mohan with his friends were present there.
32. He went home on his foot.
33. I got a freeship at college.

34. Many poetries are prescribed in our course.
35. She is quite familiar with me.
36. This table is made from iron.
37. He goes to school by the bus.
38. He gave me all the informations he had.
39. Being a fine day we went out for a walk.
40. I hope I shall fail in the examination.

ल्हासा पुकारे कैलाश को

प्रो0 प्रेम कुमार धूमल